FACULTY OF DENTISTRY LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO
3 1761 03914877 0

BAS-5741

ESSENTIALS OF
OPERATIVE DENTISTRY

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026 with funding from
University of Toronto

https://archive.org/details/essentialsofoper0000davi

ESSENTIALS OF
OPERATIVE DENTISTRY

BY

W. Clyde Davis, A.M., M.D., D.D.S.,

Former Professor of Operative and Clinical Dentistry and Dean of the Faculty, the University of Nebraska, College of Dentistry, Lincoln, Nebraska.

FOURTH REVISED EDITION

ST. LOUIS
C. V. MOSBY COMPANY
1923

1
23

COPYRIGHT, 1916, 1919, 1923, BY C. V. MOSBY COMPANY
(All Rights Reserved)

Printed in the U. S. A.

Press of
C. V. Mosby Company
St. Louis

7080

PREFACE TO FOURTH EDITION.

In presenting the fourth edition, several chapters have been eliminated as not belonging strictly to the subject of Operative Dentistry. Other chapters have been entirely re-written, made necessary on account of the almost complete change of thought relative to the subjects considered.

In the preface of the third edition we said, "If we are right today, very wrong were many of us yesterday" and "What of the morrow"? That "today" has become "yesterday," and the "morrow" is here. We have lived the time to find that many of us were wrong, and that the present "today" finds us engaged in problems of greater magnitude.

Dentistry is growing into a specialty of medicine. We are all being carried on a tide that shall eventually efface any line of demarcation, which at this time may attempt to maintain two separate and distinct professions.

W. C. D.

Milford, Delaware.

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION.

The exhaustion of the second edition comes at a time when several of the most important branches of operative dentistry are undergoing a most rapid change. This has necessitated going over the entire book page by page, while considering the teachings of many instructors. In the revision the author has attempted to avoid the shoals of radicalism and at the same time not forget that many old methods must be completely discarded to accept those less mature with the hope that we are all nearer right in the present day methods of procedure.

The author drops the subject for the present with the thought: "If we are right today how very wrong were many of us yesterday" —"What of the morrow?"

W. C. D.

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

In presenting the second edition of this work, it is the aim of the author to follow the plan of the first edition, in that it be concise and yet cover a wide field in operative dentistry.

The book has been thoroughly rewritten and extensively illustrated. Four new chapters have been added, several have been materially enlarged, and others eliminated entirely in this edition.

There is a complete rearrangement of the chapters which it is believed will more nearly coincide with the progress of the student through his technical work and the operatory.

W. C. D.

PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION.

In the preparation of this text-book it has been the author's aim to meet a demand in dental college work for a treatise on operative dentistry which is sufficiently condensed to enable the student to master its contents in the comparatively short college terms at his disposal.

The subject matter selected is that which is generally taught by the instructors styled as "Professor of Operative Dentistry."

From a study of these teachers' courses of instruction it would seem that the definition of Operative Dentistry as commonly used today would be "That branch of dentistry which treats of the mechanical procedures performed within the oral cavity looking to the salvage of the teeth."

However, it has seemed wise in several instances to go beyond the exact limitations of this definition to get a better correlation of subjects.

The arrangement of the subject matter is different from that usually found, but is in accordance with the usual line of progress of dental students.

The author claims little originality in the essentials presented, having gleaned the facts from the writings, teachings and utterances of our greatest educators.

The "quiz-explanation" method of teaching is the one most in vogue in the leading universities as productive of the most work on the part of the classes taught, and at the same time giving the tutor more freedom for the expression of opinions to give individuality to his course of instruction.

An effort has been made to so publish the "Essentials of Operative Dentistry" that it would serve as a foundation for this quiz course as well as be suggestive to the teacher for a more full explanation, and, at the same time, encourage the student to extend his studies to more voluminous reference books, when time would permit, for an explanation in greater detail.

The author is much indebted to his co-laborer, partner and wife, Mattie M. Davis, D.M.D., for valuable assistance in connection with the publication of this volume.

W. C. D.

AUTHORITIES CONSIDERED IN PREVIOUS EDITIONS.

The following list is the names of those Dental Educators whose instructions, publications and writings have been considered:

Charles Channing Allen
Henry L. Ambler
Henry L. Banzhaf
G. V. Black
I. Norman Broomell
Andrew J. Brown
J. P. Buckley
Henry H. Burchard
John Q. Byram
David M. Cattell
Wm. T. Chambers
Wm. Crenshaw
E. E. Cruzen
Wm. Harper DeFord
Frank F. Fletcher
Lewis E. Ford
M. Whilldin Foster
Andrew G. Friedricks
H. E. Friesell
Donald Mackey Gallie
Simeon H. Guilford
James H. Harris
Thomas P. Hinman
Joseph P. Hodgen
Frank Holland
George Edwin Hunt
A. O. Hunt
R. E. Hutchenson
C. N. Johnson
G. S. Junkerman
John Hanger Kennerly
Edward C. Kirk
John Sayre Marshall
D. J. McMillen
Herbert C. Miller
Thomas Morffew
Alfred Owre
J. D. Patterson
Daniel H. Squire
Richard L. Simpson
J. B. Singleton
B. Holly Smith
Arthur L. Swift
Henry C. Thompson
Henry B. Tileston
Eugene T. Vincent
A. E. Webster
F. L. Whitman

ADDITIONAL LIST FOR FOURTH EDITION.

Arthur W. Gray
M. L. Rhein
R. Ottolengui
Elmer S. Best
Carl J. Grove
Frederick B. Noyes
I. D. Branch
Harry S. Chase
D. E. Caush
Paul Poetschke
C. J. Grieves
Arthur B. Crane
Harry B. Johnston
Arthur D. Black
Thomas B. Hartzel
Chas. Tomes
S. J. Salter
Arthur Hopewell-Smith

CONTENTS

PART I.

CHAPTER I. Page
Instrument Nomenclature 17

CHAPTER II.
Cavity Nomenclature 21

CHAPTER III.
Cavity Preparation. (General Considerations.) 29

CHAPTER IV.
Gaining Access 31

CHAPTER V.
Outline Form 34

CHAPTER VI.
Resistance Form 38

CHAPTER VII.
Retention Form 40

CHAPTER VIII.
Convenience Form 42

CHAPTER IX.
Removal of Remaining Carious Dentine.—Finishing Enamel Walls.—Toilet of the Cavity 44

CHAPTER X.
Management of Pit and Fissure Cavities. (Class One.) 48

CHAPTER XI.
Management of Pit and Fissure Cavities. (Class One, Concluded.) . 52

CHAPTER XII.
Management of Proximal Cavities in Bicuspids and Molars. (Class Two.) 58

CHAPTER XIII.
Large Proximal Cavities Endangering the Pulp. (Class Two, Continued.) 65

CHAPTER XIV. Page

MANAGEMENT OF PROXIMAL CAVITIES IN INCISORS AND CUSPIDS NOT INVOLVING THE ANGLE. (CLASS THREE.) 72

CHAPTER XV.

MANAGEMENT OF PROXIMAL CAVITIES IN INCISORS INVOLVING THE ANGLE. (CLASS FOUR.) 78

CHAPTER XVI.

MANAGEMENT OF CAVITIES IN THE GINGIVAL THIRD. (CLASS FIVE.) 93

CHAPTER XVII.

MANAGEMENT OF ABRADED SURFACES. OCCLUSAL AND INCISAL. (CLASS SIX.) 96

CHAPTER XVIII.

CAVITY PREPARATION FOR GOLD INLAYS 98

PART II.

CHAPTER XIX.

THE MAKING AND SETTING OF A GOLD INLAY 112

CHAPTER XX.

MANIPULATION OF COHESIVE GOLD IN THE MAKING OF A FILLING 123

CHAPTER XXI.

MANIPULATION OF COHESIVE GOLD IN THE MAKING OF FILLINGS BY CLASSES . 129

CHAPTER XXII.

FINISHING GOLD FILLINGS 137

CHAPTER XXIII.

MANIPULATION OF AMALGAM IN THE MAKING OF A FILLING 139

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE USE OF CEMENTS IN FILLING TEETH 182

CHAPTER XXV.

MANIPULATION OF SILICATE IN THE MAKING OF A FILLING 184

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE USE OF GUTTA-PERCHA IN FILLING TEETH 200

CHAPTER XXVII.

TIN AS A FILLING MATERIAL 202

CHAPTER XXVIII.

COMBINATION FILLINGS 205

PART III.

CHAPTER XXIX. Page

EXAMINATION OF THE MOUTH LOOKING TO DENTAL SERVICES 210

CHAPTER XXX.

THE ALLEVIATION OF DENTAL PAINS 213

CHAPTER XXXI.

PROPHYLACTIC TREATMENT OF THE MOUTH 216

CHAPTER XXXII.

EXCLUSION OF MOISTURE 223

CHAPTER XXXIII.

TREATMENT OF HYPERSENSITIVE DENTINE 231

CHAPTER XXXIV.

PROTECTION OF THE VITAL PULP 240

CHAPTER XXXV.

PULPOTOMY, PULPECTOMY AND PARTIAL PULPECTOMY 247

CHAPTER XXXVI.

MANAGEMENT OF PUTRESCENT PULP CANALS 298

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE FILLING OF PULP CANALS 316

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

MANAGEMENT OF CHILDREN'S TEETH 325

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THE USE OF FUSED PORCELAIN IN FILLING TEETH 329

CHAPTER XL

PREPARATION OF CAVITIES FOR PORCELAIN INLAYS 332

CHAPTER XLI

THE CONSTRUCTION AND PLACING OF A PORCELAIN INLAY 342

APPENDIX

REVIEW OF DENTAL HISTOLOGY 348

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG. PAGE

1. Defects in enamel 21
2. Defects in enamel 22
3. Smooth surface decay 23
4. Smooth surface decay 23
5. Class One cavities filled 24
6. Class Two cavity filled 24
7. Class Three cavity filled 25
8. Class Four cavity filled 25
9. Class Five cavity filled 25
10. Bisected molar in which a mesial Class Two cavity has been cut and line angles indicated 26
11. Bisected molar in which a mesial Class Two cavity has been cut and point angles indicated 26
12. Diagram of tooth, giving angles and surfaces 27
13. Technic group illustrating outline form 35
14. Another view of cavities illustrated in Fig. 13 35
15. Fillings in place in cavities shown in Figs. 13 and 14 36
16. Another view of fillings shown in Fig. 15 36
17. Complex Class One cavity prepared 50
18. Class One filled. Cavity shown in Fig. 17 51
19. Large Class One cavities prepared 53
20. Class One filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 19 54
21. Lingual pit cavities 55
22. Class One filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 21 56
23. One of the few cases in which the step may be omitted in Class Two cavities 60
24. Class Two cavities in molar and bicuspid suitable for cohesive gold or amalgam 61
25. Class Two filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 24 62
26. Fillings shown in Fig. 25 contacted, illustrating the marble contact . . 63
27. Large Class Two cavities in non-vital teeth restoring part of the occlusal surface for the protection of weakened walls 67
28. Class Two filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 27 67
29. Mesio-occluso-distal cavities in molar and bicuspid, vital teeth 68
30. Mesio-occluso-distal fillings. Cavities shown in Fig. 29 68
31. (*A*) First superior molar, non-vital, restoring the lingual cusps. (*B*) Second superior bicuspid, non-vital, restoring the entire occlusal surface 69
32. Class Two filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 31 69
33. Class Three cavities filled 73
34. Drawing to illustrate the retention at the incisal angle of Class Three cavity 75
35. Class Three cavities prepared for cohesive gold 76
36. Class Three filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 35 76
37. Drawings to illustrate the principle of the lever in the dislodgement of fillings of the Fourth Class, plan one 79
38. Drawings to illustrate the principle of the lever in the dislodgement of fillings of the Fourth Class, plans one and two 80
39. Drawing to illustrate the difference in the directions the point angle fillings take in tipping to exit with various fillings 82

FIG. PAGE
40. Drawings to illustrate the importance which should be given to the proper placing of the incisal point angle in fillings of Class Four, plan two 83
41. A study in the proper placing and depth of the gingival angles . . . 84
42. A study of the planes in which the gingival angles should be laid . . 84
43. Cavity of Class Four, plan one, for cohesive gold 85
44. Class Four, plan one, cavity filled 85
45. Shows incisal outline in Class Four, plan one, fillings with direct occlusion 86
46. Cavity of Class Four, plan two, for cohesive gold 88
47. Class Four, plan two, filled 88
48. Cavity of Class Four, plan three, for cohesive gold 89
49. Class Four, plan three, filled 89
50. Cavity of Class Four, plan four, for cohesive gold 91
51. Class Four, plan four, filled 91
52. Cavity of Class Four, modified plan three, for cohesive gold in the distal of the superior cuspid 92
53. Class Four, modified plan three, filled 92
54. Cavities Class Five for cohesive gold or amalgam 93
55. Class Five filled 94
56. Cavities of Class One for gold inlays 101
57. Class One inlay in position showing gold wire cast in the filling . . . 102
58. Cavities of Class Two for gold inlays 103
59. Cavity of Class Three for gold inlay, lingual approach 105
60. Inlay shown in Fig. 59 partly in place 105
61. Cavity of Class Four, plan one, for gold inlay 106
62. Class Four, plan one, inlay in position 106
63. Cavity of Class Four, plan two, for gold inlay 107
64. Class Four, plan two, gold inlay in position 107
65. Cavity of Class Four, plan three, for gold inlay 108
66. Class Four, plan three, inlay in position 108
67. Cavity of Class Four, plan four, for gold inlay 109
68. Class Four, plan four, showing cavity side of pattern with pins . . . 109
69. Class Four, plan four, inlay in position before removing wire loop . . 109
70. Class Five cavity and inlay 110
71. Shows the necessary amount of metal for adequate protection of abraded surfaces, when opening the bite 110
72. Large restoration in non-vital case 113
73. Some of the methods by which inlays may be given retentive form in large decays and non-vital cases 115
74. Starting cohesive gold, first plan 130
75. Starting cohesive gold, second plan 131
76. Starting cohesive gold, third plan 132
77. Burnishing back excess gold foil in covering the gingival margin . . 133
78. Covering the gingivo-lingual angle with cohesive gold 134
79. Apparent contraction of tin amalgam 156
80. Tin amalgam expands while hardening 157
82. Reaction expansion of a dental amalgam 158
81. Tin amalgam moulded under 100 kg. per cir. cm. 161
83. Too little mercury used in mixing the dental amalgam 161
84. Imperfect amalgamation. Too little trituration 161
85. Imperfect amalgamation. Too much trituration 161
86. Good alloy correctly amalgamated 176
87. Results of correctly and incorrectly amalgamating same high A grade dental alloy 162
88. Crushing strength of amalgam 164
89. Increasing packing pressure 164

FIG. PAGE
90. Further increasing packing pressure 165
91. Gain in crushing strength produced by increasing trituration time . . 165
92. Dimensional changes of amalgam during hardening 167
93. Influence of packing pressure on the reaction expansion of a dental amalgam 168
94. Influence of size of alloy particles on reaction expansion 169
95. Modification of Fig. 94 by increasing packing pressure 170
96. Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 100 kg. per cir. cm. 171
97. Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 200 kg. per cir. cm. 172
98. Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 400 kg. per cir. cm. 173
99. Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 800 kg. per cir. cm. 174
100. Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 1600 kg. per cir. cm. 175
101. Close structure of amalgam suggests good quality 176
102. Rather coarse-grained amalgam 176
103. Amalgam from rather coarsely cut alloy 176
104. Amalgams from four well-known American high-silver dental alloys 177
105. Suitable cavities for the use of silicate fillings 185
106. A Class One cavity on the labial of a central incisor properly prepared for a silicate filling 185
107. Extensive Class Three cavity properly prepared for silicate filling . . 186
108. A Class Five and a Class Three cavity suitable for the use of silicate as a filling 186
109. A Class Five cavity properly prepared for a silicate filling 187
110. A Class Three cavity, lingual approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling 187
111. A small Class Three cavity properly prepared for a silicate filling . 188
112. A small Class Three cavity, lingual approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling 188
113. A large Class Three cavity, labial approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling 188
114. A large Class Three cavity, lingual approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling 188
115. A large Class Three cavity properly prepared for a silicate filling . . 189
116. Two extensive Class Three cavities properly prepared for a silicate filling 189
117. A small set of instruments for manipulating silicate 190
118. A suitable slab and spatula for working silicate 191
119. Proper position of the spatula on the slab when manipulating silicate 192
120. Proper placing of the materials when manipulating silicate . . . 192
121. Mixing the silicate filling 193
122. Mixing the silicate filling 193
123. Circular motion used in mixing the silicate filling 194
124. Scraping the material from the slab 195
125. The entire mix on the spatula 196
126. Method of removing the mix from the spatula to the slab 196
127. Proper consistency of silicate 197
128. Shows mix of silicate too thin 197
129. A homemade mallet and point 198
130. Three cavities suitable for silicate fillings 199
131. Shows the results obtained after filling with silicate the cavities shown in Fig. 130 199

FIG. PAGE
132. Combination gold inlay and silicate 207
133. Amalgam in position ready to receive a partial facing of silicate . . 208
134. Amalgam filling shown in Fig. 133 with the silicate facing built in 208
135. Photomicrograph of section of upper left cuspid 249
136. Photomicrograph of section of first left lower molar 249
137. Photomicrograph of section of left lower lateral 250
138. Photomicrograph of section of right lower central 250
139. Photomicrograph of section of first left upper molar, mesio-buccal root 251
140. Photomicrograph of section of second right superior bicuspid . . 251
141. Photomicrograph of section of second left lower bicuspid 252
142. Photomicrograph of section of right superior cuspid 252
143. Photomicrograph of section of right inferior lateral 253
144. Photomicrograph of section of left superior central 253
145. Photomicrograph of section of right inferior cuspid 254
146. Photomicrograph of section of second left superior bicuspid . . . 254
147. Photomicrograph of section of second right superior bicuspid . . . 255
148. Photomicrograph of section of left superior lateral 255
149. Photomicrograph of section of left inferior central 256
150. Photomicrograph of section of second right inferior molar distal root 256
151. Photomicrograph of section of second left inferior bicuspid . . . 257
152. Photomicrograph of section of right superior cuspid 257
153. Photomicrograph of section of right inferior cuspid 258
154. Photomicrograph of section of second left superior bicuspid . . . 258
155. Photomicrograph of section of left superior cuspid 259
156. Photomicrograph of section of first left superior bicuspid, lingual root 259
157. Photomicrograph of section of first right inferior bicuspid 260
158. Photomicrograph of section of first right superior bicuspid buccal root 260
159. Photomicrograph of section of second upper right bicuspid . . . 261
160. Photomicrograph of section of left lower cuspid 261
161. Photomicrograph of section of first left lower molar distal root . . 262
162. Photomicrograph of section of first right superior molar lingual root 262
163. Photomicrograph of section of first right inferior molar distal root . 263
164. Photomicrograph of section of first right superior molar mesial buccal root 263
165. Photomicrograph of section of second left inferior molar distal root 264
166. Photomicrograph of section of first left superior molar distal buccal root 264
167. Photomicrograph of section of second right superior bicuspid . . . 265
168. Photomicrograph of section of first left inferior bicuspid 265
169. Photomicrograph of section of second right superior bicuspid . . . 266
170. Photomicrograph of section of right superior cuspid 266
171. Photomicrograph of section of right inferior cuspid 267
172. Photomicrograph of section of right superior cuspid 267
173. Photomicrograph of section of left inferior lateral 268
174. Photomicrograph of section of right inferior central 268
175. Photomicrograph of section of right inferior central 269
176. Photomicrograph of section of second right inferior molar . . . 269
177. Photomicrograph of section of second left superior bicuspid . . . 270
178. Radiograph taken after partial root fillings had been in place eight years 273
179. Radiograph taken some years after an accidental partial root filling 273
180. Radiograph of root filling that had been in place many years . . . 273
181. Radiograph of three teeth with root fillings 273
182. Radiograph of tooth with root filling in two years 274
183. Pulp of tooth removed with cocain pressure 274
184. Cross section of lower bicuspid six years after partial pulpectomy . 274
185. Radiograph of first superior bicuspid 278
186-213. Photomicrographs of sections of teeth 278-288

FIG. PAGE
214. Suitable places for excision in partial pulpectomy 288
215. Radiograph of tooth to which bridge had been attached for some years. Active hyperemic pulp 289
216. Radiograph showing diagnostic wire in position following operation of partial pulpectomy 289
217. Radiograph showing root filling in position two days after operation . 290
218. Radiograph of case three months after partial pulpectomy 290
219. Radiograph of case one year and one month after partial pulpectomy 290
220. Radiograph of case one year and seven months after partial pulpectomy 290
221. Radiograph of case four years and six months after partial pulpectomy 291
222. Pulp knife 291
223. Pulp knives 293
224. Drawing to illustrate the completed operation when the amputation has been near the end of the root 293
225-230. Radiographs taken after partial pulpectomy 296
231-242. Radiographs showing root canal fillings 311-314
243. Broach passing out through foramina of tooth 317
244. Sharp-pointed broach engaged in side walls of pulp canal . . . 318
245-246. Test to determine suitability of instrument for pulp canal work 319
247-251. Photomicrographs of broaches 320
252. Cavity preparation for a Class Two porcelain inlay 333
253. A Class Three cavity labial approach for porcelain inlay 334
254. A Class Three cavity lingual approach for porcelain inlay 335
255. A Class Four cavity incisal approach for porcelain inlay 336
256. A Class Four, plan one, inciso-proximal approach for porcelain inlay . 336
257. A Class Four, plan three, for porcelain inlay 337
258. A Class Four, plan four, for porcelain inlay 338
259. Class Five cavities for porcelain inlay 339
260. Incisal cavity for porcelain inlay 340
261. A Class Six cavity using pin anchorage for porcelain inlay . . . 341

OPERATIVE DENTISTRY

PART I

CHAPTER I.

INSTRUMENT NOMENCLATURE.

A dental instrument is an appliance, or tool, by means of which a dentist performs dental operations. It is quite essential that we learn the names and uses of the instruments most in use if we are to understand the teaching of operative procedures.

Instruments are named according to the purpose for which they are intended, where and how used, by describing their working points and the shape of their shank.

An order name describes that for which an instrument is used, as for example, excavator, clamp, mallet, plugger, burnisher, etc.

A sub-order name describes where or how an instrument of a given order is used and is made by inserting a prefix before the order name. Examples are hand pluggers, push or pull scalers, etc.

A class name describes the working point of an instrument. Examples are serrated plugger, ball burnisher, chisel, hatchet, etc.

A sub-class name describes the shape of the shank, and is made by prefixing this description to the class or order name or to both combined. Examples are bayonet plugger, bin-angle chisel, mon-angle hatchet excavator, etc.

Rights and lefts are made as further divisions of many of the sub-classes of instruments and this division is especially advantageous in the spoons, bin-angle, contra-angle hatchets and marginal trimmers, as it enables the user to do the work by a movement of the instrument from right to left, or left to right, respectively.

An excavator is that order of hand instrument used in the removal of tooth substance preparatory to the making of a filling.

A chisel is that class of excavator which has the cutting edge placed at right angles to the shaft, is sharpened by grinding on one side only and is used by a pushing force applied in the direction of the long axis of the shaft.

The chisel edge is made with a bevel at an angle calculated to plane and cleave a substance possessed of a grain, and is so tempered as to retain an edge when working on hard substances.

The use of the chisel is, therefore, the cleaving and planing of enamel. The planing of dentine may be done with a chisel or with other instruments of a similar edge.

Chisels are divided into sub-classes according to the shapes of their shanks, as straight, bin-angle, contra-angle, etc.

A hoe is that class of excavator with the cutting edge at a right angle with the shaft, sharpened on the distal side only and is used by a pulling force applied parallel with the long axis of the shaft.

Hoes are divided into sub-classes according to the shape of their shanks, as, mon-angle, bin-angle, contra-angle and triple-angle contra-angle. The hoe is used mostly for cutting dentine.

A hatchet is that class of excavator with the line of the cutting edge laid in the plane parallel with the long axis of the shaft.

Hatchets are divided into sub-classes the same as the hoes, according to the shape of their shank, as, mon-angle, bin-angle and triple-angle contra-angle. The hatchet form is indispensable for the construction of flat walls and internal surfaces, the straightening of lines and the sharpening of angles.

A gingival marginal trimmer is a modified hatchet.

A spoon is that class of excavator which resembles in most respects the hatchet, other than the cutting edge. This is sharpened on one side only which is rounded like the convex side of the bowl of a spoon from which it derives its name. The cutting edge is rounded and sharpened to a thin edge. Spoons are always made rights and lefts.

The use of a spoon is to remove foreign matter and softened dentine from the tooth cavity.

The angles between the shank and the working part are designated as mon-angle, bin-angles, and triple-angles, according to the number of angles used being one, two or three, respectively.

The contra-angle is the placing of such angles in the shank of the instrument as to bring the cutting edge near the central line of the shaft which removes the tendency to tip or turn in the hand during use.

Bin-angles and **triple-angles** are properly made only when contra-angled, provided the cutting edge is more than three millimeters from the central line of the shaft.

Formula Names. Some instruments have the formula stamped on the handle in figures. There are generally three numbers given. The first is the width of the blade in tenths of a millimeter. The second is the length of the blade given in millimeters. The third is the angle of the blade with its handle given in the hundredths of a circle.

When a four-number formula is given, as with gingival marginal trimmers, the second number in the name designates the angle of the cutting edge of the blade with shaft or handle. This is also given in the hundredths of a circle.

A plugger is an order of instrument for the packing of material in the making of a filling. Those for gold are serrated on the working point in such shape as to result in a surface made up of prisms. These prisms should be of exactly the same size on all the points used in any individual filling when packing cohesive gold, as the interchange of points of different-sized serrations causes bridging. (See manipulation of cohesive gold, Chapter XX.)

The dental engine is almost indispensable and when properly used is a blessing to our patients and a time-saver to the dentist. However, it is all too frequently used, especially by students and young practitioners, to do things which can properly be done only with the hand instruments. The misuse of the dental engine has caused the public to regard it as the climax of all pain-producing instruments in the dental office, when in reality, if that which should be done with the engine is properly done, only a few seconds of pain is induced in the preparation of a very severe cavity.

The engine bur is the working point of the engine and is made in many shapes and sizes. However, those which are round and inverted cones, whose diameter is smaller than one millimeter, are most frequently indicated. The tendency of the beginner is to use too large burs. Burs are primarily intended to cut dentine in outlining cavity walls, and for undermining enamel to facilitate the use of hand instruments and they should rarely come in contact with the enamel.

The most indispensable use of the engine is for the polishing and grinding necessary to the successful termination of many varied operations, both in and out of the mouth.

The sharpening of instruments is of the utmost importance and is by no means accomplished without skill. No better can a dentist execute finished work than can a tradesman whose tools must be keen of edge if he is to produce that which is worthy of his craft. Again, dull instruments cause an undue amount of pain at each attempt to cut, whereas when sharp, the pain is less and the effort in cutting is materially lessened, resulting in a saving of pain to the patient and time and energy to the dentist. A hard, smooth Arkansas stone is the only suitable abrasive and should be well oiled and wiped with a cloth after each use.

Care of Instruments. As the instruments are shipped to the dentist they are usually made and sharpened especially for the use intended and care should be exercised in sharpening that the degree of the angle of the beveled edge is not changed.

Tests for Sharpness. An instrument is tested for sharpness best by placing the edge with light pressure against the finger nail and attempting to move it across the surface at right angles to the edge. If it catches or clings to the nail it is ready for use.

Note.—The author advises that before taking up the consideration of the next chapter, the student should review some of the facts of dental anatomy and histology, which will be found as the appendix beginning on page 312.

CHAPTER II.

CAVITY NOMENCLATURE.

A cavity nomenclature is necessary that we may understand one another in conversing about the formation of cavities, the description of their several parts and the methods of procedure in the preparation of cavities for fillings.

Cavities derive their names from the surfaces of the teeth in which they occur. Thus occlusal cavity, buccal cavity, labial cavity, etc., are cavities occurring in the surfaces named.

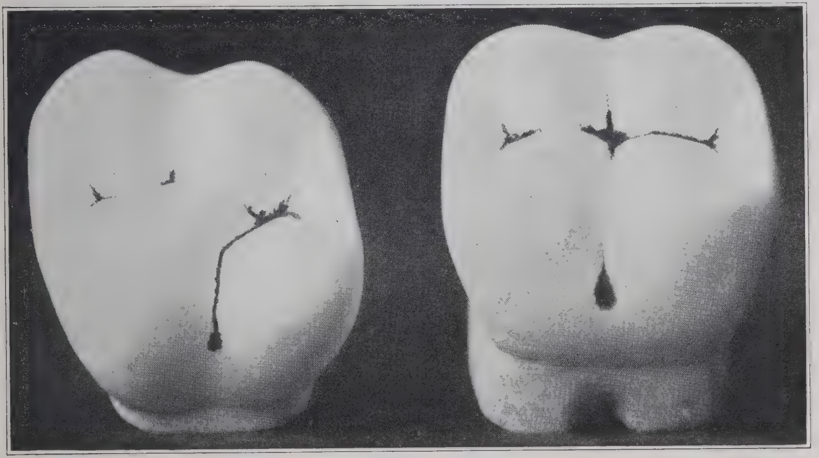


Fig. 1.—Defects in enamel.

A simple cavity is one which involves but one surface.

A complex cavity is one which, either from decay or extension in preparation, involves more than one surface.

Complex cavities are named by combining the names of the surfaces of the tooth involved, as mesio-occlusal, disto-occlusal, mesio-disto-occlusal, etc.

An axial surface cavity is one which occurs in an axial surface.

Proximal Cavities are axial surface cavities occurring in the proximal surfaces and are divided into two classes, namely, mesial and distal.

Cavities are divided as to their origin into two groups.

First. Pit and fissure cavities, which are those originating in the minute faults in the enamel. (See Figs. 1 and 2.)

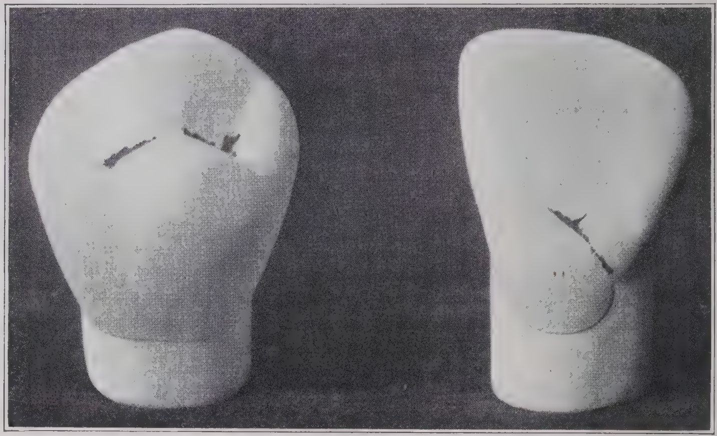
Second. Smooth surface cavities, which are those occurring on surfaces without defects in the enamel, but are habitually unclean. (See Figs. 3 and 4.)

Cavities are divided according to similarity in line of treatment into six divisions.

Class One. Those cavities beginning in structural defects. (Pits and fissures.)

Class Two. Those cavities in the proximal surfaces of bicuspids and molars.

Class Three. Those cavities in the proximal surfaces of incisors and cuspids not involving the incisal angle.



A *B*

Fig. 2.—Defects in enamel.

Class Four. Those cavities in the proximal surfaces of incisors and cuspids which require the restoration of the incisal angle.

Class Five. Those cavities in the gingival third of the labial, buccal and lingual surfaces not originating in faults in enamel.

Class Six. Abraded surfaces.

The outside walls of a cavity are those walls placed toward the outside surfaces of a tooth and take the names of the surfaces of the tooth toward which they are placed, as in an occlusal cavity the outside walls are buccal, distal, mesial and lingual, while the fifth or internal wall is the pulpal.

The pulpal wall is that inside wall of a cavity which covers the pulp and is in a plane at right angles to the long axis of the tooth.

In case the pulp is removed the pulpal wall becomes the subpulpal wall, in multi-rooted teeth.

The axial wall is the inside wall of an axial surface cavity which covers the pulp and is in a plane parallel to the long axis of the tooth.

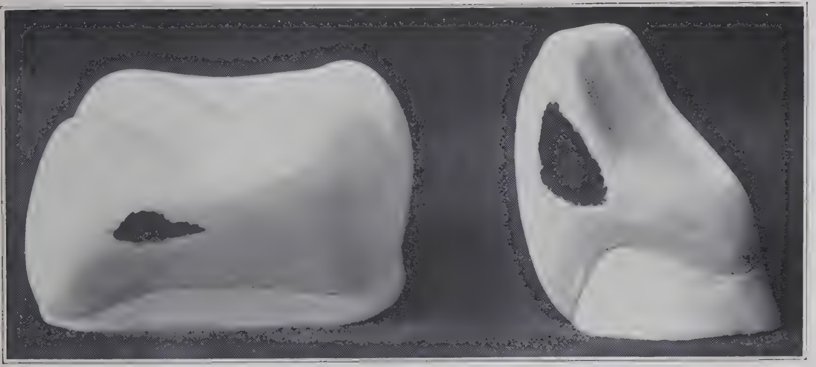


Fig. 3.—Smooth surface decay.

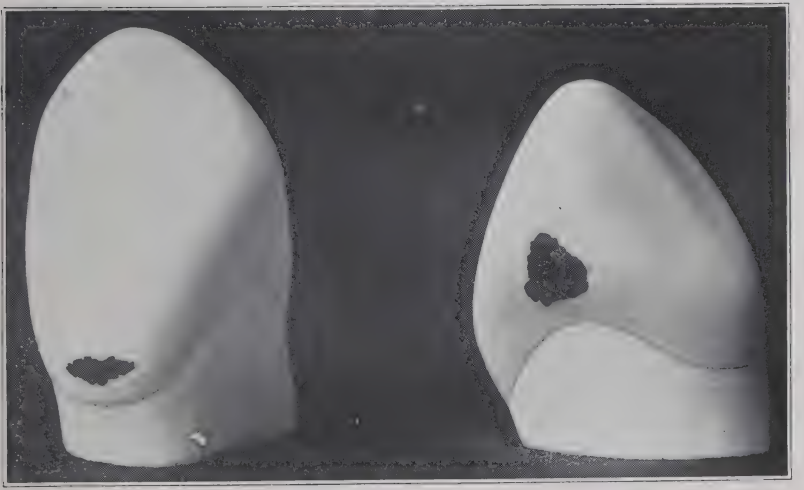


Fig. 4.—Smooth surface decay.

In case the pulp is removed in an axial surface cavity the axial wall becomes an outside wall and takes the name of the surface of the tooth toward which it is placed.

The gingival wall is the inside wall of an axial surface cavity placed toward, and running in the same plane as, the gingivae.

Both gingival and sub-pulpal walls may be present in cases of pulp removal in mesio-occlusal, disto-occlusal, and mesio-disto-occlusal cavities when each is on a different level and the individuality of each wall is retained.

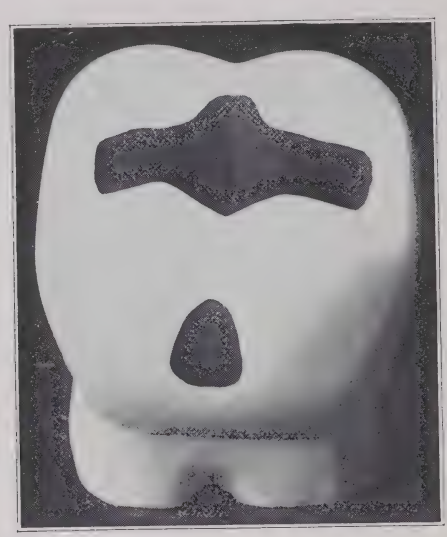


Fig. 5.—Class One cavities filled.

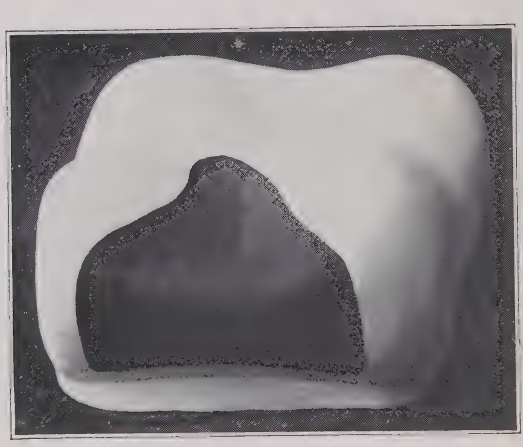


Fig. 6.—Class Two cavity filled.

The inside walls of a cavity are those placed toward the pulp or root of a tooth.

The base of a cavity, or seat of a filling, is that portion of a cavity situated at right angles to the lines of force to which it is most likely to be subjected. Generally speaking, this is the gingival or pulpal wall, or both, where these walls are present, as in a step cavity.

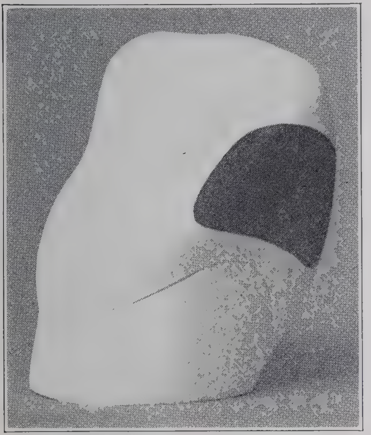


Fig. 7.—Class Three cavity filled.

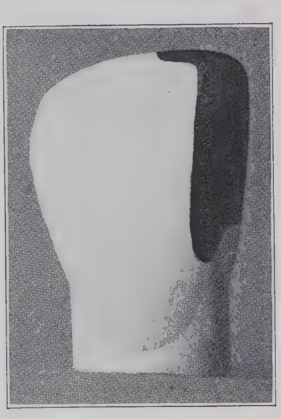


Fig. 8.—Class Four cavity filled.

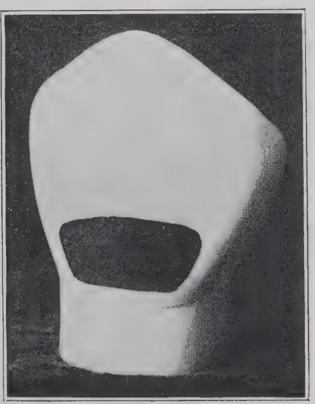
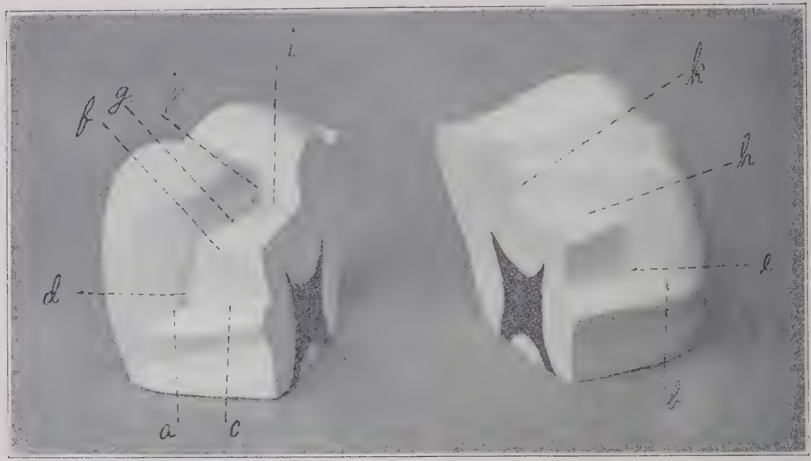


Fig. 9.—Class Five cavity filled.

A line angle is formed where two walls of a cavity meet along a line and is named by joining the names of the walls so meeting.

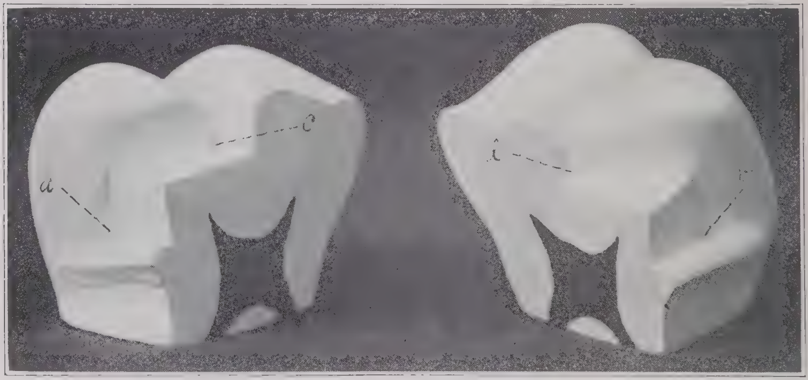
There is but one exception to this rule. That is where the labial and lingual walls of a proximal cavity in the incisors and cuspids meet along a line. By applying the rule this would be called the labio-lingual angle, but for convenience this is named the "incisal-line angle."

A point angle is formed where three walls of a cavity meet at



A B

Fig. 10.—Bisected molar in which a mesial Class Two cavity has been cut and line angles indicated. The line angles are: *a*, Gingivo-buccal; *b*, Gingivo-lingual; *c*, Gingivo-axial; *d*, Axio-buccal; *e*, Axio-lingual; *f*, Axio-pulpal; *g*, Pulpo-buccal; *h*, Pulpo-lingual; *i*, Pulpo-distal; *j*, Disto-buccal; *k*, Disto-lingual.



A B

Fig. 11.—Bisected molar in which a mesial Class Two cavity has been cut and point angles indicated. The point angles are: *a*, Gingivo-axio-buccal; *b*, Gingivo-axio-lingual; *d*, Pulpo-disto-lingual; *e*, Pulpo-disto-buccal.

a point and is named by joining the names of the walls so meeting.

There is but one exception to this rule. The point of junction of the axial, labial and lingual walls in proximal cavities in the six anterior teeth is, for convenience, named the "incisal angle."

A simple cavity has two sets of line angles. First, the internal line angles surrounding the internal wall, which is the axial wall in axial surface cavities, and the pulpal wall in occlusal cavities.

The second set of external line angles is formed by the junction of the outside walls with each other.

The enamel margin is that point on the surface of the tooth where the cavity begins in enamel.

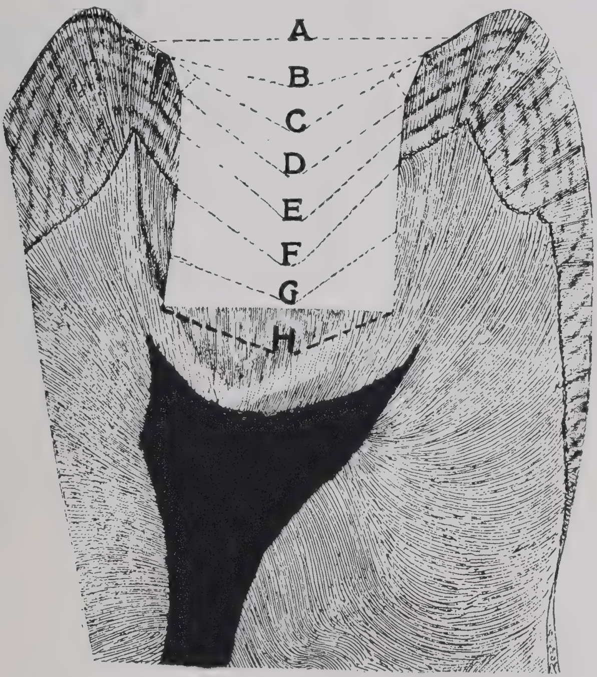


Fig. 12.—*A,* External enamel surface; *B,* Cavo-surface angle; *C,* Marginal bevel; *D,* Bevel angle; *E,* Enamel wall; *F,* Dento-enamel junction; *G,* Dentinal wall; *H,* Base line angles.

The external enamel line is the entire outline of the cavity at its enamel margin.

The cavo-surface angle is the angle formed by the junction of the wall of the cavity with the external surface of the tooth.

The base of the cavo-surface angle is the external enamel surface.

The marginal bevel of a cavity is the deflection of a cavity wall from its established plane, near the external enamel line.

It is necessary that beveling be resorted to, in order to manage the enamel margins, direct the external enamel line and control the degree of the cavo-surface angle, without disturbing the general retentive form of the cavity.

The bevel angle is the angle formed by the junction of the marginal bevel with the remaining portion of the wall of which it is a part.

The base of the bevel angle is the remaining portion of the cavity wall.

The bevel angle is covered when the filling is in position. Its distance from the enamel margin depends upon the filling material used, and the location in the cavity outline. To illustrate: With porcelain inlays and amalgam the bevel angle must be deeply buried, resulting in a thicker edge of filling material. With cast gold inlays and platinum combination fillings the bevel angle should be near the surface, resulting in a short marginal bevel. The distance of the bevel angle from the cavo-surface angle must not affect the degree of the latter angle but determines only the length of the bevel and the thickness of the filling at its margin.

The planes of a tooth are three in number; horizontal plane, mesio-distal plane and bucco-lingual plane.

The horizontal plane is at right angles to the long axis of the tooth.

The mesio-distal plane passes through the tooth from mesial to distal parallel with the long axis.

The bucco-lingual plane passes through the tooth from buccal to lingual parallel with the long axis of the tooth. In the six anterior teeth this plane would be labio-lingual.

CHAPTER III.

CAVITY PREPARATION. (GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS.)

Definition of Cavity Preparation. Cavity preparation is that term applied to those mechanical procedures upon a tooth, looking to the making of a filling, as well as those changes and extensions necessary to resist stress and prevent a recurrence of decay.

Affected Dentine is dentine which has been acted upon by the lactic acid in advance of the micro-organisms of caries.

Infected Dentine is dentine which has been penetrated by micro-organisms.

Objects in Filling Teeth. There are four general objects in view in the filling of teeth:

First.—To arrest the loss of tooth substance.

Second.—To prevent recurrence of caries.

Third.—To restore full tooth contour.

Fourth.—To improve the primary conditions as to the performance of function and esthetic effects.

A Completed Cavity should be a combination of flat walls coming together at definite angles, surrounded by an external line made up of the largest curves permissible.

The Line Angles within a cavity, which are a necessary part of resistance and retention forms, should never be permitted to end in the external enamel line.

Order of Procedure. To simplify the preparation of all cavities and to insure the observance of certain fundamental principles it is well to follow a definite order of procedure. This will greatly facilitate the operations of the student and lead to the establishment of habits by the practitioner which will stand for thorough methods of execution.

The following would seem to be the natural order:

First.—Gain access.

Second.—Outline form.

Third.—Resistance form.

Fourth.—Retention form.

Fifth.—Convenience form.

Sixth.—Removal of remaining decay.

Seventh.—Finishing of enamel walls.

Eighth.—Toilet of the cavity.

Modification of Form is necessary in cavity preparation to meet the various properties of the different filling materials used. This is particularly true when considering the difference in edge strength and flow of metals and alloys.

The character of the oral fluids, the evident care bestowed upon the teeth, condition of patient's health, age of patient and the life expectancy of the patient and of the individual teeth, will frequently require a modification of cavity formation to best resist the recurrence of decay and the dislodgement of the filling through stress.

CHAPTER IV.

GAINING ACCESS.

Definition. Gaining access is the term applied to those procedures necessary to make sufficient room for the proper introduction of the filling.

Sufficient Access is Important, that we may have the advantage of space to properly handle the instruments and appliances used in the procedures of making a filling, that we may be able to introduce the filling into the cavity, that there may be complete contour restoration of tooth form and that the desired contact relation may be established to the adjacent tooth.

Access to the Tooth is the first consideration and will involve the opening of the mouth to a sufficient degree to permit of the free use of the usual appliances. The proximal spaces used for the adjustment of the dam should be examined to make sure that the rubber and ligatures will pass to the gingival line without injury. A sufficient number of teeth should be isolated, say four or five, to give a clear and unobstructive view of the cavity and surrounding teeth.

The operator must be able to bring the cavity into full view. Cases where there has been considerable decay sub-gingivally, and tumefaction of the gum septa has taken place, proper access will involve the packing of the cavity with a tampon of cotton which has been dipped in chlora-percha, or a packing of gutta-percha, for a period of twenty-four or forty-eight hours, to crowd the encroaching gum tissue from the cavity. A neglect of this consideration of access will often make proper management of the gingival wall and margin most difficult or impossible.

Surgical Access may be practiced on the cavity margins, when all tooth structure thus removed will subsequently be replaced with filling material. It may be practiced on the gum septa when there has been excessive tumefaction in the proximal space.

Formerly this method was practiced with Class Five cavities where the decay was to a marked extent subgingival, and it was desired to make a cohesive gold filling. However, much of this questionable practice may now be avoided by the use of the gold inlay, made from the wax model, as the presence of the overlying gum is no considerable hindrance.

Access as Related to Restoration of Proximal Space. As tooth substance is lost through decay in proximal cavities, there is in most cases a movement of the teeth to the proximal, encroaching on the normal space, robbing the gum of sufficient room for full festoon. It is wholly impossible in such cases for the operator in making a filling to restore tooth contour, or leave a normal amount of room for the rehabitation of the gum septa, without resorting to separation. The surfaces of a tooth which are covered with healthy gum tissue are practically immune from both primary and secondary caries, and it is greatly to the advantage of a filling, the outline of which in the proximal gingival third, to be so protected. Good access should be gained by preliminary separation, so that when the completed filling with its full tooth-form restoration is in place, there is restored the normal proximal space for the habitation of the gum septa. *A failure to regard this fact* will result in a strangulated, diseased and dwarfed septa, inviting an accumulation of the enemy of tooth structure and an early loss of the filling through secondary caries.

Restoration of Tooth Form is essential that the full function of the masticating organs may be established and maintained. It is also desirable for esthetic reasons, as the more nearly a dentist approaches complete tooth contour restoration, with all its details, the more pleasing is the appearance and the more artistic the result.

Proper Contact Point is often impossible unless sufficient access has been secured through separation. This contact should be a point of contact, the embrasures widening therefrom in every direction. It should be in no sense a line of contact or a surface, no matter how small. It is advisable many times, in this respect, to improve on nature by slightly varying the surface of the filling from the original shape of the tooth, as often the predisposing cause of the primary decay has been defective contact.

The Saving of Tooth Substance is materially effected by access through preliminary separation, particularly in the placing of inlays, as the more thoroughly this first step in procedure has been accomplished the less cutting will be required for convenience form, a point of no small importance.

Methods of Separation. There are two classifications of separation to gain access, preliminary, which is also slow separation, and immediate, which is rapid, both of which are a part of gaining access.

The preliminary is a part of the first consideration, while immediate separation is brought to our attention during the introduction of the filling.

Preliminary Separation is best accomplished in proximal cavities in bicuspids and molars (Class Two) by packing into the partially excavated cavity an excess of gutta-percha base plate. A few days, or in some instances a few weeks, will suffice to accomplish the desired result, particularly if the patient uses that location in the mouth for daily mastication of solid food.

In the proximal space in the six anteriors preliminary separation is best accomplished by the use of cotton tampons tightly packed in the cavity and ligatured securely to position.

Immediate Separation is best accomplished with the mechanical separator, and should be used to gain additional access, not already secured by preliminary separation, or may be used primarily when only a small amount of additional space is desired. This instrument should be adjusted as soon as convenient after securing outline form, and removed only when the filling is finished.

Avoid Gum Injuries in the use of elastic rubber. In the use of the methods given care should be used not to crowd the gum tissue as permanent injury may result.

There are other materials used in slow separation, as linen tape, wooden wedges, etc., each with its merit and indicated use.

Soreness Resulting from Tooth Separation should be treated as any case of acute pericementitis, by giving the tooth physiological rest, and the use of stimulating applications on the gum over the tooth's root.

CHAPTER V.

OUTLINE FORM.

Definition. Outline form is that part of cavity preparation which determines the area of the tooth surface to be included within the external enamel line.

Rule 1. Extend to Sound Enamel. All cavity margins should be extended until all indications of surface decay have been included.

Rule 2. Obtain Full Length Rods. If necessary, further extend the outline until full-length enamel rods, supported by sound dentine, have been reached.

Rule 3. Self-Cleansing Margins. Extend the cavity outline until the surface of the filling can be so formed that the enamel margin not protected by the gum will be mechanically cleansed by the excursions of food in mastication.

Rule 4. In Relation to Developmental Grooves. A cavity outline should not follow a developmental groove, or parallel it so closely as to leave a small strip of intervening enamel. The outline should cross the grooves as squarely as possible.

Rule 5. Fissures and Sulcate Grooves. All fissures, sulcate grooves and angular developmental grooves encountered should be included within the cavity outline. This comes in for the greatest consideration when part of the outline is laid on an occlusal surface.

Rule 6. Enamel Eminences. The outline should avoid extreme eminences of enamel and centers of primary development. Such locations are subject to the extremes of stress during mastication. When the eminence in question is the seat of primary calcification it will be found to be less perfect in formation than the portion midway from that point to the grooves.

Rule 7. Avoid Angles in Outline. The outline should be made up of the greatest curves possible, avoiding all angles. Nearly flat axial surfaces should show nearly straight lines or the segments of very large circles, while on occlusal surfaces, which are made up of a succession of depressions and eminences, the outline should be a combination smaller curves.

Rule 8. Outline in the Embrasures. The outlines in the labial, buccal and lingual embrasures should be parallel to each other and at right angles to the seat of the cavity, and pass under the free margin of the gum at a point in full view of the operator.

Rule 9. Enamel Margins. The enamel margins should be planed smooth to a full cleavage of the enamel rods and then slightly beveled that the rods at the cavo-surface angle may be full-length rods, supported by shortened enamel rods which are protected by the overlying filling material.

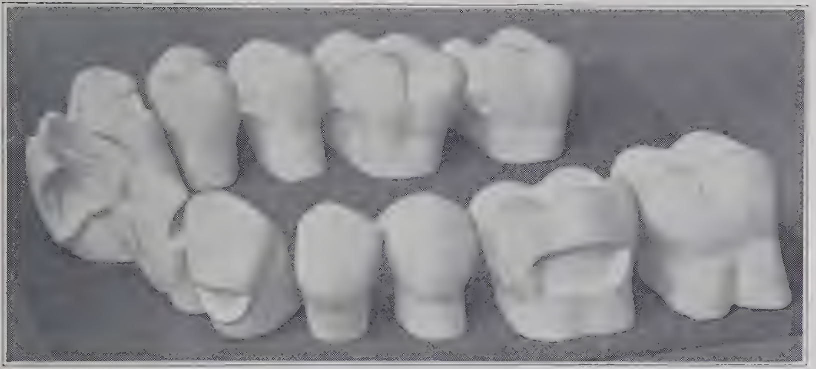


Fig. 13.—Technic group illustrating outline form.

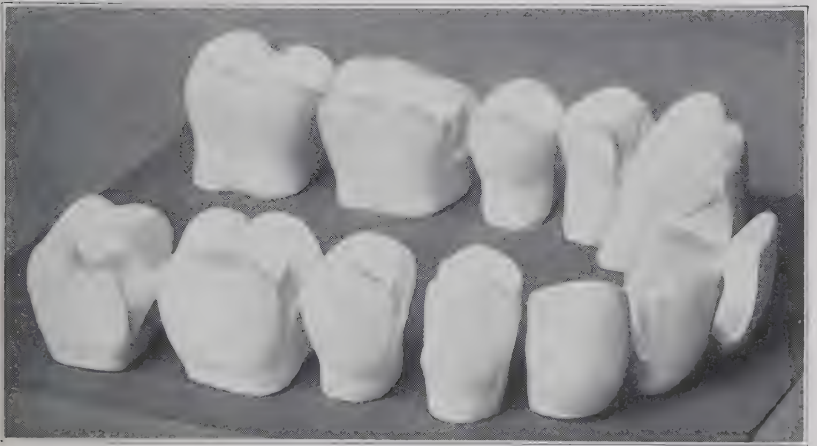


Fig. 14.—Another view of cavities illustrated in Fig. 13.

Rule 10. Extension for Prevention. When possible, carry the cavity outline from a smooth, unclean surface, an area of great liability to caries, to an area of lesser liability to caries.

This has reference to caries of enamel only and will come into consideration in cavity outline when the rules previously given have not carried the outline to comparatively safe and immune localities.

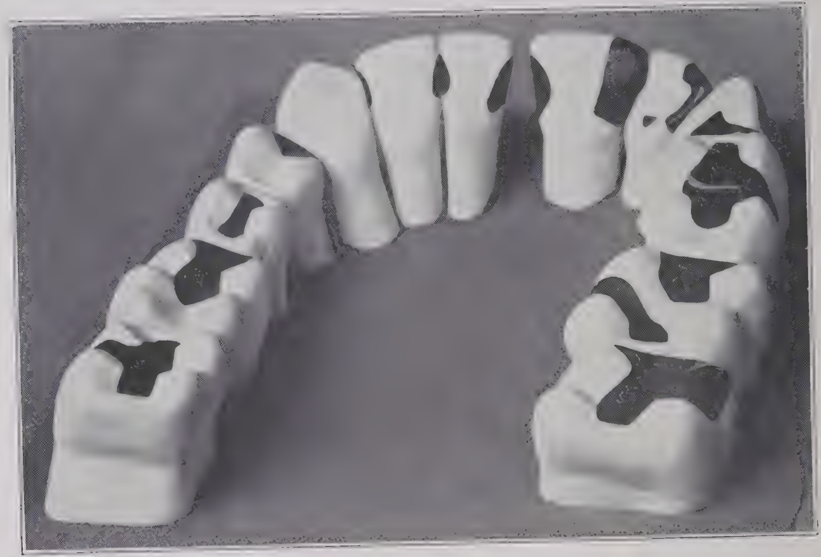


Fig. 15.—Fillings in place in cavities shown in Figs. 13 and 14.

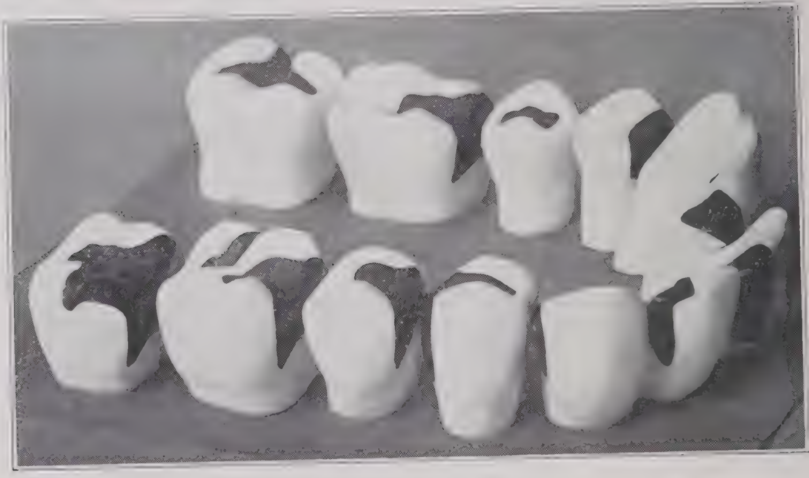


Fig. 16.—Another view of fillings shown in Fig. 15.

Extension for prevention does not mean the consideration of resistance to stress. It bears no reference to decay of the dentine. It has no relation to the management of frail walls.

Its maximum application is found in the management of small cavities where the ravages of decay have not yet carried the outline of the cavity to areas not subject to primary enamel dissolution.

The abuses of extension for prevention result in much unnecessary loss of tooth substance, while its sane and legitimate use is one of the most important factors in tooth salvage.

Dangers of Increased Cavity Outline. The danger of secondary caries increases in each mouth proportionately as the aggregate length of cavity outline is increased.

To Illustrate. If the total length of cavity outline of all fillings in a mouth is doubled by the increase in number of fillings the liability to secondary caries is doubled, all else being equal. For that reason each individual cavity should have its outline as short as permissible.

The laying of cavity outline in locations not susceptible to primary caries will materially decrease the liability to recurrent decay, even though the aggregate cavity outline in the mouth is thereby greatly lengthened. An aggregate cavity outline of two feet is preferable to a total of one foot, provided the additional length has been caused to extend to locations not liable to caries.

Outline Form.

Class One cavities, pages 48, 52, 55 and 57.
Class Two cavities, pages 59, 65 and 68.
Class Three cavities, pages 73 and 74.
Class Four cavities, pages 86, 87, 90 and 92.
Class Five cavities, page 94.

CHAPTER VI.

RESISTANCE FORM.

Definition.—*Extension for resistance* is a term applied to that procedure which has for its sole object the carrying of the cavity outline from localities subjected to great stress, to localities not frequently subjected to the crushing strain. This is often mistaken for extension for prevention, whereas it has reference only to resistance to stress.

A proper application of this procedure will involve a careful study of occlusion and articulation in each individual case.

Resistance form involves a consideration of the management of weakened enamel walls and a study of the flow and edge strength of the filling material used with a view of so shaping the cavity as to minimize the effects of the crushing strain.

Its importance is in direct proportion to the exposure of the filling in occlusion and articulation, and the strength of the closure of the jaws.

The force to provide for is from one to two hundred pounds and in some cases even more, particularly in mid-jaw locations.

Weakened enamel walls are those which through decay, or unnecessary cutting, have been robbed of much of their supporting dentine. All such unsupported enamel should be cut away with a chisel, particularly if by any chance the wall of enamel under consideration will receive much stress in the process of mastication, or the introduction of the filling.

Stress from within should be avoided by not allowing such weakened walls to remain and form any part of the retention of the filling.

Weakened walls are sometimes allowed to remain, or a portion of them, when they can be so protected by a layer of rigid filling material as to prevent all stress, but this is permissible only when their presence will screen unsightly metal fillings and when the kind of filling used can be introduced without injury to the walls.

Before applying the rubber dam each case should be inspected for the surface contact in occlusion and articulation and then the margin so laid as to occupy the least exposed position. Many times all stress cannot be avoided, but the amount of stress a margin is liable to receive should have due consideration and good judgment exercised in the placing of the margin.

Resistance Form as Applied to Filling Material. We are forced to consider the properties of the filling material to be used in each individual cavity. In preparing the cavity we consider the resisting power of the enamel margin we are able to obtain. We also take into account the resistance of the filling material used, to the crushing strain, as this property varies greatly. Amalgam, even under the most favorable manipulation, is subject to flow and more or less spheroiding, which often results in a slight exposure of the cavo-surface angle. Again, amalgam is not ductal, hence these edges of this filling are easily fractured at the margins under stress. This liability to fracture at the margin is also true of our cement and silicate fillings and great care should be exercised in placing the margins of these fillings. Cohesive gold, especially when alloyed with platinum, is our best filling material to resist the crushing strain at the margins, and when the edges are not too thin, the repeated blows from the opposing teeth only tend to drive this material in closer adaptation to the margins. When using the gold inlay, it is quite necessary to exercise great care at the margins to resist the crushing strain, not of the gold, but of the enamel margin and the intervening cement, for unless the gold inlay fits better than the average gold inlay, there is a line of cement which is subsequently dissolved. This leaves the last rods at the cavo-surface angle unprotected, and very liable to injury.

It therefore follows that the amount of marginal extension for resistance form is less for cohesive gold and gold inlays than other fillings. The greater the edge strength of the filling material, the more protection it gives the cavity margins. Yet resistance form should receive careful consideration with fillings of maximum edge strength.

Resistance Form.

Class One cavities, pages 49, 53 and 55.
Class Two cavities, pages 62 and 66.
Class Three cavities, page 74.
Class Four cavities, page 86.

CHAPTER VII.

RETENTION FORM.

Definition. Retention form is that part of the procedure in cavity preparation which deals with the provisions for preventing the filling from being displaced by the tipping strain. Force which results in tipping the filling bodily from the cavity, is one of the greatest enemies to permanency in tooth filling, second only to recurrent caries.

Partially Provided For in Resistance Form. Retention form is partially provided for in the previous step of resistance form, but it is further necessary that provision be made to resist the force of mastication in order to prevent the filling as a whole from being moved from its seat.

Maximum Retention Form is required in cavities in the proximal surfaces as the missing proximal wall renders these fillings particularly exposed to injury by the tipping force, during the movements of the mandible.

Flat seats for fillings are imperative in retention form. Seats should be cut in a plane at right angles to the stress of mastication, which is usually at right angles to the long axis of the tooth.

The Step as a Part of Retention Form. The addition of the step in cavities of Class Two and Class Four is for the purpose of giving added retention form. By this procedure in proximal cavities in bicuspids and molars, the stress upon buccal and lingual walls of the cavity proper is transferred to those portions of the same walls which are a part of the step, a location much better situated to withstand the tipping strain. In cavities of Class Four, the addition of the step on the incisal or lingual, or both, will give added retention form, avoiding heavy cutting at the angle, which weakens the remaining tooth substance at the angle, to say nothing of the dangers of crossing the retractive tract of the pulp in this location.

Maximum Retention Form is not required when making simple cavities, as they are protected from the dangers of lateral strain by the presence of surrounding external walls. This will be found to be the case in cavities of Classes One, Three and Five when occlusion is normal. While in cavities of Classes Two, Four and Six, much additional cutting is sometimes necessary to give ample retention form.

Acute Angles Required. Much of the retention form required is gained by laying the external surrounding walls at definite angles to the seat of the filling.

Little Retention in Enamel. It should be remembered in this step of cavity preparation that there is very little resistance to force in a filling wherein retention form is provided for in enamel walls. The enamel should be removed to a depth sufficient to get anchorage in angles laid in dentine. A good idea of the amount of retention form possessed by any completed cavity may be gained if one will for the time being imagine that all enamel has been removed from the tooth. The remaining cavity will still have nearly the original amount of retention form. We rely upon the presence of enamel in liable areas for resistance to recurrent caries and upon sound dentine for retention form.

Retention Form.

Class One cavities, pages 49, 53 and 56.
Class Two cavities, pages 62 and 66.
Class Three cavities, page 64.
Class Four cavities, pages 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83 and 84.
Class Five cavities, page 94.

CHAPTER VIII.

CONVENIENCE FORM.

Definition. Convenience form is that part of cavity preparation wherein is made those additional changes necessary for the proper placing of a filling.

Sparingly Used. As these additional cavity changes and their accompanying loss of tooth substance are made entirely for the convenience of the operator they should be resorted to only in cases of necessity.

Maximum Convenience Form. The cutting necessary for convenience form reaches the maximum; first, with inlay fillings, as the previously prepared filling is moved to position en masse; second, in the making of a cohesive gold filling, as it is of value to apply force as near as possible at a right angle to the anchorage of the first portion of gold, and at an angle of 45 degrees to the wall against which the gold is being condensed; third, in cavities in the posterior teeth, and in distal cavities as compared with mesial; fourth, more is required for proximal fillings not previously separated.

Minimum Convenience Form is required; first, in using plastic fillings; second, in anterior oral locations; third, where the teeth have had ample separation before the making of a proximal filling.

The Abuse of Convenience Form is of harm to the teeth and has reached its height in a desire to inlay every case possible. When excessive cutting for convenience form is necessary to the making of an inlay, it would often be better to avoid the unnecessary loss of tooth substance by changing the character of the filling.

Suitable Instruments for various locations in the mouth, particularly with the posterior distal cavities, will do much to minimize convenience form.

Previous Separation is the most potent factor of all in lessening the amount of cutting for convenience form, the same having been considered fully in access form, and should be resorted to in cavities of Classes Two and Three if for no other reason.

Starting Points for the making of a cohesive gold filling are a part of convenience form and are made by making one of the point angles more acute than is required for general retention. This is made in the point angle farthest from the hand when the same is in position with the plugger point resting in the cavity. This will be found to be the point angle farthest from vision and most difficult to fill, and from the latter fact should be the first filled.

Convenience Form.

Class One cavities, pages 50 and 54.
Class Two cavities, pages 63 and 70.
Class Three cavities, page 77.
Class Four cavities, page 92.

CHAPTER IX.

REMOVAL OF REMAINING CARIOUS DENTINE.—FINISHING ENAMEL WALLS.—TOILET OF THE CAVITY.

Removal of Remaining Carious Dentine.

Definition. This order is the secondary consideration of affected dentine. In the smaller cavities the previous steps in cavity preparation will have removed all affected dentine and this step has little consequence. However, it is well to have this step come to the mind even in these cases so that the minute corners and obscure localities are not allowed to pass imperfectly prepared.

In Large Decays the pulp is often in question. The dentine has been softened to a near approach to the pulp. If all of this be removed early in the procedure, the pulp will be exposed to the damaging effects of air drafts from the chip blower, or possibly low temperatures in the operating room. Pulps thus exposed not infrequently take on the initial stages of destructive diseases from which they never recover, resulting in much pain to the patient and chagrin to the operator. The foregoing is particularly true when one is making a filling for each of two large proximal cavities.

Two Large Proximal Cavities. It is often desirable to prepare both cavities at the same sitting, particularly when filling with amalgam.

With the cavity first prepared, there might be a long exposure of the pulp to a lower than body temperature, if the overlying decayed dentine is removed at the time the major portion is excavated.

Technic. The remaining decay in this step of procedure should be removed with broad spoon excavators, when working on axial or pulpal walls. In small cavities where there is no danger of pulp exposure the instruments should be small hatchets, with which the dento-enamel junction should be examined around the entire cavity. In case a softened area is found and removed the overlying enamel should be chiseled away, thus correcting outline and resistance forms.

Where Exposed Pulp is expected or pulp treatment is intended, the decay is removed just following outline form.

Finishing Enamel Walls.

Definition. The last cutting done in the preparation of a cavity is the finishing of enamel walls. This should always be done with the rubber dam in place or at least sufficient means taken to prevent the margins from again becoming moist.

No Moisture should be Permitted to come in contact with any portion of the cavity surface, after final instrumentation, and if by accident any portion should become wet that portion should be thoroughly dried and freshened by cutting away the surface, and the filling immediately placed.

The Cavo-surface Angle of the cavity in every part of the cavity outline should receive special attention at this step in cavity preparation.

The Plane of the Enamel wall should be so laid with reference to the cleavage of the enamel that these will be cut more from the outer than the inner ends of the rods, resulting in the last rod at the cavo-surface angle being a full length rod, supported by shortened rods. The shortened enamel rods are covered with the filling material when the completed filling is in position.

This is accomplished by a slight planing motion parallel to the external enamel line, using a keen-edged chisel or enamel hatchet. The gingival margin trimmers are especially adapted for this purpose when finishing the margins in the gingival third.

The Marginal Bevel should be laid in a plane at an angle of from six to ten centrigrade degrees from the plane of the enamel cleavage.

The Depth of the Marginal Bevel should generally not include more than one-fourth of the enamel wall, but when making a filling of inferior edge strength, as amalgam, porcelain, cement, etc., it becomes necessary to bury the bevel angle more deeply.

Locations subject to great stress also require the placing of the bevel angle more deeply, even carrying it beyond the enamel and laying it in the dentine.

Toilet of the Cavity.

Definition. The toilet of the cavity is the final step in the preparation of the cavity and consists of freeing the cavity of all loose particles of tooth substance which are not firmly attached to the cavity walls.

This is best accomplished by a blast of air from the chip blower, followed by a thorough sweeping and brushing of all surfaces with cotton or spunk held in the pliers, and again using the chip blower to remove dust.

White Enamel Margins indicate the presence of loosened enamel rods. If the sweeping does not remove this, the margins should be again chiseled, using a keen-edged instrument and a light hand, then again be swept with cotton.

If the whitened margin still persists, it should be brushed over with an extra fine cuttle-fish disk or strip when the loosened rods will be carried away. The margin should be planed again with the chisel.

Care in the Use of Disk or Strip. It should be fully understood that when a disk or strip is used for this purpose, the grit must be so fine that there is no considerable cutting done, as there is danger of changing the relation of the bevel to the enamel cleavage.

All Fluids Should be Used Previous to Cavity Toilet. The habit of swabbing out cavities with alcohol or other substances after cavity toilet is useless, and may do harm by introducing substances with the liquid not easily removed.

Disinfection and Pulp Protection should have consideration following the removal of remaining decay and as a preliminary step in toilet of the cavity.

If a fixed oil, or an essential oil which may contain impurities has been used, free swabbing and scrubbing of the walls with alcohol, or sulphuric ether, is advised for cleansing purposes, to get rid of the oil and other residue. However, simply wiping the cavity out will not suffice. It must be thoroughly rubbed with an alcohol or ether-moistened cotton ball, followed by reasonable desiccation from the chip blower, and then every part of the walls and margins gone over and freshly cut. This is the only means of obtaining a clean surface.

Leaks in Rubber Dam, particularly near the gingival outline, must positively be detected. The portion which has become wet should be dried with an absorbent and the air blast. Then all parts which have been moistened must be gone over and freshly cut. Simply drying such portions is not adequate, as there is left salts and albuminoids from the saliva and blood serum which can only be removed by the cutting instruments. The placing of a filling over this gummy residue invites secondary caries. These deposits will subsequently dissolve out, resulting in a leak. It may be small but the acid of tooth decay will easily exchange places with such films.

If the cleaning has been only fairly well done, it may result in what is termed a "blue margin," which is a leaky margin.

When time intervenes between cavity preparation and the making of the filling, as from one sitting to another, the walls and margins should be retrimmed to give fresh cut surfaces to fill against. This is not possible in the making of inlays as to retrim the margins destroys the fit. The fact that many times we cannot place the inlays against surfaces which have been freshly cut constitutes the greatest enemy to their permanence.

It is the one great argument that inlays should be made at one sitting and under dry conditions.

Conclusion. All fillings should be made against clean, freshly cut walls.

Finishing Enamel Walls.

Class One cavities, pages 50 and 56.
Class Two cavities, pages 63, 64, 67 and 71.
Class Three cavities, page 67.

CHAPTER X.

MANAGEMENT OF PIT AND FISSURE CAVITIES.
(CLASS ONE.)

Location. Class One cavities occur in the occlusal surfaces of molars and bicuspids; in the middle and occlusal thirds of the buccal and lingual surfaces of molars and in the lingual surfaces of incisors, more frequently in the laterals. (See Figs. 1 and 2.)

The Predisposing Cause of decay in these localities is a fault in the enamel due to imperfect closure of the enamel plates, affording a convenient point for the lodgment of food particles and the active agents of fermentation which is the exciting cause of all tooth decay.

Extension for Prevention is Seldom Necessary in this class of cavities from the fact that the surface of the enamel in the immediate neighborhood is exposed to the friction of mastication.

Tendency to Extensive Dentinal Decay must be remembered in dealing with this class of cavities as the merest opening through the enamel will frequently, upon excavation, show an extensive loss of dentine.

Incipient Decays in Occlusal Defects.

Description. Upon examination it is found that the tine of a sharp explorer will pass between the non-united plates of enamel to the depth of the entire thickness of enamel in one or more points. A more careful examination may show the surface of the dentine to be softened to a greater or less extent immediately pulp-wise from the enamel fault. Such cases demand immediate attention.

Outline Form. To open such cavities there is placed in the engine a discarded No. ½ or 1 round bur which has been made into a spade drill by flattening on two sides. This drill is made to travel between the plates of the enamel through a major portion of the defect, which results in widening the fissure. This preliminary step will result in much saving of burs, as a bur which has been once used on an enamel wall is unfitted to cut dentine. The common practice of using dentate fissure burs for this work is considered as brutal to the patient and is a thief of the operator's time. A No. ½ or 1 round bur is now used in the engine and applied to the dentine. By swaying the hand piece to and fro the dentine is cut away from beneath the enamel walls. The bur should be frequently removed to allow of cooling as heat readily develops and is a great and frequent source of pain to the patient.

The Use of the Chisel is next advised for the removal of the overhanging enamel wall; first, because this is the easiest and speediest means of its accomplishment, and second, because this is the only means of securing the cleavage of the enamel, giving the operator the opportunity to judge the amount of resistance to stress in the several localities, and to learn of the direction of the enamel rods. Many times a chisel-edged hatchet will be most advantageous, one which has a chisel edge upon the sides of the blade as well as the cutting edge. The size should be governed by the size of the opening secured, but in every case as large an instrument as the orifice will admit should be used. This process should be repeated with bur for cutting dentine and chisel or hatchet for cleaving enamel until the desired cavity outline is obtained.

Resistance Form. The operator should include all fissure and sulcate grooves. Cross all grooves and ridges at as near a right angle as possible. Avoid eminences of primary calcification. Lay the outline as much as possible along the sloping sides of the triangles and ridges, as these are the most favored localities for a cavity margin, for on these sloping surfaces we find the greatest amount of friction during the process of mastication, due to the excursions of food, and they are the least exposed to direct stress, as the blows are of glancing nature.

Retention Form. Here is a good rule to follow in cavities of Class One. When the depth of the cavity is equal to or greater than the width, parallel walls are sufficient. But when the width exceeds the depth the external walls should meet the internal wall at a slightly acute angle. These angles are best made acute by the use of a chisel-edged hatchet or hoe, having corners that are slightly acute. With a planing motion they should be made to travel parallel with the base line angles. This will, at the same time, flatten the seat or pulpal wall. The extreme ends of long arms in a filling, such as results from following a slender fissure, must be made retentive.

Convenience Form. No convenience form is usually necessary in small cavities Class One, except in rare instances it may be of advantage to sharpen one of the distant point angles to facilitate the starting of a cohesive gold filling. But usually the first portion of gold may be used of sufficient size to entirely cover the pulpal wall, in which case it can be securely locked to position between the surrounding walls.

Removal of Remaining Decay. By this time the carious dentine will usually have been removed. Should any remain it should be excavated with suitable spoons.

At this point there should be a thorough inspection of the dento-enamel junction for small areas of softened dentine which may have escaped notice.

The Walls should all be flat, particularly the pulpal. In cases where decay has progressed so deeply into the dentine that to flatten the pulpal wall would cause the involvement of the recessional tracts of the horns of the pulp, the base-line angle should be made intermittent, omitting the squaring of the angles in the regions of the recessional tracts.

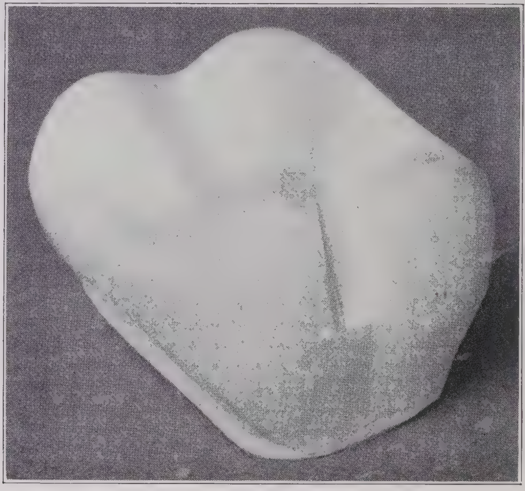


Fig. 17.—Complex Class One cavity prepared.

Disinfection. The cavity should be flooded with alcohol carrying a small per cent of formaldehyde, say one or one-half per cent, and evaporated to dryness.

Finish of Enamel Walls. The enamel wall should be planed for the entire outline of the cavity with a sharp chisel using a light hand; the desired cavo-surface angle secured, and the bevel angle buried to the desired depth. The movement of the chisel should parallel the travel of the external enamel line.

Toilet of the Cavity. The cavity should be swept with a tightly rolled cotton ball or piece of spunk in the pliers and the dust finally removed with a blast of air from the chip-blower, and the filling immediately placed.

Inlays. If the cavity is to be occupied by an inlay, retention form may have been omitted and applied to the cavity just before setting the filling, in which case the toilet of the cavity should be repeated. If the cavity has already been given retention form the same should be temporarily removed while making the model by wiping into the retaining angles wax, temporary stopping, or cement to be removed before final placing of the filling.

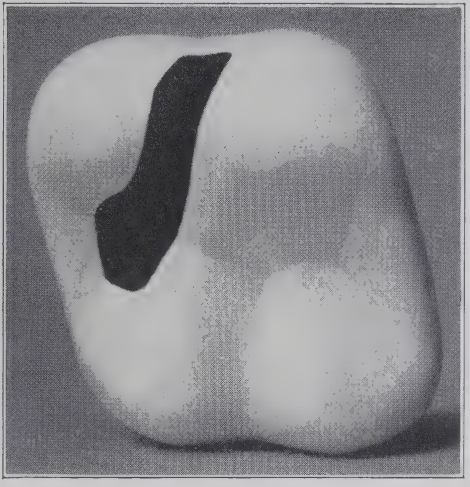


Fig. 18.—Class One filled. Cavity shown in Fig. 17.

CHAPTER XI.

MANAGEMENT OF PIT AND FISSURE CAVITIES. (CLASS ONE CONCLUDED.)

Large Cavities in Central Fossa of Molars.

Description. Such cavities are usually the result of knowing neglect on the part of the patient. However, in cases where the enamel is strong and of a good resistant quality, or the teeth are so occluded as to have received little stress, the patient may be in ignorance of the great havoc which has been done, due to the major portion of the enamel remaining intact. There may exist in such cases only the slightest aperture through a defective fissure or fault in the enamel.

Outline Form. This division of Class One should be opened with a straight or bin-angle chisel of rather large size to prevent easy passage to the sensitive pulpal wall. A chisel of from two to three millimeters in width is advised. The securing of adequate finger rest on adjacent tissues is important. The chisel should be applied so as to throw the chips into the cavity, and the mallet substituted for heavy hand pressure. It is best to begin on margins most mesial and nearest the operator's eyes, as this increases the range of vision to the deeper portions of the cavity at an early stage in the procedure. This chipping away of the enamel should be continued until enamel supported by sound dentine is reached and until the margins have been carried to desired regions as set forth in general in the chapter on outline form.

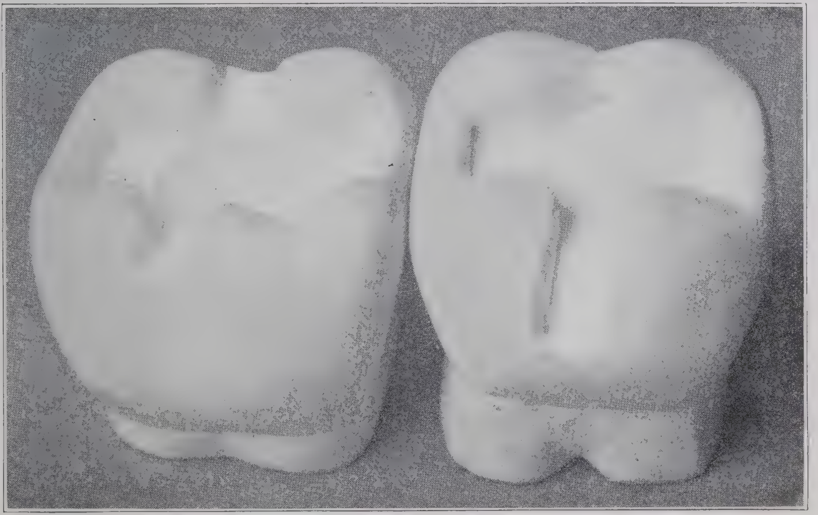
When Pulp Exposure is Feared. In this case the sixth step in cavity preparation will come in third and we have for consideration the removal of remaining decay.

Up to this point only the most superficial examination of the internal surfaces has been made.

Placing the Rubber Dam at this point is expedient as dryness is imperative. The decay is now removed with large spoon excavators, whose blades are at least two millimeters wide. These spoons which should be keen of edge are carefully worked under the edges of the masses of softened dentine and by a prying, sweeping movement this lifted en masse from the walls. The blade of the excavator should be prevented from scraping, or sliding over the regions of suspected exposure.

When the Pulp Is Exposed or nearly so the operator will proceed to pulp treatment, either pulp capping or partial pulpectomy, as the case demands. This step completed outline form is again taken up and the fissures and sulcate grooves included in the cavity outline.

Resistance and Retention Forms. As to resistance, we have only to consider the probable stress to be sustained by the filling as a whole and of the margins in their various localities. This will involve a study of each case in hand, as to occlusion and articulation, as well as to habits of the patient in mastication. The problem of concave pulpal wall is here met in its most exasperating form. Many times if the operator were to take the lower levels of the pulpal wall and attempt to flatten and carry this wall laterally until it could be made to meet surrounding walls at different angles, the recessional tracts of the pulp would be crossed and exposure of that organ result.



A *B*

Fig. 19.—Large Class One cavities prepared.

The Flattening of the Pulpal Walls Avoided. (See Fig. 19.) This lateral cutting to flatten pulpal walls may be avoided in two ways:

First. The operator may establish a level higher up on the lateral walls for the creation of the base line angles, resulting in steps. These steps should be established in places most remote from pulp recessional tracts. This will generally be found to be in the neighborhood of developmental grooves. There should be at least three of the steps or small supplemental seats. Four point suspension is better. As the seats are small and will probably be required to carry relatively heavy loads, their angles should be most definite.

Second. To avoid the flattening of these pulpal walls in large cavities of this class the operator should build the metal portion of the filling immediately into cement which has been applied to the pulpal wall. This renders the base of the filling adhesive to its seat and nullifies the tendency of the filling to slip or revolve under load.

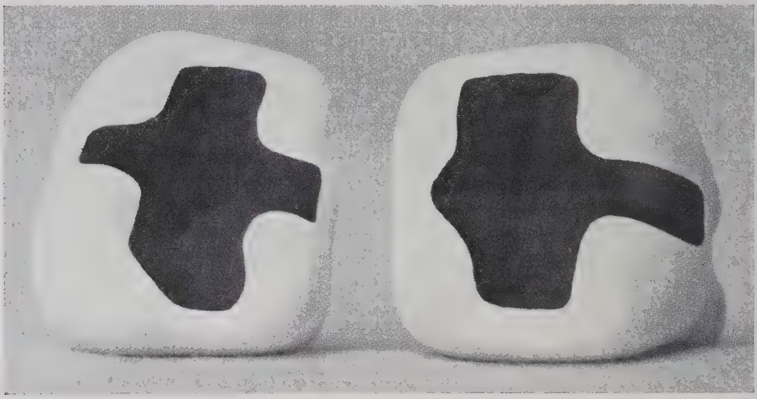

A *B*

Fig. 20.—Class One filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 19.

The principle of the inlay is thereby introduced into the built-in filling, a much valued feature by many operators.

Convenience Form. There is no convenience form required in this class of cavities when making a plastic filling. In the making of a cohesive gold filling in this division of cavities care must be taken that the mesial wall can be reached by direct force from the plugger point. In some cases it will be required to move the mesial margin well upon the mesial marginal ridge to accomplish the desired result.

Convenience Point for the beginning of the first pieces of gold should be obtained through the use of a small quantity of thin cement applied to the deepest portions of the cavity.

Finish of Enamel Walls and Toilet. The cavity should be phenolized and the same evaporated to dryness. The entire cavity outline should be freshly planed, the margins slightly beveled and a positively determined cavo-surface angle established. The depth the bevel angle is to be buried should be determined.

The cavity should be thoroughly swept with cotton, the dust dissipated with a blast from the chip blower and the filling immediately placed.

Pit Cavities in Buccal and Lingual Surfaces of Molars.

Description. These cavities have their origin in defects in the enamel on the buccal surface of lower molars and the lingual surface of upper molars.

Instrumentation is the same for the same class and size of cavities just described on the occlusal surface, excepting perhaps it may be necessary to use the engine burs in the contra-angle hand piece, a necessity seldom met with on the occlusal surfaces.

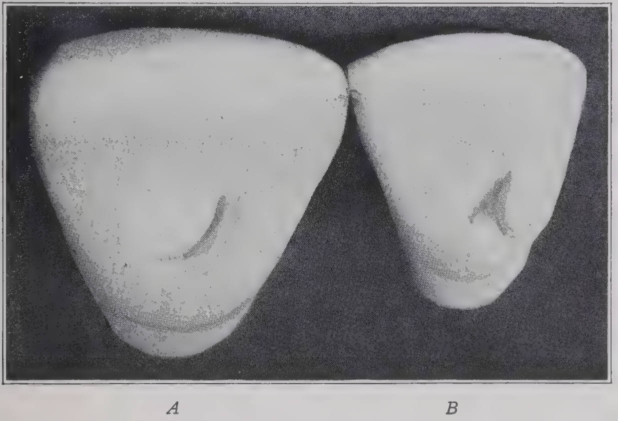


Fig. 21.—Lingual pit cavities.

Outline Form. The outline should be carried well out of the pit or groove and sufficiently extended to meet the general rules given in the chapter on this subject.

Resistance Form will come up for consideration only when the outline approaches the occlusal marginal ridge. In such cases if the occlusal wall is not made up of a sufficient bulk of dentine to withstand the stress of mastication, the outline should be carried over the marginal ridge to the occlusal surface, in which case rules for the outline of this portion of the cavity will be the same as previously given and applicable to all cavities invading occlusal surfaces.

Extension for Prevention will come in for consideration when the outline has for other causes been brought near to the free margin of the gum. A full application of the rule "Extension for prevention" would demand that the gingival outline be carried under the free margin of the gum when the gum has already been approached to within one millimeter. A failure to extend the outline is permissible in mouths kept scrupulously clean.

Retention Form. This step is very simple when the cavity does not involve the occlusal surface and is fully obtained when the internal line angles have been well squared. However, when the cavity reaches the occlusal surface, the filling is subjected to the greatest amount of tipping strain in mastication. These will then demand a flat gingival wall, and in some cases of a vital tooth, a flat pulpal wall placed parallel to the gingival wall, and the line angles surrounding these walls well defined. The four point angles should be slightly acute.

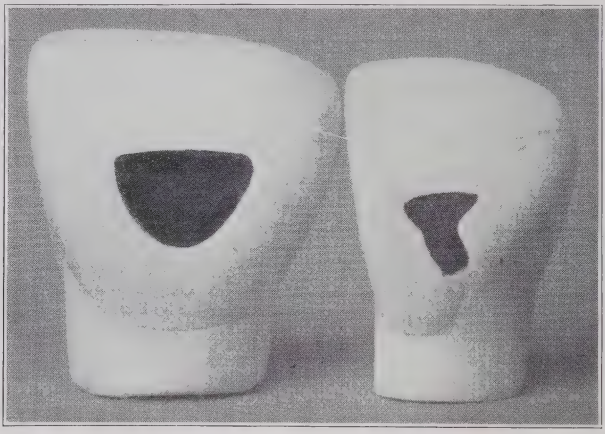


Fig. 22.—Class One filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 21.

Finish of Enamel Walls. In the management of these axial surface pit and fissure cavities the varying slant of the enamel rods should not be lost sight of. This should be noted when outlining the cavity with the chisel. The rods will generally be found to incline towards the pit, from every direction close to the defect, while a little way out they will be found at right angles to the surface.

Going farther toward both the occlusal surface and gingival line, the outer ends of the rods will be found to incline more and more away from the seat of decay.

These facts should be borne in mind and a full cleavage obtained.

There now remains only the usual marginal bevel and cavity toilet.

Pit Cavities in Lingual Surfaces of Upper Incisors.

Should Receive Early Attention. These cavities should be detected in their early stages as their near location to the pulp renders pulp complications an early sequence.

It is the best of practice to permanently fill all cases presented where faults in enamel are diagnosed.

Instrumentation. Their location renders excavation hazardous. The engine bur should be used for superficial opening only, the most of the preparation being done with hand instruments.

Outline Form. The general rules in outline form should be observed. Particular note should be made of the extreme incisal inclination of the outer ends of the enamel rods along the margin of the incisal wall.

Inciso-Axial Line Angle. It is generally advisable to allow the incisal wall to meet the axial at quite an obtuse angle, in some cases almost to the obliteration of this line angle, as the squaring of this angle will greatly endanger the pulp.

CHAPTER XII.

MANAGEMENT OF PROXIMAL CAVITIES IN BICUSPIDS AND MOLARS. (CLASS TWO.)

Location. Class Two cavities are those which originate on the proximal surfaces of molars and bicuspids at a point slightly gingival from the point of contact.

Predisposing Cause. The predisposing cause is the fact of the presence of the adjoining tooth which establishes and maintains the sheltered position for the accumulation of substances which undergo fermentative decomposition.

Early Detection of These Cavities is Essential. It is of the utmost importance that Class Two cavities be discovered early. More pulps are lost to the teeth from the neglect of these cavities than from any other cause. Their early detection is by no means an easy matter to the inexperienced operator, as often their presence is shown only by a change in the color of the overlying enamel.

There are yet other cases where the teeth must be separated for an examination of the suspected surfaces.

It requires education in the use of the explorer to detect the difference in the ''feel'' of the explorer tine in the proximal space and the entry of the point into a cavity of slight depth. When the decay has extended along the dento-enamel junction the case becomes much easier and should never escape the detection of the operator.

Small Proximal Cavities (Class Two).

Description. By examination there is found to be established an area of decay upon the enamel surface between contact point and the free margin of the gum, or one or both teeth which go to form the space in question. The dentine may or may not be involved. The marginal ridge is yet intact and firm. The enamel shows no signs of injury in either the buccal or lingual embrasures. (Molar, Fig. 3.)

Gaining Access. Opening the cavity is often the most difficult step in the procedure.

There are three plans of procedure open to the operator.

The First Method. The one most common and often the best is to place the angle of a sharp, straight chisel, say one millimeter in width, on the proximal slope of the marginal ridge and tap it lightly with a mallet; turn the other angle so that the chisel edge rests at forty-five degrees to the position of first impact and again apply the mallet. Repeat several times and this will generally break away the enamel rods in a small V-shaped space. This may be continued until the cavity is completely uncovered. In comparatively resistant cases the bi-bevel drill may be applied to break in the enamel.

The Second Method of procedure is to use the bi-bevel drill in the mesial or distal pit, giving the hand piece that slant which will cause the drill to enter the area of decay, when sufficient depth has been reached. The chisel is then applied and the occlusal surface enamel cleaved away either by hand pressure or the mallet. This method is more liable to cause pain than the first given and should be used with caution.

The Third Method is to adjust the mechanical separator and attack the enamel with a small chisel from the buccal direction, gradually shifting more and more to the occlusal surface until finally the enamel ridge gives way to the force of the chisel.

Preliminary Separation should in most cases be resorted to for proper access for the many reasons set forth in Chapter IV.

This is Best Accomplished by packing the cavity at this stage with gutta-percha for a few days or weeks. When case returns we should be ready to consider outline form.

Outline Form. Outline form in Class Two involves the outlining of the cavity proper, as well as the outlining of the occlusal step which is generally necessary because of the more secure seating and rigidity it gives a filling in all proximo-occlusal cavities in molars and bicuspids when the marginal ridge has been broken.

Step May be Omitted. *First:* In cases which are to remain permanently disarticulated, as when opposing tooth has been lost.

Second: When the proximating tooth is to be absent permanently thus obviating much cutting buccally and lingually in extension for prevention, as the remaining walls are sometimes strong enough to give sufficient resistance form without the added step.

Third: In proximal decays in the gingival third following excessive gum recession (so-called senile decay).

Fourth: When for any reason the patient should be shielded from long operations, or the life expectancy of either the patient or the individual tooth is short.

Fifth: In that form of lower bicuspids with a well defined and perfect transverse ridge. (Fig. 23.)

Outline of Cavity Proper. The outline should be carried into both buccal and lingual embrasures until the excursions of food through these embrasures will sweep the margins of the completed filling for its entire length. This extension will result in carrying the outline out sufficiently that it can be seen to pass under the gum in full view.

A Good Rule to Follow is to cut sufficiently that a chisel one millimeter in width will pass easily from the embrasures to the open cavity when dragging the cutting edge lightly over the free margin of the gum. This is stated as a general rule only, there being circumstances which would permit falling short of this amount of space and yet there are cases which demand a greater amount of cutting to fully meet the requirements of extension for prevention, due to oral conditions and dental irregularities.

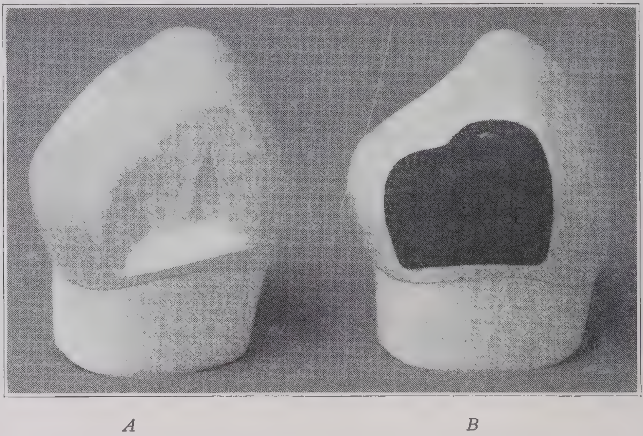


Fig. 23.—One of the few cases in which the step may be omitted in Class Two cavities.

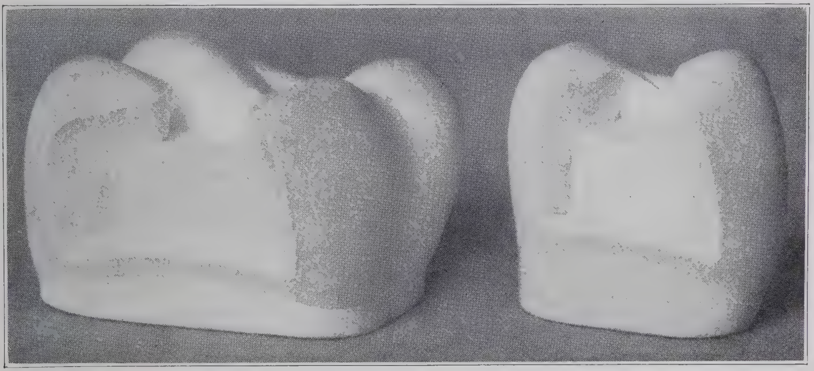
Extensions Gingivally. The cavity outline should be carried subgingivally in extension for prevention when from other reasons that part of the outline approaches to within one millimeter of the gum line. The application of this rule will invariably cause the outline to go beneath the gum in case the gum is in or resumes its normal position.

If there is reason to believe that it will return to its normal position this fact should be considered. In cases of permanent recession it is better to stop the cavity outline midway from contact to gum line.

Care at Axio-Gingival Angles. The buccal and lingual portions of the outline should be carried directly gingivally and be made to join the gingival portion of the outline by the use of a segment of a small circle. The use of a large circle here is a most common error. Investigation of fillings will show many failures wherein a large circle has been used allowing the external outline to disappear in the proximal space before it has disappeared beneath the gum.

The Gingival Outline should be a straight outline except in well defined and high gum festoons, when it may be made convex to the occlusal surface.

Forming the Step. Place a small round bur or spade drill against the axial wall at the dento-enamel junction, immediately below the central fissure and undermine the enamel the desired distance in the direction of the central axial line of the tooth. Here apply all of the rules and methods of procedure given in the formation of a simple occlusal cavity. Also remember to apply the rules as given in outline form, particularly as to resistance form.



A *B*

Fig. 24.—Class Two cavities in molar and bicuspid suitable for cohesive gold or amalgam.

Area Included. In addition to the above it is a safe rule to state that the step portion should involve the central third of the occlusal surface bucco-lingually.

Avoid all Angles in outline. Care should be taken when using the step that its union with the cavity proper does not show in the outline by an angle at their junction. Also when not using the step, as in the few cases cited, care should be given not to allow the axio-buccal and axio-lingual line angles to meet the external enamel line. These line angles should be stopped before they approach the enamel wall.

Resistance and Retention Forms. To reach the maximum of these forms it is necessary that the *gingival wall* be flat and laid in a plane at right angles to the stress of mastication. The gingival wall should meet the axial wall at an angle slightly acute.

The grooving of the gingival wall is condemned.

The Buccal and Lingual Walls should be flat, parallel, meet the gingival wall at least at right angles, and meet the axial wall at definite and acute angles.

The Axial Wall should be convex to the proximal and meet the pulpal wall in a rounded pulpo-axial line angle.

The Pulpal Wall should be laid parallel to the same plane as the gingival wall and slightly broader at the portion most distant from the cavity proper. This gives a pulpo-distal or pulpo-mesial line angle of a little greater length than that of the pulpo-axial line angle, resulting in a dovetailed effect that is most efficient.

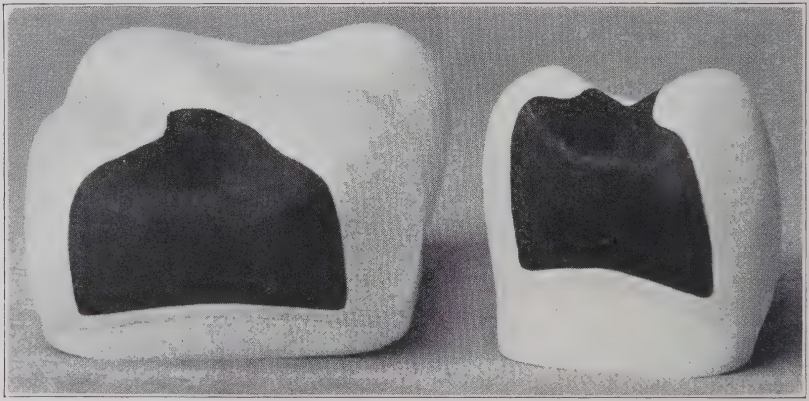

A *B*

Fig. 25.—Class Two filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 24.

Line Angles. The line angles should be squared out and made definite by the use of small hatchets and hoes of suitable shapes to reach the desired localities.

The gingivo-buccal and gingivo-lingual line angles should extend from their corresponding point angles to the dento-enamel junction. The axio-buccal and axio-lingual line angles which arise in the same point angles should travel occlusally one-third to one-half the height of the axial wall. In some rare cases where the pulpal wall is low from decay these line angles may meet the axio-pulpal line angle. A failure to observe this rule endangers the pulp through a liability of crossing its recessional tracts.

Convenience Form. In the making of a cohesive gold filling a convenience point for the retention of the first piece of gold is desirable. This is best accomplished by employing a small inverted cone bur, say number thirty-three and one-half.

The flat face is placed on the gingival wall and first sunk to one-third its depth then drawn for a short distance occlusally along the axial line angle, taking dentine slightly at the expense of both axial and external walls.

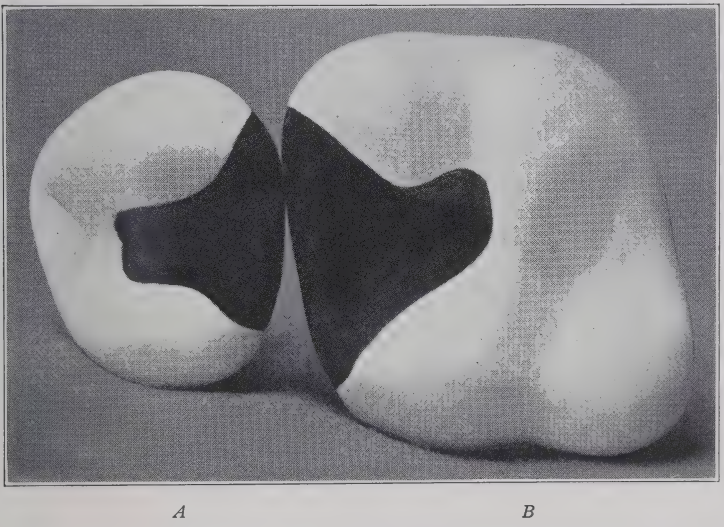


Fig. 26.—Fillings shown in Fig. 25 contacted, illustrating the marble contact.

With the making of a plastic filling there is no need of cutting for convenience form in this cavity.

Inlays. When using an inlay proper convenience form is obtained by thorough separation and causing the external walls of both step and cavity proper to meet the gingival and pulpal wall at slightly obtuse angles. This will give draw to the occlusal.

Finish of Enamel Walls. The enamel walls are planed to full cleavage and the margins are slightly beveled. All but the gingival margins may be done with the chisel. Special instruments are required to bevel the gingival cavo-surface angle, known as gingival marginal trimmers. These are made rights and lefts for mesial cavities, and rights and lefts for distal cavities and should be on hand in two sizes, which would result in eight instruments in a good working set.

In planing the gingival enamel wall the operator should have in mind the gingival inclination of the enamel rods in this locality.

Toilet of the Cavity should now be made and the filling immediately placed.

CHAPTER XIII.

LARGE PROXIMAL CAVITIES ENDANGERING THE PULP.

(CLASS TWO, CONTINUED.)

Description. This class of cavities when presented show extensive loss of dentine in the proximal wall. The marginal ridge may be standing or it may have been broken through stress of mastication. In some cases there may be an occlusal decay in the central fossa.

Danger of Pulp Exposure. There is always great danger of pulp exposure in these cases and this fact must be continually borne in mind, during the procedure of preparation. The liability is increased when the patient is young or the cusps of the tooth are high, particularly when there exists a deep pit cavity in the occlusal surface necessitating a low pulpal wall. With young patients the pulps are large and the horns of the pulp generally extend well toward the cusps. Teeth with high, prominent cusps usually have long pulp horns, which should be considered in making resistance, retention and convenience forms.

Outline Form. The first cuts in this class of cavities should be with the chisel, using hand pressure, being sure that adequate hand and finger guard has been obtained. This precaution is essential as the chisel must be prevented from reaching the sensitive softened dentine within the cavity. Place the chisel so as to throw the chips into the cavity. The chisel should be made to engage only a small portion of enamel at each cut. Should the enamel prove resistant the aid of the mallet may be resorted to, still maintaining a firm finger rest.

Extension for Prevention is frequently not necessary as the extension necessary for proper resistance form will carry the cavity the required distance into both buccal and lingual embrasures. However, in many cases the decay will be found to have progressed more toward one embrasure than the other which necessitates additional cutting for prevention, in the direction of the embrasure least approached by decay. This should be done to the fulfillment of the rule for "extension for prevention."

Gingival Outline. The gingival outline in these cases will generally be under the free margin of the gum. At this stage it should be planed with the enamel hatchets until the overhanging enamel is broken away to give access form for the free passage of the dam and ligature, which should now be placed and the cavity superficially sterilized.

Occlusal Outline. When the cavity has been rendered dry the occlusal outline should be proceeded with. This is carried out as previously given in the forming of the step portion, and the full satisfaction of the rules given in Outline Form, Chapter V.

Removal of Remaining Decay. This is an instance where the sixth step in cavity preparation comes in third and should now be cautiously proceeded with.

Technic. Large spoons should be used. The softened and discolored dentine should be lifted from its position with as little pressure pulp-wise as possible. If exposure exists upon its removal, pulp treatment for devitalization and removal is the immediate procedure. If exposure does not exist and the operator has reason to believe that that organ is healthy the pulpal and axial walls should be lightly scraped with large spoon excavators, the walls disinfected with the favorite drug, then dried, phenolized and dried again, the latter precaution to prevent thermal shock to the pulp during the remaining portion of cavity preparation, the imperative necessity for which is shown when pain is induced by a blast of air from the chip blower.

Resistance and Retention Forms. When the central portion of the decay is found to be deep and no exposure exists, the pulpal and axial walls should be left in their central portions much as decay has left them, no attempt being made to flatten these walls on a plane of their greatest depth as pulp exposure may result. The line angles surrounding these two walls should be established on higher levels.

The Gingival Wall should be made flat in every direction. This is accomplished by lowering the point angles root-wise to the level of the central portion.

Convenience Form. Every part of the cavity should be examined to see that it is accessible to direct force in the packing of the filling and a convenience point cut in each of the gingivo-axio-lingual and gingivo-axio-buccal point angles.

Pulp Protection. The cavity should be flooded with an efficient non-irritating disinfectant, dried, phenolized and again dried. If the pulp is in danger it should be protected as described in Chapter XXXIV.

Finish of Enamel Walls.

The enamel walls should now be inspected, corrected for complete cleavage and the proper cavo-surface angle established, using for this a keen-edged chisel and a light hand with a planing motion parallel with the external enamel line.

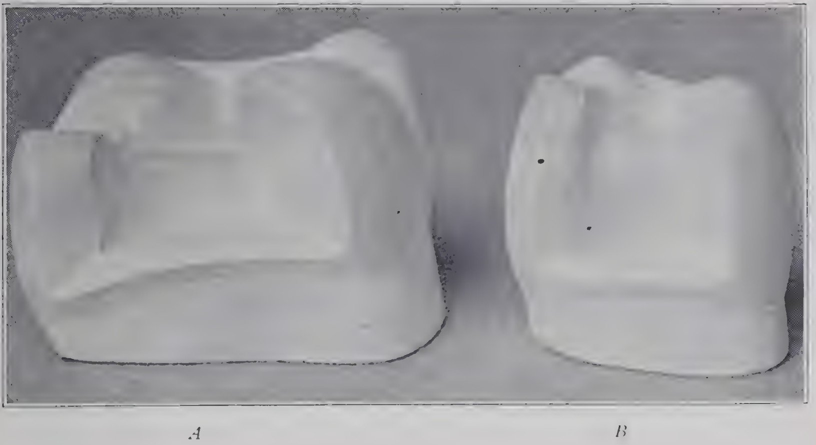


Fig. 27.—Large Class Two cavities in non-vital teeth restoring part of the occlusal surface for the protection of weakened walls.

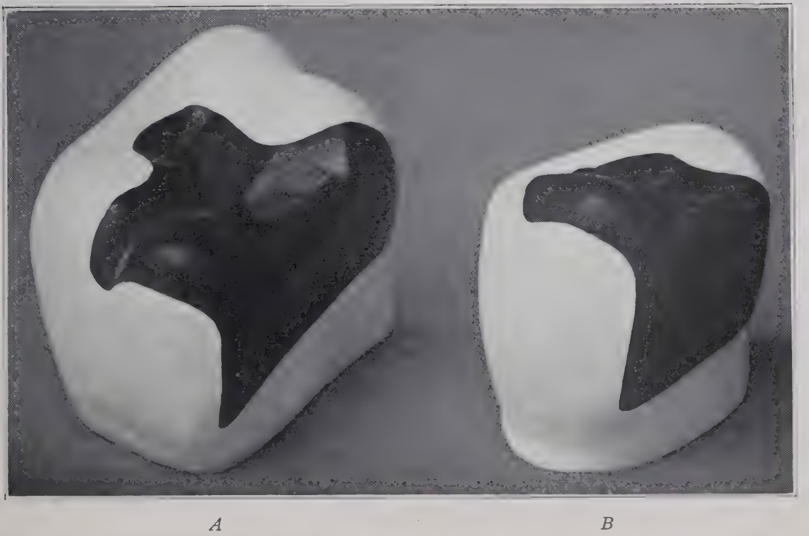


Fig. 28.—Class Two filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 27.

For Toilet of the Cavity use a few blasts of air from the chip blower, followed with a thorough brushing with a ball of cotton and more air blasts. The filling should be immediately placed.

Large Proximal Cavities in Non-Vital Teeth.

In the management of this class of cavities, cutting for resistance to stress reaches the maximum and outline is many times materially extended for this purpose alone.

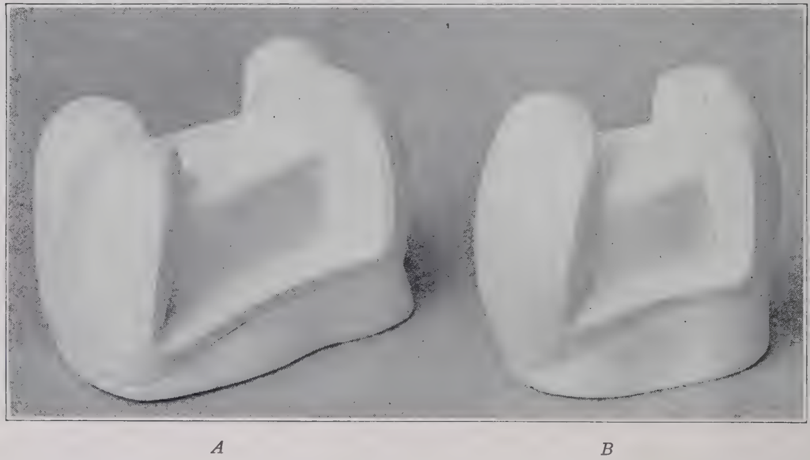


Fig. 29.—Mesio-occluso-distal (M.O.D.) cavities in molar and bicuspid, vital pulps. Note that the occlusal portion of the cavities does not show any retentive form. It is not necessary to undercut these walls as there is ample retention in other parts of the cavity.

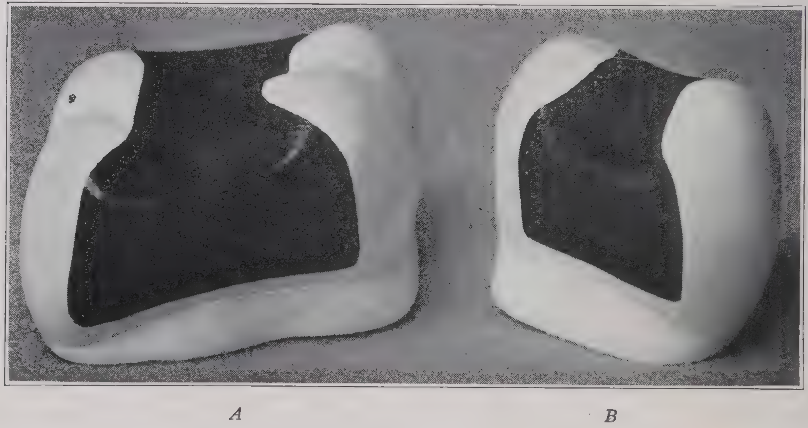


Fig. 30.—Mesio-occluso-distal fillings. Cavities shown in Fig. 29.

Outline Form, With Molars. All decay and softened dentine is removed. Often this will leave standing an entire cusp of unsupported enamel and possibly both proximal cusps are thus unsupported. In such cases a thin-edged carborundum wheel is placed on the occlusal and this surface ground away for one or two millimeters, extending as far toward the central axial line to just beyond the buccal or lingual groove, or both when both cusps are to be removed. This grinding process is carried to a greater depth in the region of the groove, resulting in a step which gives the filling an occlusal surface seating.

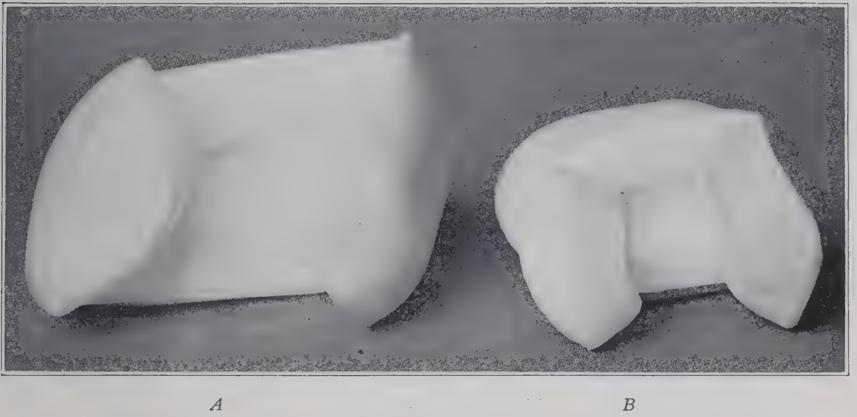


Fig. 31.—(*A*) First superior molar, pulpless, restoring the lingual cusps. (*B*) Second superior bicuspid, pulpless, restoring the entire occlusal surface.

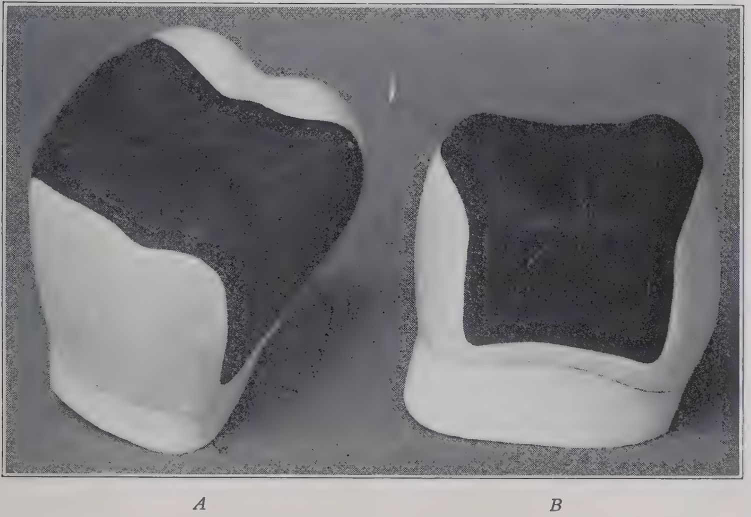


Fig. 32.—Class Two filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 31.

With Bicuspids this buccal or lingual outline is carried past the crest of the cusp involved and partially down the opposite slope. This procedure results in disarticulating the frail enamel wall and so placing the metal that it will receive the force of mastication.

In Mesio-Disto-Occlusal Cavities in both bicuspids and molars, with vital pulps and when using cohesive gold as a filling, the occlusal outline should include all of the middle third bucco-lingually. It should be made sufficiently deep to remove all of the enamel in the central fissure.

For cohesive gold the buccal and lingual walls should be parallel and without retention as the retentive form should all be placed low in the gingival angles of both mesial and distal cavities.

In the use of amalgam the outline should be farther extended bucco-lingually, to include about one-half of each of the buccal and lingual thirds. Thus two-thirds of the occlusal surface bucco-lingually will be filling. This occlusal portion should be without retentive form with the buccal and lingual walls meeting the pulpal wall at angles slightly obtuse. This is the minimum amount of extension for favorable cases with vital pulps.

In Cases of Extreme Frailty the entire occlusal surface of molars and bicuspids should be replaced with filling of at least one millimeter in thickness. With upper molars and bicuspids, when non-vital and very frail mesio-occluso-distal cavities, the lingual cusps should be removed for one or two millimeters and replaced with filling material.

Retention Form is Completed by squaring up the side walls and sub-pulpal wall, making a box shape of the pulp chamber, with fairly definite point angles.

Screw-Post Anchorage. Additional anchorage may be secured by setting a headed screw-post in cement in one or more of the pulp canals. When only one post is to be used, the largest root should be selected for the post. Be sure by radiographic diagnosis that that particular root is not diseased.

Sectional Fillings. In cases where the mesial and distal outlines are extra subgingival it is many times of advantage to build an amalgam filling in sections.

The first section is built well above the gum line and the patient dismissed. At the next sitting the portion of the filling previously built is polished on its external surfaces paying particular attention to the cavity margins. New retention is then cut in the portion of the filling already in and the remainder of the filling built and correctly contoured.

Convenience Form. No convenience form is necessary in this class of cavities, except for inlay fillings, which will be considered later.

Neglected Access Form. In cases where large proximal cavities are of long standing and there has been much tipping to the proximal of one or both teeth, preliminary separation for good access is essential. Without this preliminary step complete contour restoration and proper contact is impossible. This is particularly true when the cavity is in the mesial of the first molar. Many times the second bicuspid will seem to have been engulfed within the molar cavity. In cases where preliminary separations for obvious reasons is impossible, the evil may be partly overcome by the free cutting away of both buccal and lingual walls until the filling may be built in with a proximal surface slightly convex to the proximal. However, this is but a makeshift of a filling and the resulting proximal space will always be defective.

Toilet of the Cavity. In large decays, particularly if there has been a pulp canal operation, there is more or less danger in leaving coatings of various materials clinging to the walls. Care should be taken that the walls are scrupulously clean. It is an advantage if the cavity be scrubbed with solvents for the suspected coatings. The cavity should then be dried, the enamel walls planed and the cavity freed of all debris.

Over-desiccation. Particular care should be had not to use excess desiccation in pulpless teeth as this will render them brittle and easy of fracture when put to use.

CHAPTER XIV.

MANAGEMENT OF PROXIMAL CAVITIES IN INCISORS AND CUSPIDS NOT INVOLVING THE ANGLE. (CLASS THREE.)

Definition. Class Three cavities are those in the proximal of incisors and cuspids where it is not necessary to restore the incisal angle. The angle may be allowed to remain when the enamel at the angle is supported by sound dentine to an extent which will give it sufficient resistance to prevent fracture under stress of mastication.

General Form of Class Three. Cavities in incisor proximal surfaces differ from all others in that they are in the surface of teeth of a triangular form and the cavities of necessity must be of this form, rather than the typical box shape in the other classes of cavities.

Location of Primary Decay. The location of primary decay, as with all contact decay, is just gingivally from contact point. This will result, as a rule, in the seat of initial decay being about midway from the incisal edge to the gingival outline. As the plates of enamel, both labial and lingual, are quite heavy and usually removed from direct stress, there will generally be considerable loss of dentine while the enamel walls are yet intact. The decay may be apparently small, yet reflected light by the use of mouth mirror will show a discoloration of a well defined area. The curved tine of an explorer may or may not enter from either the labial or lingual embrasure.

Opening the Cavity. Bathe the surfaces of all the anterior teeth in that jaw with water to free them of micro-organisms and gummy material, particularly the gingival border, and apply the mechanical separator.

Gaining Access. With a small straight chisel of about one millimeter in width cut away the enamel edge, throwing the chips into the cavity. Adequate finger rest must be secured before applying the chisel and only small portions of enamel engaged at each application, as a failure in either respect may result in checking the enamel to a greater extent than desired. When sufficient entrance has been made to the cavity to admit the instrument, the remaining enamel margins may be planed from this direction until a ligature will pass from the incisal to the gingival line. Where time will permit the case should be packed for preliminary separation as described in Chapter IV. If immediate separation and filling is to be practiced the rubber dam should be adjusted and the mechanical separator placed and tightened to a snug pressure. The separator should be tightened from time to time until the required separation is obtained. The approximate space required is from one-half to one millimeter where only one cavity exists in the proximal, and a full millimeter in cases where two cavities exist.

Outline Form. As these cavities are located in the most exposed portion of the mouth esthetic reasons demand as little cutting as possible consistent with the demands for permanency. However, it is a good rule, in outlining cavities of Class Three, to extend in all directions until when the filling is completed, the entire cavity outline not covered with gum tissue, is in full view of the operator. (Fig. 33.) As stated before, excessive cutting to obtain this condition may be obviated by proper separation.

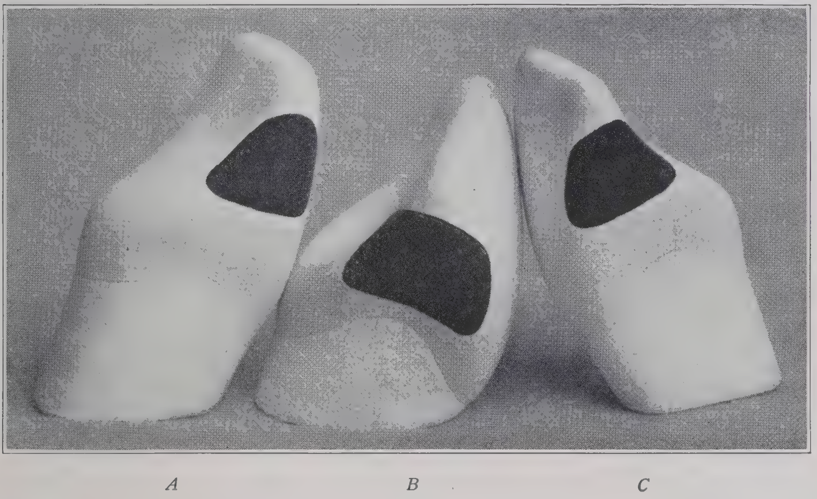


Fig. 33.—Class Three cavities filled so that the entire cavity outline, excepting that portion covered by gum tissue, is in full view of the operator. The gingival portion of (*B*) has been cut sufficiently low to be covered by gum tissue.

The Gingival Outline should be carried midway between contact and gum line, and farther extended to go under the gum when it approaches to within one millimeter of the gum. Great care should be exercised to square out both labial and lingual axio-gingival angles, carrying them sufficiently into these embrasures that the cavity margins may be in full view as they pass under the gum.

The Incisal Outline should be carried incisally until the margin of the filling will be permanently in view, with a space sufficient to admit of the free use of the tooth brush on the margin. This would, in many instances, carry the margin beyond the incisal edge and make a Class Four cavity and is only avoided by separation and filling of the cavity to a slightly excess contour.

The Labial Outline should be carried into the labial embrasure until the margins are in full view. The enamel should be split away until full length rods are obtained. On account of the exposed location of these cavities the esthetic reasons demand as little cutting labially as possible. As this margin is practically removed from the stress of occlusion it is not essential that the enamel be supported by dentine in every instance. However, care should be taken that the rods are full length and that all rods are removed where there has been a backward decay as shown by a whitened powder-like condition at their dentinal ends.

Additional Extension for esthetic reasons is sometimes required in the labial embrasure. This is more often true in the mesial cavities wherein the teeth are angular in form and present surfaces that are quite flat, resulting in a very square or prominent mesiolabial angle. In such cases the outline should be carried over the angle and into the labial surface, that the metal may be brought into the light, otherwise the completed filling will have the appearance of a decay or dark spot on the tooth.

The Lingual Outline must be carried into the lingual embrasure sufficiently to be brought into full view in all cases.

In the case of teeth of rounded form this will not always include the proximal marginal ridge. In teeth of a squared form and prominent lingual ridges the marginal ridges should be included and the outline carried along the axial slope of the ridge. The fact that many cases show a lingual articulation and occlusion on the lingual marginal ridges of upper incisors, will bring demands for including within the cavity the major portion of these ridges, unless supported by a good bulk of sound dentine. The failure to recognize this fact on the part of many operators is responsible for the loss of a large per cent of this class of fillings.

Resistance Form. No special resistance form other than that just given is required in this class of cavities.

Retention Form. When this order in the preparation has been reached attention should be directed to the incisal angle, particularly in the larger cavities, as cases will be met in which it will be found necessary to remove the incisal angle to secure proper "retention form." This looking to the incisal first will decide this point early in the procedure.

The Incisal Line Angle should meet the axial wall at least at a right angle. In cases where this line angle is short, as found in shallow cavities, the incisal line angle should meet the axial wall at a slightly acute angle. It is not necessary to make a convenience angle at the incisal point angle. (Fig. 34.)

The bevel angle on the gingival wall becomes the fulcrum. It is only necessary that the distance from this point to the incisal point angle be greater than that from the same point on the gingival wall to the most external portion of the incisal line angle. The more shallow the cavity in Class Three the more acute must be the incisal point angle.

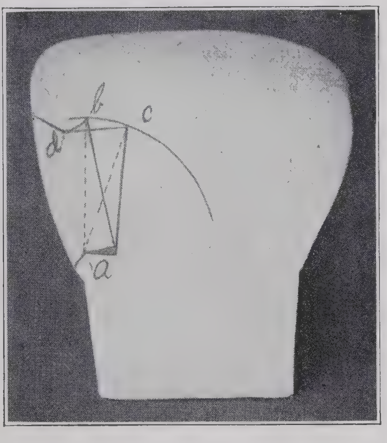


Fig. 34.—Drawing to illustrate the retention at the incisal angle of Class Three cavity. In shallow cavities with a short incisal line angle as *d—b,* the angle at *b* should be acute. In deeper cavities and longer incisal line angles as the one shown at *d—c,* the incisal point angle is efficient if it is a right angle and may even be obtuse. In the illustration shown the filling would pivot to exit at *a.* Dotted lines *a—b* and *a—c* are the same length hence the point angles of the two fillings would describe an arc of the same circle in tipping to exit.

Other Point Angles. The gingivo-axio-labial and the gingivo-axio-lingual point angles are now carried into the dentine at the expense of both axial and external walls, care being given not to groove the gingival wall.

Line Angles. Line angles are made with small hatchets and hoes of suitable sizes, say, one-third to one-half millimeter in width, with edges that are keen and whose corners are well defined, not having been rounded through careless sharpening or wear.

The Axio-Labial Line Angle is chased and sharpened for its entire length, making it particularly definite as it approaches each of the point angles.

The Axio-Lingual Line Angle is made definite for one millimeter in each direction from its two point angles, omitting the central portion, as this precaution will give added resistance form to the lingual wall. The sharpening of these line angles is best accomplished by engaging the instrument in the dentine the desired distance from the point angle and cutting to the angle.

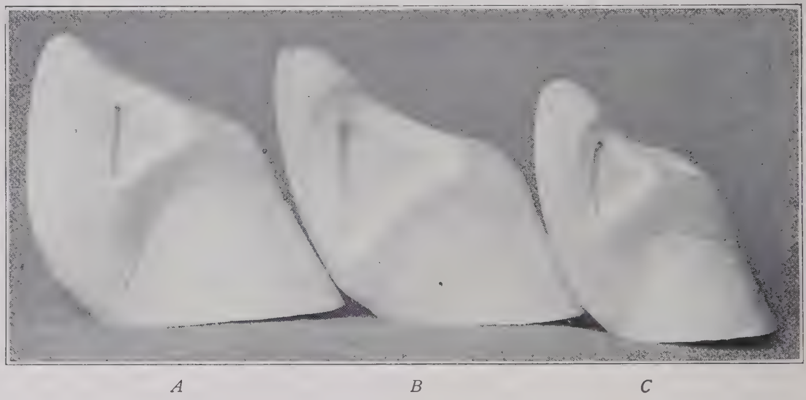


Fig. 35.—Class Three cavities prepared for cohesive gold. While the cavity in the cuspid (*A*) restores the mesial angle the shape of these cavities and the rules governing their management places them in Class Three.

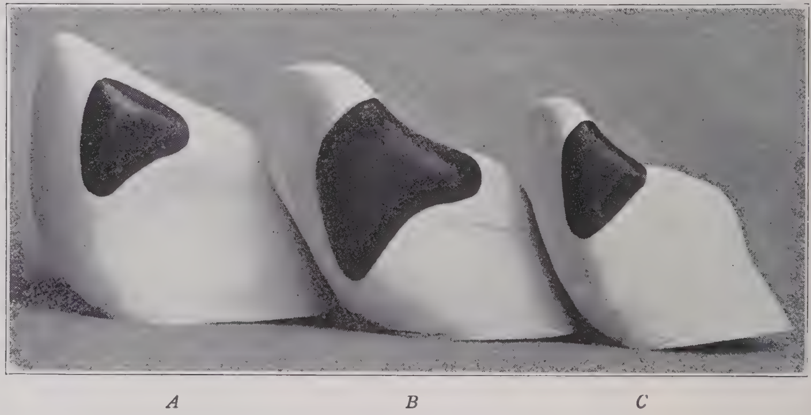


Fig. 36.—Class Three filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 35.

The Gingivo-Axial Line Angle should be well defined to make the gingival wall meet the axial at a definite angle, but should in no way be a ditch or groove.

The Gingivo-Labial and Gingivo-Lingual Line Angles should be cut away from their point angles out to and end at the dento-enamel junction. As the general form of the cavity is that of a triangle these angles will always be acute.

Gingival Wall. The gingival wall should be flat in every direction.

Axial Wall. The axial wall should be left as decay has left it in the central portion and all additional cutting should tend to make it take on the form, in miniature, of the surface of the tooth in which the decay has originated. A disregard of this rule will endanger the pulp, whereas if the axial wall is left as convex as possible the pulp has all possible protection.

Labial and Lingual Walls. These walls should be, as far as possible, of the same thickness for their entire length, which will result in their inner surfaces being of the same contour as the external surface of the tooth.

Convenience Form. Two convenience points are advisable in this class of cavities, cut in the gingivo-axio-labial and the gingivo-axio-lingual angles. The filling should be begun in the latter angle.

Removal of Remaining Decay. At this point inspect the dento-enamel junction for softened dentine. Also the entire axial wall should be scraped with large spoons for the removal of the last of the softened dentine, the cavity disinfected, dried, phenolized and again dried. Pulp protector should be applied when indicated.

Finish of Enamel Walls. The enamel walls should be planed to full cleavage, with suitable instruments of chisel edges, not forgetting the incisal and gingival inclination of the rods of these locations. Bevel the cavo-surface angle, give the cavity its toilet and immediately place the filling.

In Pulpless Cases. When the axial wall has been lost by reason of pulp removal the entire pulp chamber should be filled with cement of a very light yellow color or even a white cement may be used. In extremely frail teeth this may be only partially filled and the remaining portion used for retention.

CHAPTER XV.

MANAGEMENT OF PROXIMAL CAVITIES IN INCISORS INVOLVING THE ANGLE. (CLASS FOUR.)

Definition. Cavities of Class Four are those in which the incisal angle has either been lost or can not be safely retained. The decision as to its restoration is of most vital importance. To cut the angle from nearly every incisor which has a proximal decay is little short of malpractice, while at the same time to attempt to save those not wholly and adequately supported by dentine is to invite many disastrous failures.

Conditions Demanding Frequent Angle Restoration. *First.* When contact is in the incisal third. In such cases a very small decay will involve all of the dentine toward the incisal angle.

Second. Incisors which have long flat proximal surfaces. Such teeth will show a line of decay extending gingivo-incisally and may entirely weaken the incisal angle before the pulp is in danger.

Third. The pulp may be involved and its removal materially lessens the resistance of supporting dentine at the angle.

Fourth. The angle under consideration may be so located that it is frequently required to stand great stress in service. This is a point which must not be overlooked as an angle which stands well exposed must bear much greater and more often repeated force than an angle which does not occlude or can not be brought into articulation.

Difference Between Mesial and Distal Surfaces. The above four conditions will be more frequently met with in mesial surfaces, hence the mesial angles are in greater danger and more often require restoration.

Plans of Angle Restoration. There are four general plans of restoring the incisal angle which are worthy of consideration. Many plans have been advanced from time to time, but the four given below seem to have remained in favor.

Retention Form in Class Four Fillings. With each of the plans presented and generally practiced the effort is made to remove or nullify the principle of the lever.

With proximal fillings wherein the force of mastication is brought in direct contact with the filling the principles of the lever must be reckoned with. The force of mastication is the power, the filling the lever, the anchorage in the point angles the load and the point on which the filling would most likely pivot to exit the fulcrum. By a study of the case we find we must deal with the force of levers of both the first and second class.

In Fig. 37 we have an illustration of a Class Four, plan one filling wherein the principles of a lever of the second class are fully operative. The heavy long lines *a-b* represent the full length of the lever. The short heavy lines *a-c* represent that part of the lever which is the working arm, as the load is at *c*. That we may study the amount of anchorage to be provided for at the incisal angle, (*c*), we will ignore the assistance of the two gingival point angles and for that reason they have not been shown in the drawing. We here have a lever of the second class with the fulcrum at *a*, the load at *c* and the force at *b*.

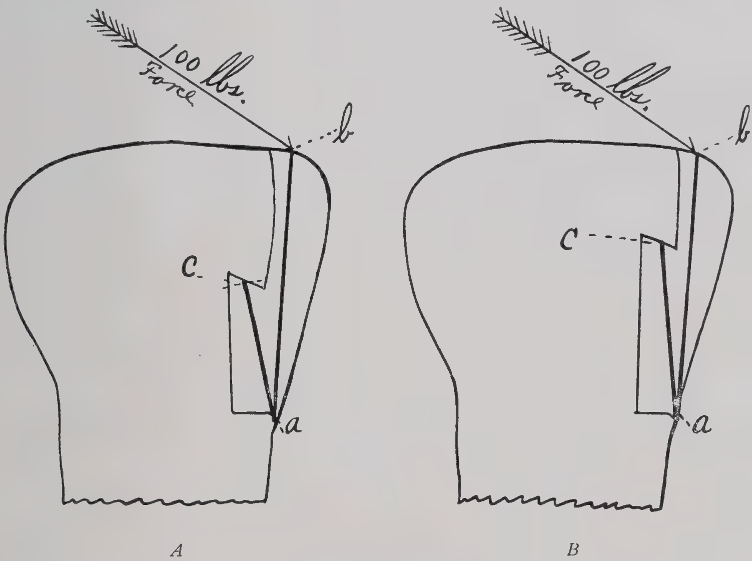


Fig. 37.—Drawings to illustrate the principle of the lever in the dislodgement of fillings of the fourth class, plan one.

In order that we may not inject into the problem at this time the principle of the bent lever we will consider that by the lateral movement of the mandible the force is applied at right angles to the "lever-arm." In diagram A, Fig. 37, the working arm is one-half of the lever which is of the second class. We then have the following with *x* representing the load, or unknown quantity:

$$100 \text{ lbs.} : x :: 2 : 4 = \frac{400}{2x} = 200 \text{ lbs.} = x.$$

It would therefore follow that an incisal point angle placed midway between the gingival wall and the incisal surface of the filling would be required to stand a strain just double the force at the incisal, or place of impact. In diagram B, Fig. 37, the incisal point angle is placed three-fourths of the way from the gingival to the incisal and we then have:

$$100 \text{ lbs.} : x :: 3 : 4 = \frac{400}{3x} = 133\tfrac{1}{3} \text{ lbs.} = x.$$

This shows a strain on the incisal point angle of one hundred and thirty-three pounds. It will therefore be seen that the incisal point angle should be laid as close to the incisal edge of the tooth as the strength of the dentine protecting that angle will permit as it follows that: "*The farther the incisal angle is from the force of mastication the greater will be the strain on both dentine and filling at this angle.*"

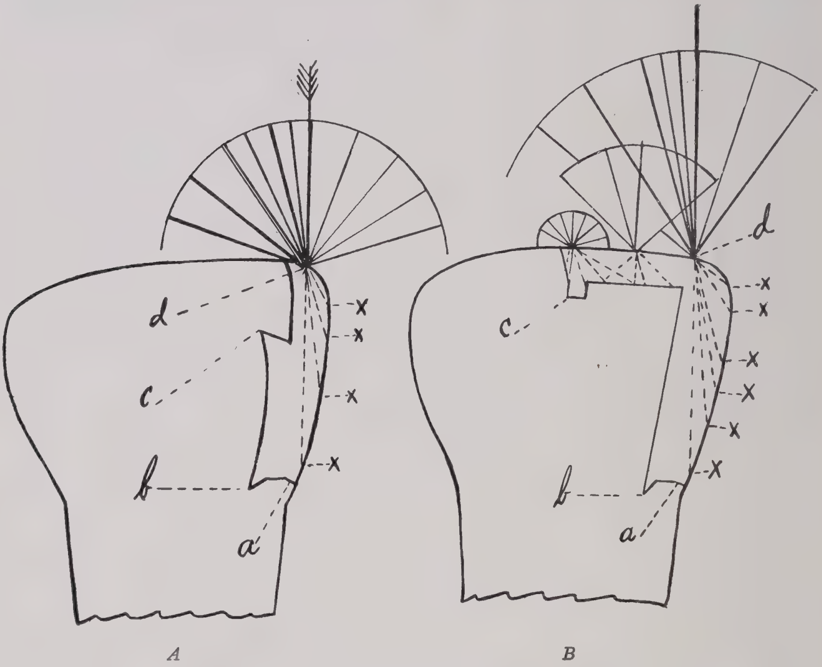


Fig. 38.—Drawings to illustrate the principle of the lever in the dislodgment of fillings of the fourth class, plans one and two.

With Fig. 38 we will consider the principles in a little more complicated form. Let *a* represent the fulcrum, *b* and *c* the loads and *d* the point of the application of the force. The radii of the arcs of the circles represent a few of the directions from which force may be received by the filling. With the light lines the force would be absorbed by the walls of the cavity. Force from the direction of the dark lines would put into operation the principles of the lever.

In diagram A, Fig 38, the filling would operate as a lever of the second class upon the load at *c*, as described in Fig. 37. With the gingival point angles at *b* the filling would operate as a lever of the first class over the same fulcrum (*a*), provided the gingival outline or fulcrum has been laid higher than the point angle and therefore nearer the point of the application of the force.

In case the gingival margin has been laid lower than the point angle or farther from the point of impact than the fulcrum we have a lever of the second class which when figured out will draw an immense load as shown in the explanation of Fig. 37.

In case the gingival point angles are cut more root-wise than the gingival margin and we have a lever of the first class we must consider the principles of the bent lever. When the direction of the force (or of the resistance) is not at right angles to the arm or the lever on which it acts, the "lever-arm" is the length of the perpendicular from the fulcrum to the line of the direction of the force (or the resistance).

We must therefore conclude: First, that gingival point angles should be placed so as to extend more root-wise than the height of the gingival line at the proximal (that part of the gingival wall which is nearest the incisal is regarded as the highest point). Second, the farther the gingival wall with all its parts is from the incisal the greater will be the length of the power arm with each individual blow. Third, the nearer the gingival wall is to the incisal the less the number of directions from which force may be received which will act upon the filling as a lever.

In order that we may eliminate the principles of the levers, the step cavity, in classes two and four, has been devised as shown in diagram B, Fig. 38. It will be seen by the radii of the three arcs drawn that the increase of the surface of the filling exposed to force does not increase the dangers of the lever as the area of the seat of the filling has also been increased which will absorb the force beneath the increased surface. Again, so long as the incisal angle in the step (at *c*) holds and the filling material remains rigid the lever principle has been eliminated as regards all other anchorage of the filling.

Direction of the Incisal Angle. Fig. 39 is a drawing to illustrate the difference in the directions the point angles take in tipping to exit with various filling. Let the perpendicular shaft represent the varying length of Class Four fillings and the horizontal bars the varying lengths of the step in plan two of this class. The dotted lines are the radii of the various circles the arcs of which the point angles would describe in moving to exit, pivoting on the gingival margin. The length of the step portion relative to the height of the filling determines the direction the incisal point angle must take to exit. With a short proximal portion and a comparatively long step portion, the first movement of the point angle is almost perpendicular. See fillings in Fig. 39 (*a, x, h;* also *g, f, n*).

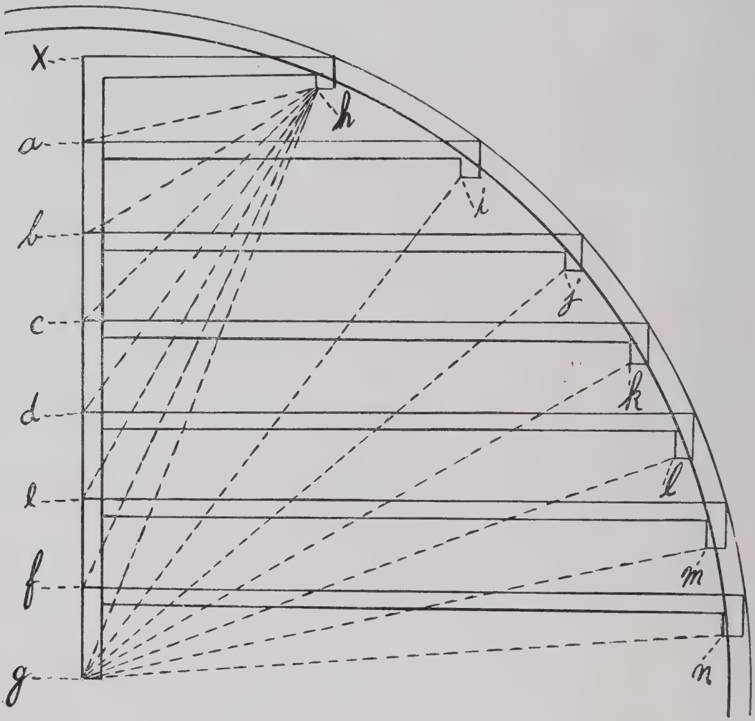


Fig. 39.—Drawing to illustrate the difference in the directions the point angle fillings take in tipping to exit with various fillings.

Note the difference in the direction the point angle would take to exit with an increased length of filling inciso-gingivally. Also see *h, x, a,* and then *h, x, b,* and on down until it is *h, x, g.* It will be seen that there is a gradation toward the horizontal movement of the incisal point angle to exit. Again note the change of direction to exit of the incisal point angles in *g, a, i,* and then *g, b, j,* then *g, c, k,* and on down to *g, f, n.* We see in this series that there is a gradation toward the perpendicular movement of the incisal point angle to exit. In the first instance we lengthened the axial wall, using the same length of step. In the second instance we shortened the axial wall and at the same time lengthened the step and the change is more rapid. It would seem then that the direction to be given the incisal point angle is determined by the degree of the circle in which lays a line drawn from the deepest portion of the incisal point angle to the fulcrum. (See dotted lines Fig. 39.) The nearer this line in a given case approaches the perpendicular to the axial part of the filling the more essential is it that the point angle be cut in the same plane as the axial wall. Also the nearer this line approaches ninety degrees from the perpendicular the more essential is it that the incisal point angle be cut at forty-five degrees to the perpendicular of the axial wall.

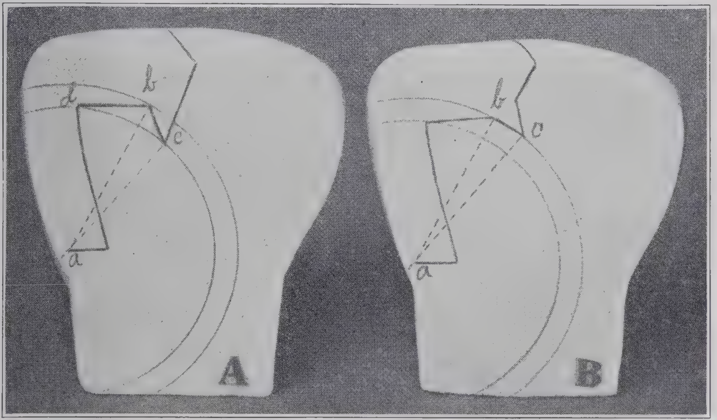


Fig. 40.—Drawings to illustrate the importance which should be given to the proper placing of the incisal point angle in fillings of Class Four, plan two, with particular reference to the plane in which wall *b*—*c* should be cut.

By a study of Fig. 40 it will be seen that the incisal angle of *A* would be effective while *B* would offer no resistance to exit with a filling pivoting at *a*. By materially shortening the axial walls of both, the point angle of *B* becomes effective and that of *A* ineffective.

As shown in the drawings in *A* the dentine included in *b, c, d* is the retention produced by having dotted line *a, b* longer than line *a, c*. In *B* these lines are the same length, hence no retention. The filling becomes a lever to lift the gingival point angles.

The Gingival Angles. In the study of the gingival angle retention, we will eliminate the incisal angle and consider that it has been improperly laid or has been weakened and the lever force has been transmitted to the gingival angles.

In Fig. 41, *a* is the fulcrum and *b* the extreme point of the angle. Dotted lines *a-b* are the radii of the circles the arcs of which the point angle fillings would describe in going to exit. The two gingival point angles should be of different depths so that they will describe the arcs of different circles in being drawn to exit. It is most convenient to make the gingivo-axio-lingual the deeper.

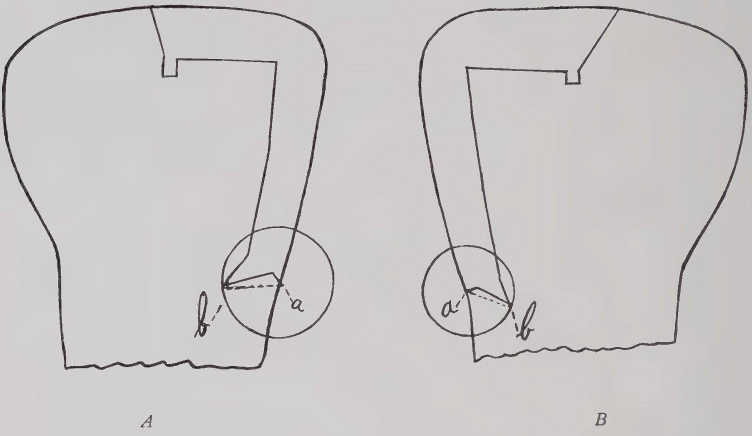


Fig. 41.—A study in the proper placing and depth of the gingival angles.

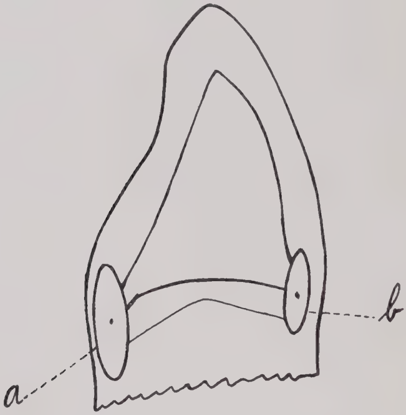


Fig. 42.—A study of the planes in which the gingival angles should be laid.

It is also essential that the two gingival point angles be so laid that the circles, the arcs of which the point angle fillings describe in passing to exit, stand in different planes as illustrated in Fig. 42. Failure to observe the last two principles given removes retention form as regards the gingival angles.

First Plan of Angle Restoration. (Class Four.)

The first plan of anchorage is made by undercutting the incisal edge. This plan is indicated in teeth of rather thick incisal edge that are rather short and stocky as they have a greater body of dentine near the angles upon which to depend.

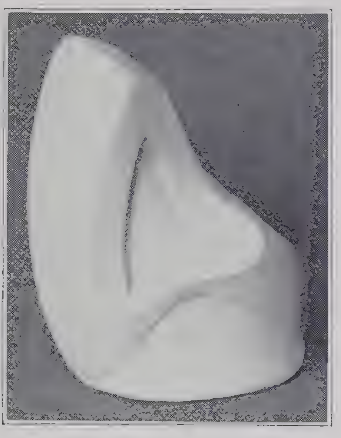


Fig. 43.—Cavity of Class Four, plan one, for cohesive gold.

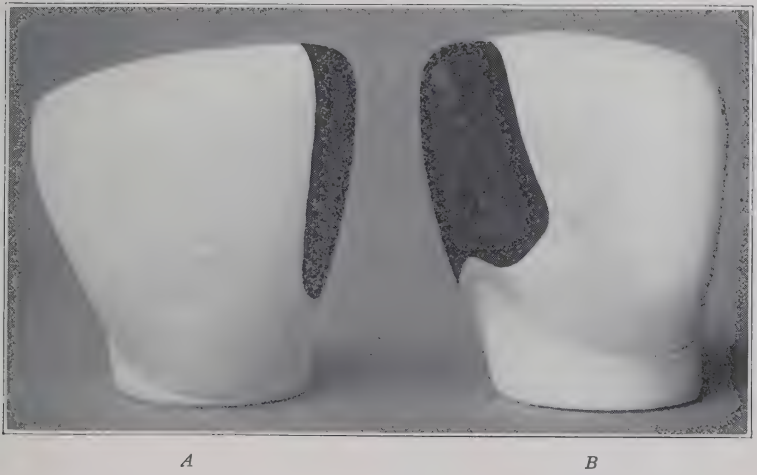


Fig. 44.—Class Four, plan one, cavity filled. Labial and lingual views. Cavity shown in Fig. 43.

As a rule the horns of the pulp in such teeth are well retracted, at least in adult mouths, and there is less danger of pulp exposure as compared with the teeth of thin edges and angular outline. If this plan has been decided upon, the cavity should be cut well to the gingival, particularly at the gingival angles, in some cases to the extent that the gingival wall is made convex to the incisal.

The Gingival Point Angles should be deep and well defined at the expense of both gingival and axial walls. This is particularly true of the gingivo-lingual angles, to protect against the torsion strain.

To Assist the Incisal Angle. To resist the tipping strain both the labial and lingual walls should be slightly grooved along the axio-labial and axio-lingual line angles much in the same way as with large Class Three cavities.

The Labial Outline should so proceed that the completed filling will be of about equal width for its entire length except that as it approaches the incisal edge it should be slightly curved to the axial.

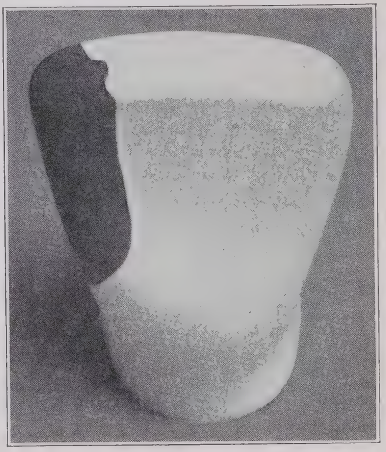


Fig. 45.—Shows incisal outline in Class Four, plan one, fillings with direct occlusion.

A Rule for Labial Outlines. All cavity outlines in incisal angle restorations should curve to the axial as they approach the incisal edge. The nearer this outline approaches the central axial line of the tooth the greater should be the curve. When the central axial line is reached by a cavity outline, the same should then be extended to involve the opposite angle. There are exceptions to the above rule but maximum resistance to stress is only thereby obtained.

The Necessity for Curving to the Axial. When approaching the incisal edge curve to the axial that the last rods at the cavo-surface angle may be adequately supported.

Arrangement of Enamel Rods at Incisal Edge. In cases where there has been incisal wear the enamel rods of both the labial and lingual plates stand on the dentine with their sides presented to the force of service.

They are therefore obliged to stand the force of the bite in a manner best illustrated by a cord of wood. Unless the ends of the pile are well supported or well sloped they crumble away when the load is received. A large percentage of fillings where this precaution has been neglected fail, due to the breaking away of the enamel at this point.

The Incisal Outline as it crosses the incisal edge of thick teeth should have in its center a curve toward the axial caused by a slight groove in the center of the dentine. This groove which ends at this point in the cavity outline should originate at the external end of the incisal line angle. If there is sufficient dentine, and there generally will be in the class of cases calling for this plan of restoration, this groove is of best service if it be a flattened groove and made with a small hoe or hatchet. (Fig. 45.)

The Lingual Outline should be the same as for large Class Three except in the incisal third when it should curve to the axial even more rapidly than the labial outline and for a longer distance, resulting in cutting away more enamel from the lingual than is removed by the labial outline. This is made necessary from the fact that all stress is from the lingual.

With Lower Incisors the reverse is true and it is necessary to remove slightly more of the labial enamel in angle restoration, a fact which materially mars these teeth from an esthetic point of view. Fortunately we have comparatively few angles to restore on lower incisors, but when they are presented the fact must be borne in mind that they receive the major portion of stress from the inciso-labial direction.

Second Plan of Angle Restoration. (Class Four.)

The second plan of restoration is indicated in teeth that are of medium thickness, particularly if they are of angular build or have a direct contact on the incisal edge either in occlusion or articulation, and consists in the additon to plan one of what is termed the incisal step. The cavity proper is prepared the same as has been outlined in plan one up to the forming of the step.

The Incisal Edge is cut away with a narrow-edged carborundum stone, the cutting being extended toward the opposite angle a distance equal to the width of the cavity proper. The incisal outline should avoid both the centers of primary calcification and the point of coalescence, two weak places in enamel construction. The cutting should be more at the expense of the lingual side of the tooth by one-half to one millimeter.

The Depth of This Step, inciso-gingivally, will depend upon the thickness of the cutting edge, and the probable stress it will receive. The thinner the edge and the greater the probable stress, the deeper must be the step. The majority of cases will show not to exceed one millimeter of gold on the labial in the step portion.

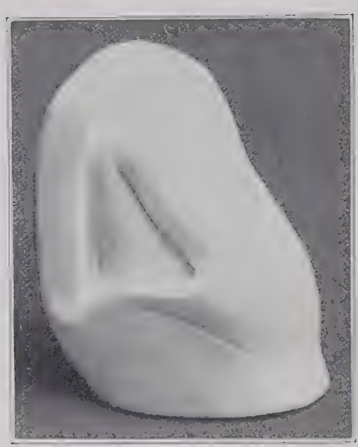


Fig. 46.—Cavity of Class Four, plan two, for cohesive gold.

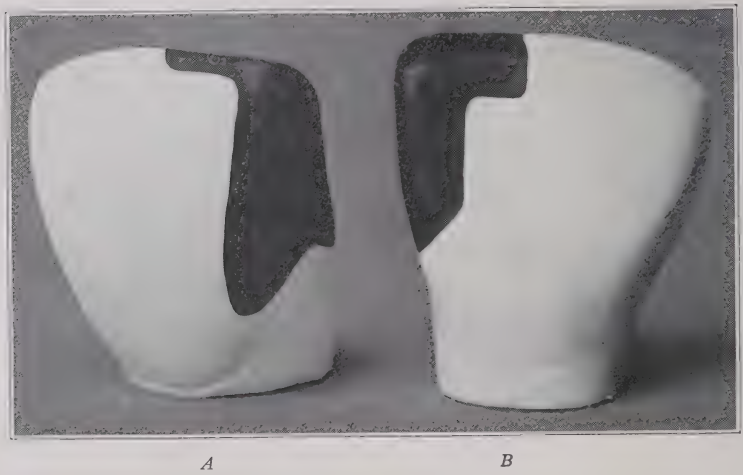


Fig. 47.—Class Four, plan two, filled. Labial and lingual views. A very popular method. Cavity shown in Fig. 46.

Technic of Cutting. A small round bur is then used to cut a groove in this newly formed pulpal wall, near the dento-enamel junction next to the lingual plate of enamel. The lingual enamel is then removed with a chisel thus carrying that portion of the pulpal wall to a lower level. This process is continued until it is at least one-half millimeter to one millimeter lower than the labial portion of the pulpal wall. This leaves the major portion of the dentine supporting the labial plate of enamel.

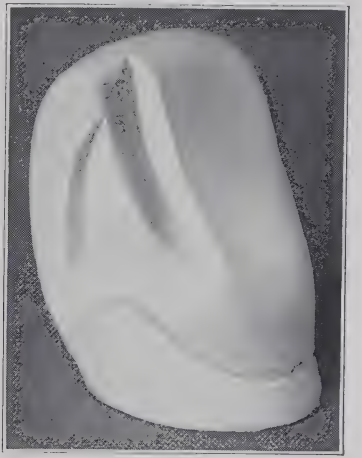
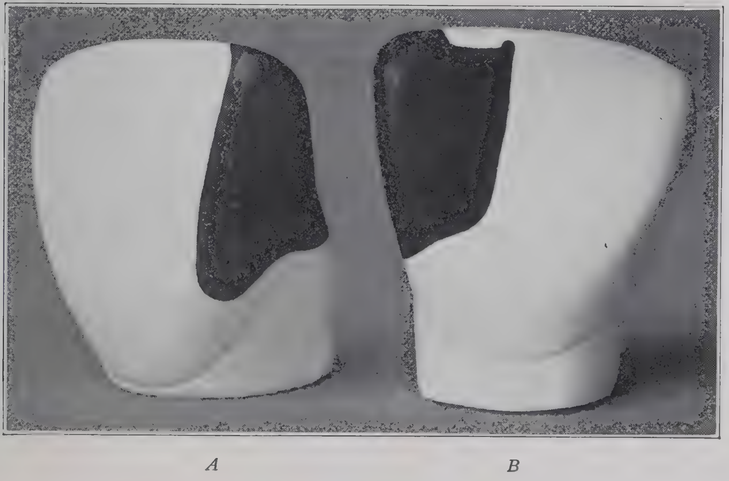


Fig. 48.—Cavity of Class Four, plan three, for cohesive gold.



A *B*

Fig. 49.—Class Four, plan three, filled. Labial and lingual views. Cavity shown in Fig. 48.

The Point Angle in the Step Portion should be deepened and made acute largely at the expense of the pulpal wall. This will place it in just the right position to resist stress from the probable source and prevent tipping. (See Fig. 37.)

Third Plan of Angle Restoration. (Class Four.)

This plan is the addition to plan one of the lingual step. It is particularly indicated in cases of long incisors which are quite thin labio-lingually and subjected to a long sweep of the lower incisors in the movements of articulation, or what is spoken of as the ''scissors bite.''

Also Indicated in cases where the axial wall extends out to the enamel edge on the lingual thus removing the lingual wall.

The Labial Outline is the same as with the first plan of restoration. The step is formed on the lingual by cutting away the enamel from the lingual surface of the tooth toward the central axial line for a distance of from one to two millimeters at the incisal edge.

As the gingival is approached the cutting is narrowed to a point where the marginal ridge may be crossed at right angles to meet the gingival portion of the outline. This will form a V-shaped axial wall of dentine facing the lingual. There should be cut a flat-floored groove in this dentine parallel with the remaining enamel wall ending in the gingivo-axio-lingual angle which should be an acute convenience angle. The plan gives great resistance to stress from lingual pressure.

Fourth Plan of Angle Restoration. (Class Four.)

This plan consists of resorting to all of the features of resistance and retention embodied in plans two and three by combining both the lingual and incisal steps. Each of these has been fully described and the method of cutting both steps to the same should not prove hard to accomplish.

By this plan the maximum resistance and retention forms are secured with the minimum loss of dentine. It must be remembered that resistance to stress is good in proportion to the amount of securing dentine retained, hence it should be sparingly cut away. The removal of enamel to lay bare dentine wherein to lay anchorage is only harmful from the esthetic standpoint and is of little loss when taken away from a surface not in view, as is the case when we cut away a portion of the lingual plate.

Cavities in the Distal of Superior Cuspids. On account of the peculiar articulation of the lingual surface of superior cuspids this cavity has been left for separate consideration. The plan given is a modification of plan three, using a lingual step not unlike the occlusal step in a class two cavity.

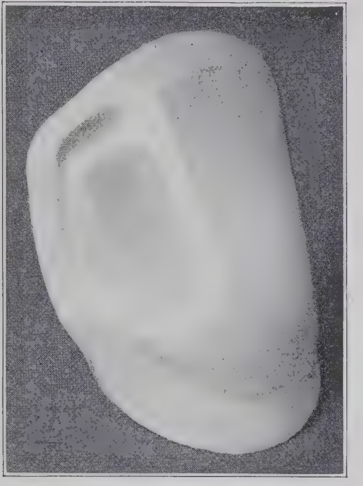


Fig. 50.—Cavity of Class Four, plan four, for cohesive gold showing maximum anchorage with a minimum loss of dentine. The use of this plan is advised when the lingual stress is great.

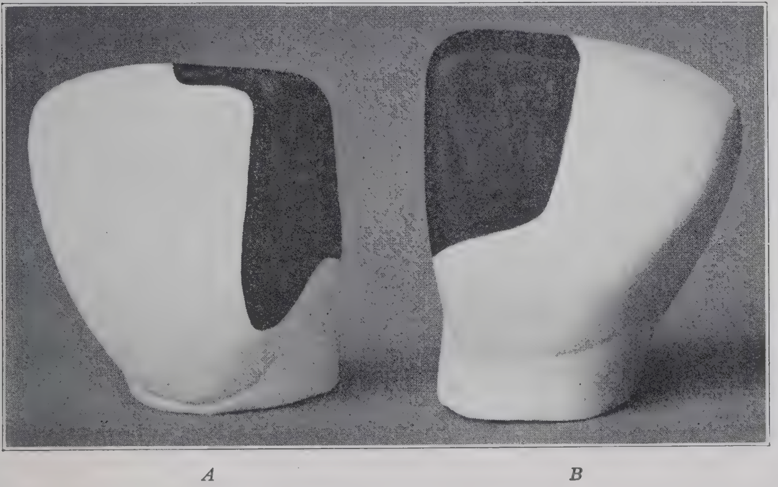


Fig. 51.—Class Four, plan four, filled. Labial and lingual views. Cavity shown in Fig. 50.

Access is an easy matter as the decay is in the most prominent part of the distal surface and a little work with the chisel gives access to the cavity.

Outline Form. In outlining the cavity proper most of that which has been said about plan one should be followed here.

As to the lingual outline and that of the step particular attention must be paid to so placing the margins as to remove them as much as possible from the stress of articulation.

The Step. The lingual step is added to this cavity as it materially assists in retention, resistance and convenience forms.

In the laying of the walls of the step portion the particulars are carried out much as though the lingual surface of the cuspid were an occlusal surface, as next to an occlusal surface it receives the greatest stress in articulation.

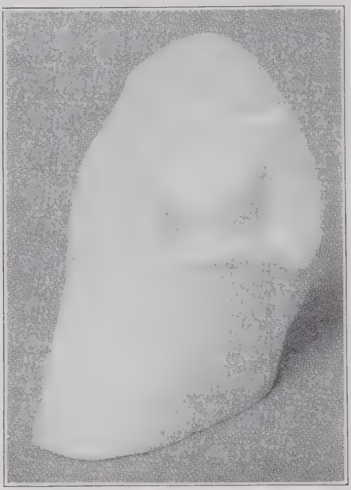


Fig. 52.

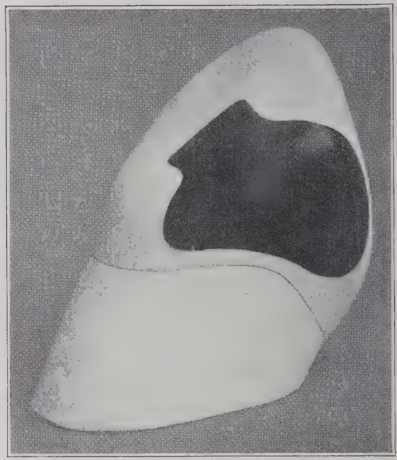


Fig. 53.

Fig. 52.—Cavity of Class Four, modified plan three, for cohesive gold in the distal of the superior cuspid. This plan is sometimes used to advantage in the incisors when the tooth is short and stocky. In such cases the lingual step is made to include the lingual pit.

Fig. 53.—Class Four, modified plan three, filled. Cavity shown in Fig. 52.

Axial Walls. It will be seen that this cavity has two axial walls. The one in cavity proper is the axial, while that in the step is termed the lingual axial wall.

The Lingual Axial Wall should be placed on a plane parallel with the lingual surface of the tooth. Its surrounding line angles should be laid just below the dento-enamel junction.

Convenience Form in this cavity is pretty well secured by the addition of this lingual step, as the filling is then easily built in from the lingual direction. Both gingival point angles in the cavity proper should be made convenience angles as well as the axio-gingivo-mesial point angle in the step portion.

CHAPTER XVI.

MANAGEMENT OF CAVITIES IN THE GINGIVAL THIRD.
(CLASS FIVE.)

Gingival Third Cavities Differ from all other cavities in the teeth in that they originate on perfectly smooth surfaces generally without flaw in enamel formation and without covering of any kind, or to state it more concisely, there seems to be no predisposing cause.

Their Prevention is an easy matter, as the accumulation of sordes which is the sole exciting cause, is unprotected and of easy access to the brush so that patients with this class of decay are paying the penalty for the careless neglect of the simplest forms of oral cleanliness. With these facts before us it becomes the duty of every practitioner to fully advise the patients of the neglect of their mouths in this particular locality, in an effort to check farther destruction.

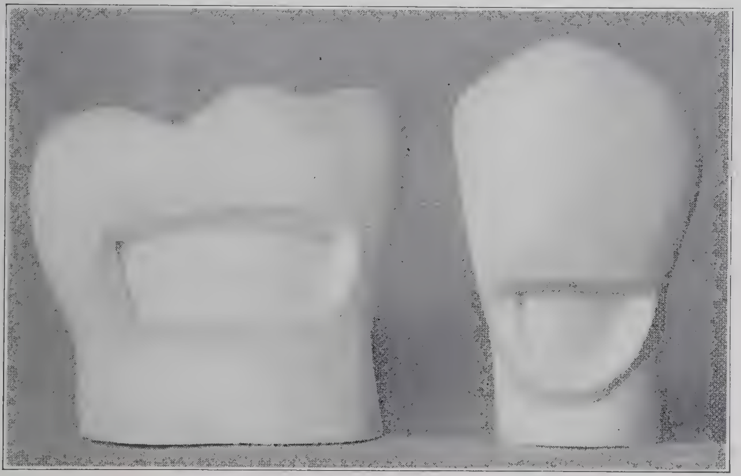
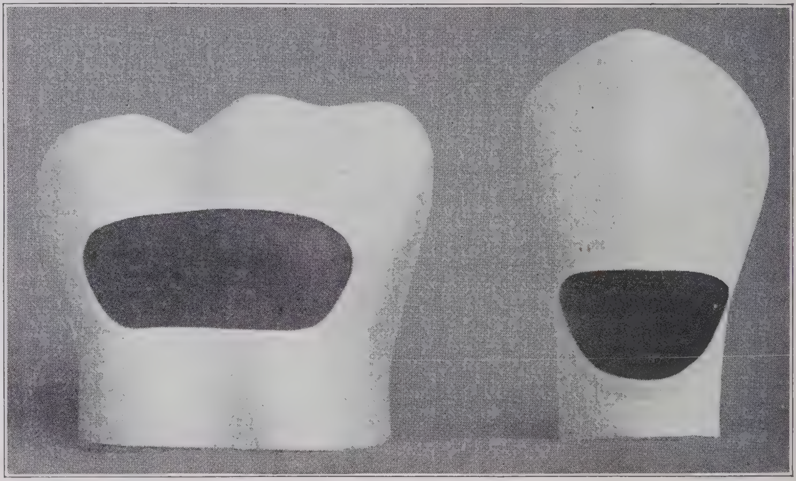

A *B*

Fig. 54.—Cavities Class Five for cohesive gold or amalgam.

The Tendency to Spread in the Enamel is a characteristic of this class of cavities. They usually originate near the center of the buccal surface near the free margin of the gum and seldom stop until they have extended both mesially and distally nearly to the angles. The fact that the encroachment seldom reaches the angle in the external enamel decay, is a point to be considered in the study of extension for prevention in this class of cavities. It appears that when the outline is carried quite to the angle that secondary caries rarely occurs.

The Gingival Outline should be laid below the gum line for its entire length until the angles are reached when it should emerge from beneath the gum at a right angle to the free margin of the gum.

The Occlusal or Incisal Outline should be carried to a region of sound enamel. Where this extension does not carry this outline farther than one millimeter from the free margin of the gum farther extension should be made. With teeth surrounded by a heavy gum, particularly if there seems to be a condition of hypertrophy present, the occlusal outline should be laid at least two millimeters from the border of the gum.



A *B*

Fig. 55.—Class Five filled. Cavities shown in Fig. 54.

Retention Form. Retention is secured by squaring out the four point angles. The axial wall should generally be left as decay has left it in the central portion. Any subsequent cutting should be of such a nature as would tend to make it convex to the external, or so to speak, the miniature of the tooth's surface in which it is being cut. An effort to cut a flat axial wall mesio-distally will often endanger the pulp and is unnecessary as these cavities need no resistance form.

In Large Buccal Decay often the gum has so grown into and filled the cavity that the adjustment of the clamp and rubber dam is difficult or impossible. In such cases if the pulp is not involved much assistance is secured by packing the cavity full of gutta-percha base plate allowing it to crowd well down upon the gum. In a few days the gum will have receded or have been absorbed sufficiently to permit convenient access.

If the Pulp or Pulp Canals Are Involved and require treatment make an application of the indicated remedy, covering this with amalgam which should fill the cavity. Care should be taken that the gingival wall has been planed to a solid condition. During this operation dryness may be obtained by the assistance of cotton rolls.

When case returns the clamp will ride on the amalgam at the gingival and access to the pulp canals may be had through the upper portion of the amalgam. After the pulp canals have been filled the dam may be removed, the remainder of the amalgam excavated and cavity preparations proceeded with, as well as the placing of an amalgam filling, under dry conditions by the use of cotton rolls.

If Gold is to Be Used the gold inlay is clearly indicated as producing the best results with the least tax upon patient and operator.

With Labial Cavities in the gingival third the Hatch clamp will expose nearly every case presented and render access not difficult for the introduction of a cohesive gold filling. In cases of extensive gum recession on labial exposures the porcelain inlay is clearly indicated and is considered in the chapters on that subject.

CHAPTER XVII.

MANAGEMENT OF ABRADED SURFACES. OCCLUSAL AND INCISAL. (CLASS SIX.)

Definition. Class six includes the group of cavities necessary for the repair of injuries to the teeth through the loss of a portion of their articulating surfaces as the result of wear. The condition is abnormal and the extent of the destruction of tooth substance is by no means in proportion to the amount of use to which the teeth have been subjected. However it will be noticed in mouths with teeth of short cusps, and particularly if the incisors occlude directly upon the incisal edge, that there is an abnormal amount of lateral motion in the act of articulation, and in such mouths we find the maximum loss of tooth substance at any given age.

Cause Not Wholly Clear. Yet, that friction is the sole cause for this lesion, can not be demonstrated, as the surfaces thus affected do not show the exact impression of the opposing teeth, neither is this condition always delayed till advanced years. Cases will be occasionally met with in the mouths of people in middle life showing the advanced stages of this trouble.

At the same time locations will be found on the occlusal surfaces of teeth which at one time must have been in articulation but are so far lost and seemingly worn away that they could not be brought into occlusion.

It would seem from a study of a great number of cases that there must be some causes predisposing and exciting not yet understood. It is not improbable that the cause is a fault in tooth structure, not so much in the constituents of the tooth as in the lack of strength in their combination. This conclusion would seem plausible from the fact that teeth similarly situated and of the same chemical analysis are affected to a different degree by even slight friction. The bond of union does not seem to be so strong.

The Object in Filling or in making a cavity to fill is to permanently check the loss of tooth substance by entirely covering the affected surface with a substance that will resist the full force of mastication.

Occlusal Surfaces. In occlusal surfaces, particularly molars showing the first stages of general erosion, early interference is advised. As soon as a cusp is lost it should be restored and if possible built high with gold, preferably an alloy of gold, either platinized foil or a cast inlay of gold alloy.

This Early Restoration of cusps to their full height will tend to restrict the lateral motion of the mandible in mastication, which seems to be a factor in this dissolution.

Cavity Preparation. These cavities should be prepared as class one and should be retentive throughout.

If the Major Portion of the Occlusal Surface of a single molar is affected the whole occlusal surface should be lowered about one millimeter and the same restored with a cast inlay, sometimes termed an onlay. This is advised from the fact that the occlusal side of the filling may better fit the surface of the occluding teeth. This may and probably will necessitate the amputation of the pulp of this individual tooth when the pulp chamber should be utilized for anchorage.

If Contact Points have been reached by this cutting, a mesio-occlusio-distal cavity is imperative.

When Wear is General opening the bite to the extent of about one millimeter is preferable to cutting away any more tooth substance than is necessary for firm foundation and a correct outline.

With Incisal Abrasion, if the wear is not excessive, the building on of the "shoe," or covering the entire incisal end of the tooth with platinized gold is the best practice. The gold inlay, which is treated in the chapters on inlays, is also of service.

When there is excessive incisal wear opening the bite to practically normal is indicated, using gold for the posterior teeth and the porcelain crown for the anterior.

The Entire Enamel Edge on the occlusal and incisal surfaces must be covered with a protecting layer of metal as with these teeth the bond of union seems to be very weak, particularly at the dento-enamel junction, and they will chip away if not wholly protected from the force of mastication.

CHAPTER XVIII.

CAVITY PREPARATION FOR GOLD INLAYS.

Definition. An inlay is a body placed within a previously prepared excavation. As applied to the filling of teeth it refers to the process whereby the filling is inserted into the cavity of a tooth in one piece and retained there, by the assistance of cement.

The Materials in most common use are porcelain, pure gold, alloys of gold, as well as alloys of base metals.

The Indications for a Gold Inlay. *First.* In large contour restorations, as there is a material saving of both time and energy on the part of both patient and operator. Such cases, particularly with posterior teeth are frequently crowned with the shell gold crown with its almost universally irritating band, when the inlay could be of greater service.

Second. When it is difficult to maintain dry conditions for a long period of time about a cavity, as with large gingival cavities in molars and bicuspids.

Third. When there are extensive occluding surfaces to be restored. It is much easier to cast a correct contour than to build up with the plugger point which is largely guesswork when the rubber dam is in position.

Fourth. When it is desired to put in a number of fillings in a given short time. In such cases the operator can make the wax models, and engage the help of the laboratory in completing the fillings while he is still busy with other fillings at the chair.

Fifth. When the necessary force to properly condense a cohesive gold filling is not permissible, as with loosened teeth, or invalid patients.

Gold Inlays Are Not Indicated in small cavities, or shallow cavities, unless the outline is extensive.

The Cavity Preparation for a gold inlay does not materially differ from that which has already been advised in the preceding chapters. It is possible to construct an inlay without change for nearly every cavity which has been correctly prepared to receive a cohesive gold filling. However if the order of precedure is slightly rearranged the operation is simplified.

This Change in the Order would be to put retention form last, attending to that part of the cavity preparation after the model has been made and just before setting the inlay.

In cases where this has not been done, or the cavity is naturally retentive, the retention should be temporarily covered, as will later be described, while making the model.

Change of Position of Retention Angles. It is quite ideal to cut just as heavy retention angles in the different classes of cavities for gold inlays, as for cohesive gold, only they should be laid in a different position and cut at the expense of the base walls rather than the surrounding walls, in order to give the cavity draw. This feature of the cavity preparation will be described as we consider the preparation of cavities by classes farther on in this chapter.

The Order of Procedure for Inlays would then be as follows:

1. Gain access.
2. Outline form.
3. Resistance form.
4. Convenience form.
5. Removal of remaining decay.
6. Finishing enamel walls.
7. Toilet of the cavity.
8. Retention form, which is given as the fourth order in other forms of fillings.

Gaining Access for inlay filling is the same as that with other fillings as far as surgical procedure is concerned. No more tooth substance should be cut away on this account.

When using preliminary separation for access, there should be in most of Classes Two or Three cavities, more room secured, as this will materially assist in getting a correct wax pattern as well as aid in the process of placing the inlay.

Resistance Form for Inlays should receive the same careful consideration as given for other fillings. Weakened enamel walls should be protected not only from the subsequent force received in stress but from the stress of setting the inlay. Flat seats for all inlays are imperative. The usual steps in Classes Two and Four are called for as an important factor in retention to resist the tipping strain.

Convenience Form for Inlays should not be practiced to excess. No convenience points are required. The major portion of convenience form should be gained through separation, preferably slow separation.

Removal of Remaining Decay. When it has been fully determined that the pulp is not to be removed, some decay may be left on the axial wall, or in the region of the bucco-axial or the linguoaxial line angles, until the inlay has been cast and fitted. It should then be removed and the dentine over-lying the pulp, if hypersensitive to thermal changes, given a coat of cavity varnish. Allowing this softened dentine to remain during the interim between the making of the pattern and the setting of the inlay, will protect the pulp against irritation and save devitalization before setting the inlay.

The Finishing of the Enamel Walls will necessarily come in at this point as all cutting of the external outline of the cavity must be completed before proceeding to make the pattern. The only change advisable is that the cavo-surface angle should be more obtuse, and the bevel angle should not be as deeply buried, which results in a thinner metal edge.

This will assist in burnishing the margins to a closer adaptation in the final finish.

More Beveling at the Cavo-surface Angle should be resorted to for two reasons. First, the gold inlay should have a margin of rather an acute angle in order that the material may be burnished more closely to the margin. Second, during the process of setting the inlay and burnishing the margins, the cavo-surface angle stands in great danger of being fractured.

The Toilet of the Cavity for Gold Inlays. Herein lies the greatest weakness in inlay methods. No cavity margin is surgically clean after it has been moistened or been in contact with the inlay wax pattern.

After the pattern has been formed and removed our methods will not permit of again planing the cavity surfaces and particularly the margins, which is the only way to render them entirely clean.

Hence we are forced to wash the cavity walls just before setting the inlay with solvents of the substances which have contaminated them. Without going into detail, it is advised that the cavity be thoroughly scrubbed with chloroform, then absolute alcohol as a second cavity toilet, and immediately the cavity be flowed with the cement, introducing the inlay under dry conditions.

Line of Approach. In inlay work the cavities should be approached from the direction in which they are to receive stress during service.

In withdrawing the wax pattern and when the inlay is placed, each should travel parallel with a line drawn from the seat of the cavity to the source of the force of mastication. This line of approach is good practice with any filling, but is more essential with the gold inlay than the cohesive gold filling, for we do not have the assistance of the elasticity of the dentine in retention made possible by the use of the wedging principle in the manipulation of cohesive gold.

Preparation of Cavities of Class One.

Of the cavities of this class calling for gold inlays only the large occlusal surface cavities in molars are of importance. Small pit and fissure cavities are more quickly and easily filled by other methods.

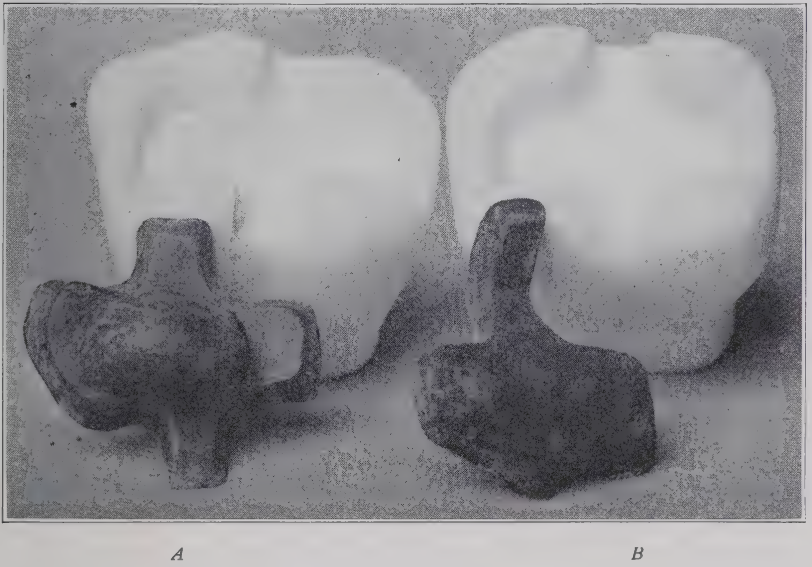


Fig. 56.—Cavities of Class One for gold inlays. Cavity side of inlays shown.

Outline Form. In large occlusal cavities the outline should be so carried as to avoid eminences at the crest of marginal ridge. When this is reached on the buccal or lingual the outline should include the marginal ridge and at least one millimeter of the axial wall be involved. All deep grooves should be included. The curves should be as generous as possible.

Resistance Form. The same rules apply as to other fillings. When much of the supporting dentine has been removed through decay or cavity preparation from either the buccal or lingual walls, that portion within the cavity should be covered with a thin layer of black wax, which prevents the wax pattern from coming in contact with these walls. The cast inlay will then not touch these walls during the process of introduction, which will often save a fracture of these walls, due to stress from within when driving the inlay home to a seat.

The Major Portion of Retention Form comes in for consideration after the inlay has been cast and fitted and just before cementing to place. However, a flat seat and nearly parallel walls to this seat with fairly definite angles, is necessary to guard against the tipping strain and produce proper retention form.

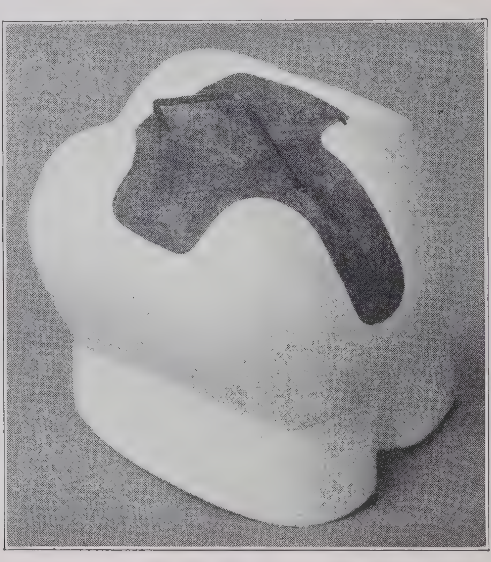


Fig. 57.—Class One inlay in position showing gold wire cast in the filling, which was put into the wax pattern to support the long buccal arm. Cavity shown at (*B*) Fig. 56.

Preparation of Cavities of Class Two.

Large proximal cavities in molars and biscupids are successfully handled with this method of filling.

Access. Preliminary separation is of the greatest service here and should be general practice as much cutting for convenience form is avoided, and better contact secured.

Complete Preliminary Separation very materially facilitates the removal of the wax pattern as the operator does not have to be as careful about having his wax pattern tight against the surface of the adjacent tooth. In addition to the preliminary separation before making the pattern, it is to the advantage of the operator to pack the case for additional separation during the interim between making the pattern and setting the inlay.

Outline Form. The outline for inlay filling is much the same as for other methods. Care should be taken that the buccal and lingual walls are parallel, particularly the enamel portion of these walls, as the wax pattern must move directly to the occlusal surface in exit. It is equally essential in inlays that angles and sharp turns in outline be avoided, particularly as they will not take in the wax pattern and any defect in the casting exaggerates the misfit.

Resistance Form. Flat gingival and pulpal walls are demanded in class two. Weakened buccal and lingual cusps should be removed and replaced with the filling material.

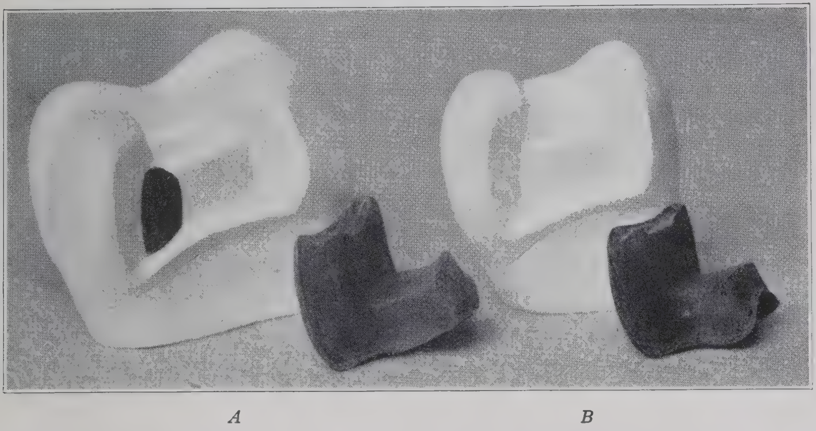

A *B*

Fig. 58.—Cavities of Class Two for gold inlays. Cavity side of inlays shown. Black wax has been used in the molar to temporarily remove the retention produced by decay.

Retention Form is best secured for vital cases by making four convenience angles in each case similar in size to those for cohesive gold. However, these convenience angles should be laid down in the gingival and pulpal walls and cut entirely at the expense of these walls rather than at the expense of the tooth substance in the region of the ascending line angles. To describe the process more accurately take a round bur, about number one-half or number two, sink it into the gingivo-axio-buccal and gingivo-axio-lingual point angles about the depth of the bur. To this point the procedure is the same as though we were going to make a convenience angle for cohesive gold. Instead of sinking the bur laterally into the ascending line angle and drawing it occlusally, as with cohesive gold, we draw it toward the mesio-distal plane along the gingivo-axial line angle, allowing it to fade out, after going once or twice the width of the bur, taking the tooth substance from the gingival wall. Treat both lower point angles in this manner. In the step portion of the cavity follow the same procedure in the two point angles, cutting all tooth substances at the expense of the pulpal wall. This results in giving the cavity draw to the occlusal and giving your inlay four lugs, which key the filling to a seating, particularly in the region of the gingivo-buccal and gingivo-lingual point angles. It also results in placing your retention form high in vital cases and near the force of mastication, and in a part of a vital tooth which is well suited to stand the tipping strain. (Fig. 58.)

In Pulpless Cases the retention form should be placed low in the tooth. In fact the major portion of it should be below the gingival wall, and this is more frequently secured by the use of the pin inlay. When the pin is not used, the pulp chamber is so shaped that the wax pattern will show a lug, which can be used for the major portion of the retention.

Finishing of Enamel Walls. This part of the cavity preparation should be attended to with all of the care and detail that is required when making a cohesive gold filling. In addition thereto, after the planing has been done with a chisel, particularly on the buccal and lingual outline, these margins should be polished with a very fine grit disk. This facilitates the travel of the wax on these two surfaces when going to exit. A chisel finish on these surfaces results in a pattern that under the microscope shows little fine projections, which have gone into the roughened surface. In drawing the pattern these little projections have been bent and point gingivally. This results in an imperfect casting along these surfaces and interferes with the fit. Whereas if the surfaces have been polished, a polished wax pattern results and the completed inlay more nearly fits the margins.

When the cavity on account of decay is naturally retentive or has undercuts these are temporarily filled and overcome by covering the retentive portion of the cavity with some substance, as temporary stopping or wax of a different color than that used in making the pattern.

Preparation of Cavities of Class Three.

The gold inlay is seldom indicated, in cavities of Class Three.

An exception may be made in those which are large and have through decay lost their entire lingual wall.

Access. It is of a necessity from the lingual as Class Three cavities receive their stress from that direction.

The Outline is the same as though a cohesive filling were to be made. Care should be taken that the labial bevel be laid on the same plane as the travel of the wax pattern to exit, else this portion of the model will be distorted in removal.

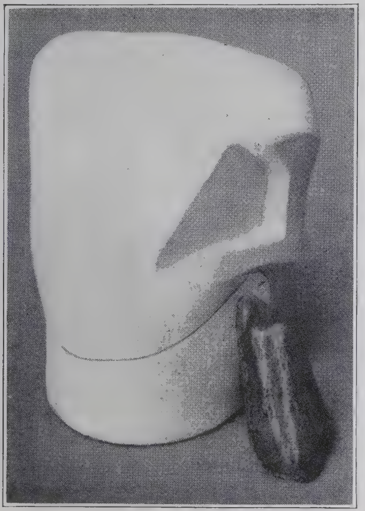


Fig. 59.—Cavity of Class Three for gold inlay, lingual approach. Cavity side of inlay shown.

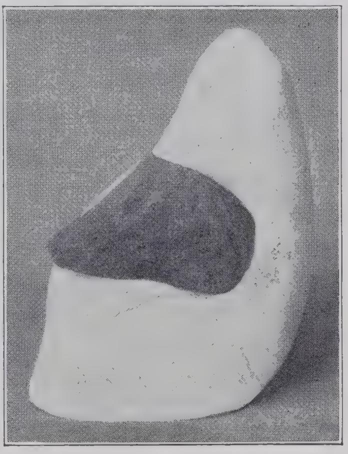


Fig. 60.—Inlay shown in Fig. 59 partly in place.

The Gingival Wall Should Meet the axial wall at an acute angle and the cavity should have a line angle which might be termed axio-incisal. The labio-axial line angle should be slightly shorter than the outline of the cavity where the axial wall meets the lingual surface. This will result in allowing the pattern exit to the lingual. As the labial wall, which is the seat of the cavity, is frail, care should be taken that it is well supported by sound dentine, else the seating of the inlay will cause fracture of this wall.

Preparation of Cavities of Class Four.

The use of the inlay should be largely restricted to pulpless cases and a pin in the pulp canal used for the major portion of retention.

If the Inlay is used in Class Four plans one and three, the case should always be pulpless. In vital pulp cases the inlay may be used to advantage in plans two and four.

Resistance Form. In this part of cavity procedure the same care should be exercised as when using the cohesive gold filling.

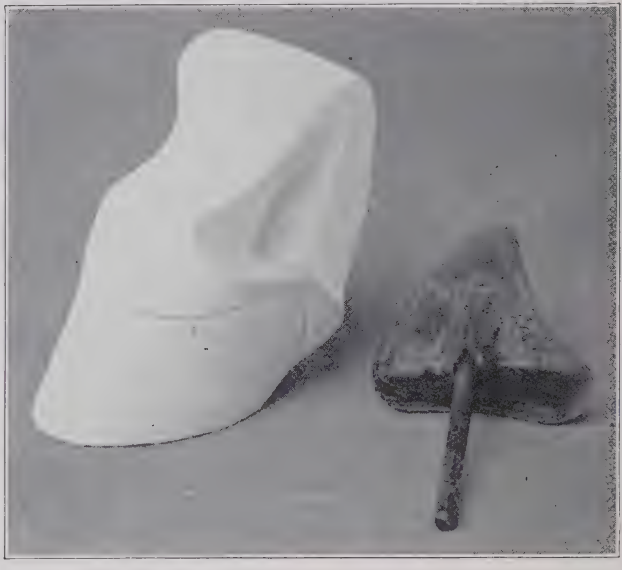


Fig. 61.—Cavity of Class Four, plan one, for gold inlay. Cavity side of inlay shown.

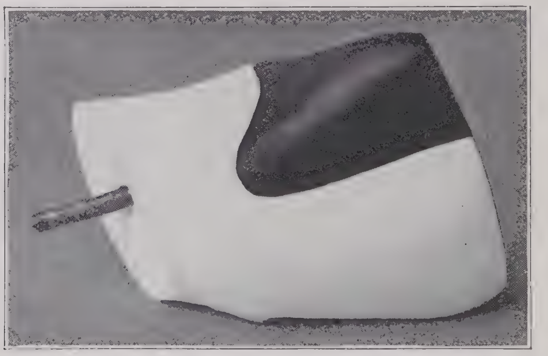


Fig. 62.—Class Four, plan one, inlay in position. Cavity shown in Fig. 61.

This is particularly true at the incisal edge, where the beveling to the axial should be quite generous to protect against breaking down of this margin due to the fact that stress comes at right angles to the long axis of the enamel rods.

Retention Form. This step in cavity procedure will vary according to which plan of Class Four is used. In plan one, which as before stated should be used only in pulpless cases, a pin should be placed in the pulp canal and depended upon almost entirely for the retention. In plan two, largely used in cases with vital pulps, a short, 20-gauge pin of iridio-platinum or tungsten should be placed in the step portion of the cavity lying parallel to the long axis of the tooth. This small pin had best be from one to three

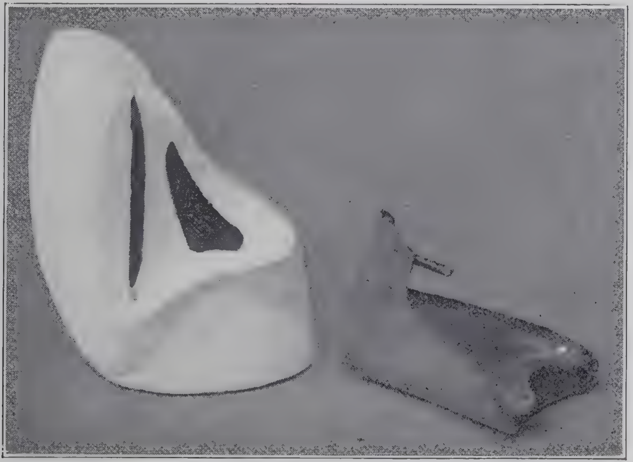


Fig. 63.—Cavity of Class Four, plan two, for gold inlay. Cavity side of inlay shown. Black wax has been used to temporarily remove undercuts caused by decay.

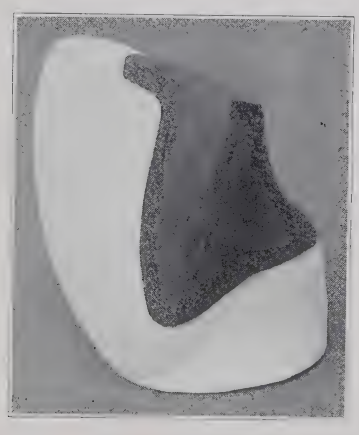


Fig. 64.—Class Four, plan two, gold inlay in position. Cavity shown in Fig. 63.

millimeters long, owing to the possibilities of the case. The gingival retention may be accomplished either by using a similar pin to that used in the incisal, placing the hole for same in about the center of the gingival wall, or the plan of retention used in the gingival wall Class Two may be used. This consists in cutting the two convenience angles in the gingival wall. In plan three, pulpless cases, the pin in the root canal should be used. In plan four same retention used as in plan two as the case is nearly always vital.

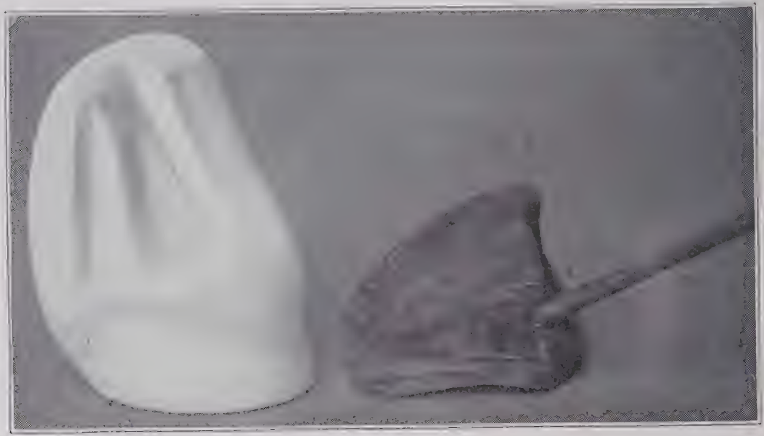


Fig. 65.—Cavity of Class Four, plan three, for gold inlay. Cavity side of inlay shown.

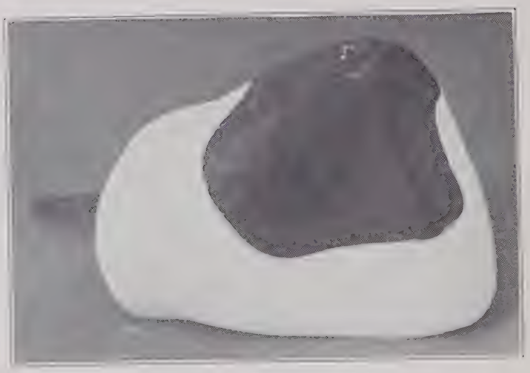


Fig. 66.—Class Four, plan three, inlay in position. Cavity shown in Fig. 65.

The Enamel Walls should be well beveled, which will in no way hinder the removal of the model. Model should make exit to the incisal with a slight lingual travel.

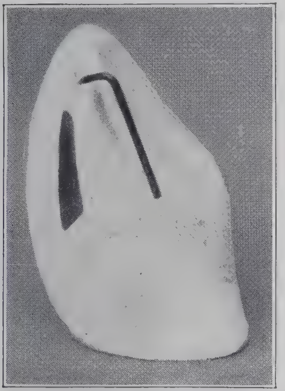


Fig. 67.

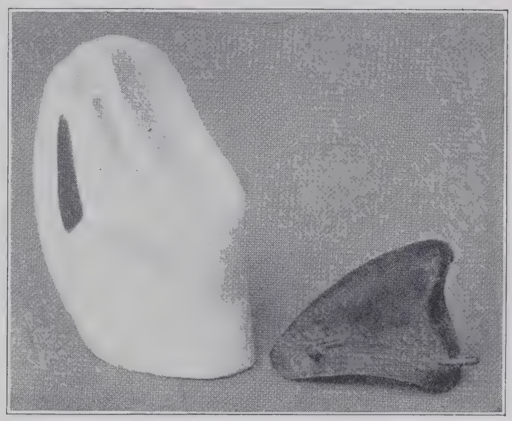


Fig. 68.

Fig. 67.—Cavity of Class Four, plan four, for gold inlay. Black wax has been spread on the labial wall before making the pattern to prevent the gold from touching this wall when setting the inlay for two reasons. First: It removes liability of fracture of this wall when setting the inlay. Second: This wax is replaced with cement and the color of the tooth is preserved. The wire loop secures the alinement of the two posts and facilitates handling the pattern. When the wire is not entirely buried, platinized gold should be used. When it is entirely buried tungsten may be used.

Fig. 68.—Class Four, plan four, showing cavity side of pattern with pins.

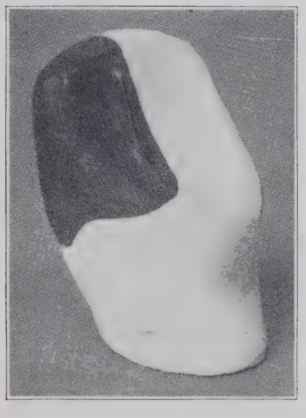


Fig. 69.—Class Four, plan four, inlay in position before removing wire loop. Cavity and pattern shown in Figs. 67 and 68.

Preparation of Cavities of Class Five.

Of this class the large buccal cavities call for gold inlays, in which they are the ideal filling, and should largely replace amalgam so commonly used.

The Occlusal Wall. The axio-occlusal angle should be slightly obtuse, while the axio-mesial and distal angles may be nearly a right angle. This will permit the model to tip to the buccal in exit, though the gingivo-axial angle be acute.

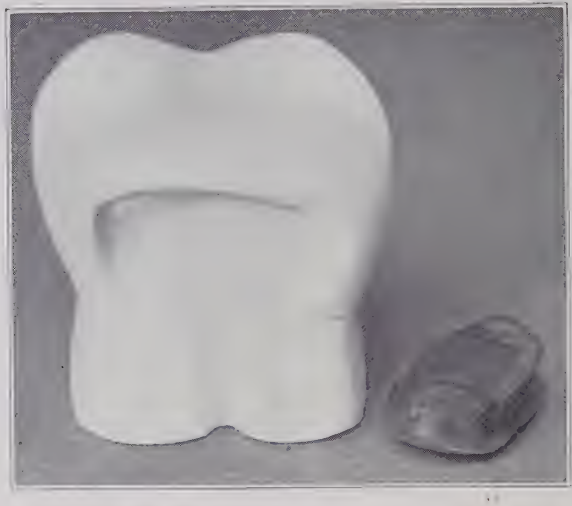


Fig. 70.—Class Five cavity and inlay.

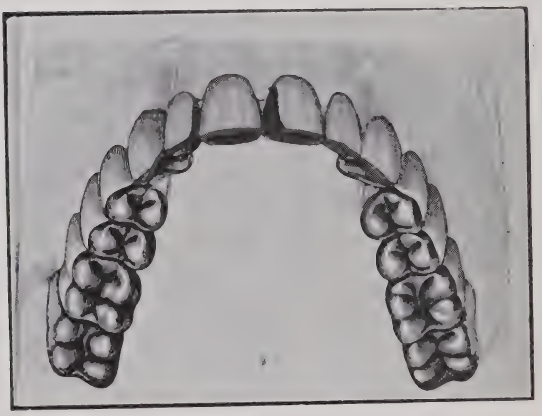


Fig. 71.—Showing the necessary amount of metal for adequate protection of abraded surfaces, when opening the bite.

Preparation of Cavities of Class Six.

The restoration of abraded surfaces with the gold inlay is good practice, inasmuch as it is possible to effectually protect these surfaces from further destruction with the minimum amount of cutting. As is the case with the other forms of filling the surface covered should be generous. If only one tooth is to be treated with this filling the amount of tooth substance cut away will be about the same as the quantity of gold in the inlay.

However if the bite is to be raised on most or all teeth the cutting should be very slight and only enough to properly cleave and bevel the enamel margins.

In vital pulp cases either incisal, lingual or occlusal, the retention should be made by the introduction of short pins, iridio-platinum or tungsten preferred, through a matrix of pure gold, and then casting the contour.

In Pulpless Cases a single large pin should be used, or the model may be so made as to occupy a part of the pulp chamber in lieu of the pin.

PART II

CHAPTER XIX.

THE MAKING AND SETTING OF A GOLD INLAY.

In discussing the methods of making any filling, particularly the gold inlay, one must bear in mind that the best practice today may be obsolete tomorrow. In this chapter an attempt is made to bring out only the most popular methods at this time, as we are fully aware that new methods are continually being devised, which may prove of better service. In fact, since placing the first edition of this book on the market, there have been material changes in methods, which have resulted in much improvement in this class of fillings. However, it is a question in the minds of most of our prominent teachers, as to the comparative value of this method when considering the cohesive gold filling. If the excellent results obtained in the use of cohesive gold are to be approached in the use of the inlay, great care and pains must be taken with every little detail.

The Object of the Inlay. The object of the inlay is to protect the cement which covers the cavity walls and restore lost contour.

If cement were permanent in the mouth when exposed to wear and dissolving agents, there would be no call for inlays, which are really only made to protect the cement. It is therefore of the utmost importance that the inlay completely cover the cement by a perfect adaptation at the cavity margins and that it be so constructed that it will maintain this close adaptation.

In choosing the method of construction in each case the marginal adaptation should be considered and the one selected which promises the greatest perfection.

History. The gold inlay is one of the oldest forms of filling. In fact, it is the oldest, as proved by excavations in the Orient. Teeth in the skulls of mummies have been found wherein cavities have been crowded full of lead, with the probable intent to check decay. Even in modern times the inlay has always been practiced more or less, and has become more popular as time goes on. As compared with the making of a cohesive gold filling, it is infinitely easier, and the history of our college clinics shows that the beginner attains a passing degree of success with the gold inlay long before he is able to understand and successfully bring to bear many of the qualities of cohesive gold.

Method Using Pattern Entirely of Wax. The cavity should be prepared as outlined by classes in Chapter XVIII. In case decay has so left the cavity that it is retentive in all directions by having excavated undercuts, these should be filled with some substance which does not become a part of the pattern, and which is easily removed before setting the inlay. The substances used to temporarily remove the retentive form, are cement, temporary stopping, modeling compound and wax, the preference being with the wax.

This wax should be of a decidedly different color than that of which the pattern is made. (See Fig. 72.)

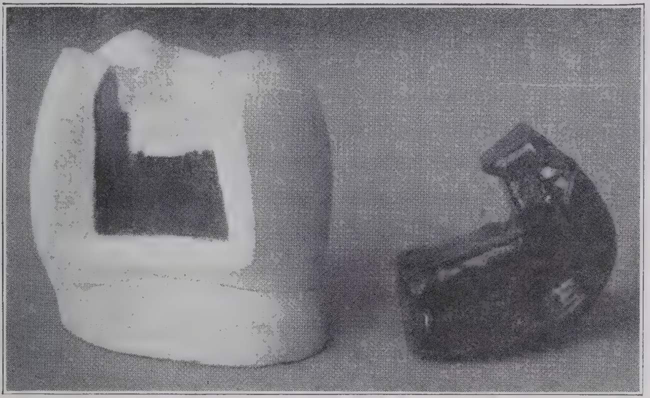


Fig. 72.—Large restoration in pulpless case. Part of the pulp chamber has been filled with black wax to remove undercut caused by pulp removal. The weak buccal wall has been covered with the same material to protect it from stress from within when setting the inlay. It goes without saying that this wax is all removed before setting the inlay and is therefore replaced with the cement with which the inlay is set.

The Filling of the Undercuts should be made to dry cavity walls, and with the wax quite warm to insure its adhering, that it may not leave the walls to distort the pattern. The difference in the color of wax used will cause the detection of any particles which may adhere to the pattern and make their removal easy.

By a little study and the judicious use of the above method much cutting for convenience form may be obviated and many seemingly difficult cases rendered quite simple.

The Making of the Pattern. After the retentive form has been removed, the cavity should be flooded with water of ordinary temperature. This will render the wax within the cavity sufficiently hard not to yield under the force necessary to introduce the pattern wax. It will also prevent the portions of wax from adhering. The wax for the pattern should then be softened, preferably in warm water. The wax should be sufficiently plastic to permit of molding when manipulated in the fingers, care being taken that the wax is not folded upon itself as the portions will not adhere. Wax so folded is liable to part at the folds and come away from the cavity in sections. The wax should be gently shaped so that it can be introduced into the cavity in such manner as to come in contact with the base walls or floor of the cavity first, then by slow continued pressure for about fifteen seconds made to expand till it entirely fills the cavity, overflowing all margins.

If the inlay is to replace any portion of the occluding surface the operation should be done with the rubber dam off. The patient is requested to close the teeth to full occlusion, slowly. It must be remembered that the casting wax is only semi-plastic and moves very slowly, hence the best impression is obtained by moderate continued force, giving the sluggish wax time to flow. Wax is really quite elastic when confined and when the pressure from the bite is removed will spring back the least bit, so that the cast inlay will be too high when set.

To overcome this it is good practice to have the patient again close the teeth to occlusion with one layer of rubber dam over the occlusal surface of the model, requesting him to maintain the pressure for some seconds. The elasticity of the rubber dam will overcome the elasticity of the wax. This will do away with much grinding after fitting the inlay to position. The pattern should then be carved to full contour restoration and correct external surface form, and the wax thoroughly burnished around the entire cavity outline.

The carving and burnishing of the wax is materially assisted if the surface is warmed by the use of warm water. This is best accomplished by dipping large loosely-rolled cotton balls in water that is almost too warm for the fingers, carrying it to the mouth and folding about the wax, allowing it to remain for a few seconds. Upon removing the cotton the wax will be found to have softened to a sufficient depth to be easily manipulated. In case the wax does not quite reach the margin, the same should be crowded over to the margins, carrying quite a body of the wax over before attempting to burnish down to the margins. If this is not done the wax will be found to fit only at the cavo-surface angle, leaving a space just below this point to which the wax is not adapted.

Ideal Conditions Are Obtained when the wax slightly overlaps the cavo-surface angle at all points in the outline, about one-tenth of a millimeter.

This will give sufficient bulk for correct finishing. After the completion of the pattern it is well to insert the tine of an explorer to the depth of about one or two millimeters in a convenient position for removal.

The tine should be removed and the pattern chilled with cold water, the tine reinserted into the previously made hole, the pattern gently pushed to exit and then given a cold water bath.

The Placing of the Sprue Wire. While the pattern is still carried on the tine of the explorer, the sprue wire should be warmed and inserted.

The sprue wire should be very fine, preferably copper, and introduced deep into the pattern. This use of a fine sprue wire is of advantage from the fact that no considerable body of the wax melts and runs back up the wire to produce a concavity, close to where the wire is introduced, which happens when a large sprue wire is used.

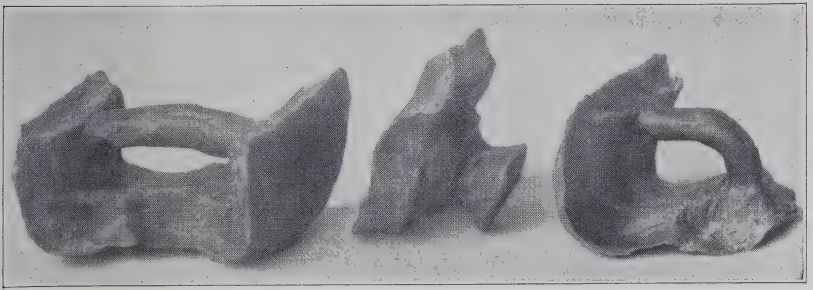


Fig. 73.—Some of the methods by which inlays may be given retentive form in large decays and pulpless cases.

In selecting the position for the wire, care should be taken that a location is chosen so that the contour of the surface of the pattern leaves the sprue wire in all directions at an obtuse angle. A neglect of this point will occasionally result in imperfect casts near the sprue former. The tine of the explorer should now be withdrawn and the resulting hole sealed by touching with the warm end of a small instrument.

A good instrument for such work is the flattened end of a large canal cleaner or broach, mounted on a wooden handle.

Giving the Wax Pattern Retention Form. Portions of the pattern should now be removed, preferably by the use of the heated hollow needle, in such manner as to give the cement an ample grasp upon the inlay, and should be equal to or more than the amount of retention of which the cavity in the tooth is capable. The pattern is then ready for investment.

Method of Using Wax Pattern, Pin Attached. This method is of service when for any reason it is desired to have the maximum amount of retention. In such cases the tooth will generally be pulpless and a portion of the pulp cavity used for the reception of the pin.

Placing the Pin. The cavity should be first freed from retentive form as described above, using either cement, temporary stopping, modeling compound, or wax, then the opening made in the root canal to receive the pin which is placed in position, with a light coat of sticky wax on the outer end. The pin should be long enough to reach well into the body of the wax pattern and should be iridio-platinum, platinized gold or tungsten. These materials will stand the heat of casting the inlay without alloying or losing their rigidity.

Stellite Pins. The use of tungsten in casting gold inlays is of great advantage, as this material is easily cast upon when the wire has been previously gold-plated. The wire is inexpensive and very strong and will not discolor the teeth. This material does not lose its temper upon being heated. It therefore gives us a very rigid pin in the completed work. As the gold will not cast to the end of the pin, which has been cut off and is not gold-plated, it is very essential that these exposed ends be well buried in the wax, which can be accomplished by seeing that the pin does not come near the surface of the casting, or else that the end is bent so as to throw the exposed surface more deeply into the wax pattern. With the pin in position in the cavity the wax for the pattern is manipulated the same as though no pin had been used. When the pattern is withdrawn the pin should come away with the wax. In case it does not, withdraw the pin from the tooth and seal it into the hole it has left in the wax pattern and return to position to insure alignment. Withdraw the pattern after chilling and all is ready for investment.

Method of Using Pure Gold Matrix With Pin Soldered on, Casting the Contour. This method is advised as most practical in cavities of Class Four (first plan), when teeth are pulpless, also in incisal, occlusal and lingual restorations with or without vital pulps.

With these lingual restorations, the amount of surface covered is generally quite large as compared to the thickness of the restoration which is best termed an "onlay."

This method simplifies angle restoration in Class Four plan one and provides ample resistance form, without the cutting of either the incisal or lingual step. In such cases the alignment of the pin must be perfect else the inlay will not go to proper place. The soldering of the pin to a gold matrix gives the desired security during the processes of removing and investment. The cavity preparation is the same as for cohesive gold except the convenience angles. The pin is fitted to a portion of the root canal as previously given. A sheet of pure gold, 32 to 34 gauge is selected of sufficient size to more than cover the cavity by about two millimeters. This is partially burnished to the cavity, enough to show the cavity outline in the gold. A hole is punched in the proper position to receive the pin, but smaller than the pin, which should be 15 or 16 gauge. In case the inlay is to be used as an abutment for a bridge, the pin had better be as large as 14 gauge, if platinized gold is used. When stellite is used, 16 gauge is ample.

The operator should then place the matrix in position and crowd the pin through the hole to place; then scribe the pin just external to the gold matrix, remove and solder as nearly in correct position as possible, without stopping to invest, using 22K solder.

Only a very small amount of solder will be needed or should be used, care being taken that it is all flowed close to the pin to prevent stiffening the matrix. All should then be returned to the cavity and the gold reburnished to a perfect fit of the entire cavity outline.

It is necessary to burnish the gold only partially into the deep recesses of the cavity as the pin, if of iridio-platinum or stellite, will be sufficient anchorage. This can be made to equal that frequently relied on for an entire crown. This pattern must move to the incisal for exit and if the matrix is burnished to contact with the axial wall it will become fixed. The matrix should be burnished to a complete fit of the gingival wall which should be flat and well squared into the labial and lingual angles.

Making the Wax Contour. The matrix and attached pin are removed, and the desired contour built up by flowing the wax to position with a spatula, trying the whole pattern to place in the cavity to guide in the restoration. When complete, the wax is chilled and removed and all is ready for investment.

To Restore Occlusal and Incisal Surfaces lost from abrasion with inlays where the tooth is vital, nothing answers the purpose better than the following method. The outline of the surface to be covered is established. Small holes are drilled to convenient depths in safe locations of sufficient size to receive a 20 gauge iridio-platinum or tungsten pin. Three or four pins are required for molars and two or three for bicuspids or incisors. A pure gold matrix, 32 or 34 gauge, is then burnished to an approximate fit. The positions of the holes in the tooth will be outlined in the gold. The matrix should be pricked at these points with a sharp pointed instrument smaller than the pins. One pin is inserted and should protrude occlusally through the matrix for a short distance, and be bent at right angles.

It is good practice when using stellite to make a loop which goes to the full depth of two of the holes and lies along the gold surface in the body of the loop, thus establishing the alignment of two of the pins at once. This also places the exposed end of these tungsten pins, to which gold will not cast, entirely away from a position which might result in showing the exposed ends in the completed case.

This pin and matrix are then removed and attached with solder, applying the solder to the occlusal side of the matrix. The matrix should be returned to the tooth and another pin placed and attached in the same way, repeating until all pins are in position, when the matrix should receive a final burnishing. The wax contour is then added as before described, the pattern replaced and articulation secured in the mouth and finally trimmed to desired contour. The wax should then be chilled and the entire pattern removed and invested.

Method of Sweating the Contour.—Advantages. The advantages of this older method of making an inlay still exist where the inlay is to cover considerable surface and is very shallow. Such inlays are generally termed ''onlays.'' This method is advised from the fact that models of such nature will seldom maintain exact form during the process of removing and investment unless a gold matrix is used.

If the gold matrix is used it is difficult to cast a thin layer of gold over the entire surface of this matrix and get good margins unless a large quantity of gold is melted to make the cast in which case the gold matrix is very liable to be entirely fused, which will not give the best results. Speed is also a factor in this instance.

Many times an onlay can be flowed to the desired thickness in much less time than that required to invest and cast.

Making the Matrix. This is done in the same way as though a greater bulk of gold were to be added. Such inlays must be retained by one or more pins soldered to the occlusal side as previously described.

The matrix is burnished to perfect fit and the outline definitely established. The matrix should be trimmed to within about one-fourth millimeter of the cavity outline and reburnished and carefully removed.

The matrix is then given a coat of whiting on all that portion which is to come in contact with the tooth to prevent the solder from flowing on that surface.

Sweating the Contour. The gold matrix should be then laid upon the soldering block and with a brush flame from the blow pipe 22K plate or 22K solder fused to the thickness desired in the various locations on the matrix. When a sufficient amount has been fused in any portion, that part of the surface should receive a coat of whiting.

Gold can then be fused to still exposed surface without its spreading to portions where it is not wanted. By this means it is possible to build up a given portion of the inlay, even to the adding of cusps to occlusal surface.

Method of Using Sponge Gold as a Pattern. Take the sponge gold as bought on the market for making a cohesive gold filling and saturate it with any casting wax on the market. This is best accomplished by dipping a sufficient amount of the heated gold, while held in the pliers, into the molten wax, and immediately removing to a clean surface to cool. Remove any excess wax.

Making the Pattern. When this method is used any undercuts in the cavity should be filled with cement. A portion of the saturated gold large enough to a little more than fill the cavity is grasped between the pliers and slightly warmed and carried to the cavity and crowded to position and the contour determined in much the same way as amalgam is manipulated. A matrix should be used in class two cavities, but not sufficiently high to prevent occluding the teeth. When the pattern has the desired contour form, the whole is removed the same as described for removing a pattern composed of wax alone.

Investing. A sprue of wax is attached to the usual place as though the casting method were to be used. The pattern is then submerged in much the same way as a tooth is invested to have a backing flowed but sufficiently deep upon the wax sprue former to leave upon its removal a receptacle for the gold solder to be fused.

Saturating the Model. Heat may be applied to the invested pattern as soon as the investment has set, and the wax gradually burned out leaving a framework of pure gold filling the mold. Then scraps of 22K gold plate are placed in the hole left by the sprue former and all is heated to the point of fusing the 22K gold which will disappear through the opening and completely saturate the pure gold within the mold. The inlay may be immediately chilled and finished. This method has to recommend it, speed of manipulation, and is indicated in large contour restorations, where it is desired to use a solid inlay.

Making the Cast. Generally considered we have three forces used in placing the gold in the mold; suction, pressure, and centrifugal. Centrifugal force is the only one wherein all atoms or molecules of the material are acted upon, and greater accuracy is obtained by this method.

Place of Heating the Gold. The temperature of the mold at the time the gold strikes it, in casting, is of great importance. Therefore, the place where the gold is melted should not be on the body of the investment over the mold, for by that method we are not able to vary the temperature of the mold at the time of casting. The gold should be melted on a separate tray and the mold should be heated to the desired temperature independently of the material being cast.

Temperature of the Mold. By a little experimenting we will be able to demonstrate that a body of molten gold contracts toward, first, that part which is chilled first, second toward the greatest body of gold; that is, when the gold consists of two parts connected by a small isthmus, or in other words, pedunculated, there is a tendency for the smaller body of gold to shrink toward the larger one. The first part of the gold which we desire to set through the process of chilling is that part of the inlay which is most essential to a perfect fit, namely the margin or that which covers the marginal bevel and second all of the cavity walls. Therefore, it is important when the gold is thrown into the mold that the investment which forms the mold be of a temperature to chill the gold at first impact, bearing in mind that it should be warm enough to permit of the gold to enter the sharpest recesses.

When Using Pin or Pure Gold Matrix. When casting an inlay to a mold which contains a pin or a pure gold matrix, the temperature of the mold should be considerably higher. Particularly is this true when the pin is large or the amount of gold to cover the matrix is thin as it may be close to the margins.

Indirect Method. An impression is taken of the cavity and tooth to be filled in modeling compound, using a ring as an impression cup. The tooth is built up in copper amalgam and a wax pattern made therein. Where cast is made, the inlay is swaged into the metal cavity. When extensive occlusal restorations are made the metal tooth should be placed in a double impression-bite and the case carried through in an anatomical articulator.

Quantity of Gold Used in the Cast. When using the suction or pressure machines it is quite necessary to have a large sprue left, as when the amount of gold is near the size of the inlay, failure is liable to result owing to the philosophy of the force used in casting. However, with the centrifugal machine, it is not absolutely essential that there be any considerable sprue left. Yet if we try to guess too closely, many failures will result from having too little material. Owing to the law of the shrinkage of the metal towards the larger body, the sprue which is left should never weigh as much as the inlay cast. A large sprue left is of advantage, as there is a tendency to hold the whole body of gold at a temperature sufficient to give it time to thread its way through the sprue hole into the mold. It is also of advantage where there is a large pin or matrix present, as the high temperature is maintained longer.

The large sprue is particularly a disadvantage when casting the base to pin crowns. The low fusing pin is liable to be melted. There is also more danger of checking the porcelain.

Size of the Opening. The size of the hole leading to the mold is of importance for a number of reasons. As a general rule the larger the inlay, and the lower temperature of both the mold and the material at which you cast, the larger should be the hole; it necessarily follows that the hole should be smaller with the reverse conditions.

A small hole lengthens the time required for the stream of molten gold to pass to position. Hence, if the mold is cold and the material is not extra warm in casting a large body, the material is liable to become chilled and the mold not entirely filled. However, if we are casting a small inlay, in a rather warm mold with the gold extra hot, the small hole is preferable as there is less liability of a backward shrinkage of the gold to the sprue, when cooling.

Better results are obtained when the wax pattern is immediately invested, burned out and casting completed without allowing the mold, either with the pattern in position or burned out, to lay over night. If it must lay over night, it is best to burn out the wax and thoroughly heat the mold, as less change takes place thereafter in the investment. In this connection your attention is called to the findings of Prothero in the expansion and contraction of plaster of Paris in the various periods following its mixture with water.

Finishing the Inlay. With any of the processes of making an inlay there are liable to be some imperfections which will be seen upon removing from the investment. If these are on the cavity side of the inlay and are of any considerable size it will probably be necessary to make a new pattern. If they are only slight and are in the form of little pedunculated masses they can generally be removed without injury to the filling. If the contour shows that the mold did not entirely fill the necessary amount to complete contour, and the margin is not involved it may be sweat on using a gold of lower fusing point than that of the inlay. Another method is to make a gold amalgam and build to the desired contour. Then the inlay should be subjected to heat gradually raised to nearly red heat when the mercury will be volatilized leaving the pure gold fused to the position desired. This gold amalgam is made by adding mercury to cohesive gold foil, pellets or fiber which have been annealed, mixing thoroughly in the palm of the hand and applying immediately to place. All exposed surfaces of gold inlays should receive a high polish before setting, omitting a line about one-fourth of a millimeter next to the entire margin.

Setting the Inlay. The inlay should be washed with water and dried; then dipped in chloroform to remove any oil that may have adhered from the hands. The cavity should be freed from all foreign substance, given complete retentive form, bathed with chloroform and alcohol in the order named and the surface of the cavity entirely covered with cement.

The inlay is given a coat of cement on its cavity side from the same mix and gently but firmly moved to position using hand pressure assisted by light blows from the mallet. The inlay should be subjected to pressure directed toward the seat of the cavity for some minutes which will in a measure overcome the tendency toward displacement caused by the expansion of the cement. An inlay may be finished at its margins within thirty minutes from setting, but it is better if this step is attended to at a subsequent time.

CHAPTER XX.

MANIPULATION OF COHESIVE GOLD IN THE MAKING OF A FILLING.

Physical Properties. The physical properties most desired in a filling are found in cohesive gold to a greater degree than in any other filling material, which places it at the head of the list as a means of restoring lost contour and preventing recurrence of decay. It is not affected by the fluids of the mouth; it may be very perfectly adapted to the walls of the cavity; the shrinkage and expansion range in varying temperature is very slight; the cavity can be filled immediately upon freshly cut surfaces before they have been contaminated, an advantage over the fused inlay; and when sufficiently condensed it possesses a greater specific gravity, hence density, than a fused inlay of pure gold. Hammered gold will flow under sufficient stress and always in proportion to the load, when it ceases to flow, unless the load is increased—a marked distinction between it and amalgam. This quality of gold makes it possible to build a filling which will at once sustain the force of mastication provided it has received sufficient aggregate weight during the process of introduction. This physical property of gold is also of service in that it does not farther compress when firmly wedged between the walls of living dentine which are elastic and retain a certain amount of residual elasticity which permanently grasps the unyielding gold. The expansion and contraction of gold under the varying oral temperatures is fully compensated for by this residual elasticity of the dentine so that the closely adapted cohesive gold filling is at all times in perfect adaptation.

The Objectionable Qualities of Gold. Gold is a good conductor of thermal changes, hence endangers the health of vital pulps. The color is an objection in anterior positions, and the process of building a filling is comparatively slow and taxing on patient and operator.

Welding of Gold. Gold welds cold when properly prepared, is absolutely pure, and the contacting surfaces are clean. Any alloy in its substance (excepting platinum) or foreign substance upon its surface totally destroys this quality, until such substances are removed, when the property of welding cold again returns.

If the Surface of Foil Becomes contaminated with a non-volatile substance the injury is permanent.

To Protect the Surface of Gold. Place in the drawer where the gold is kept a small pledget of cotton or spunk saturated with ammonia.

Ammonium salts will form on the surface of the gold, which are easily volatilized by heat, leaving the gold clean. Before annealing such gold will be found thoroughly non-cohesive. This method of treating the gold to the fumes of ammonia will obviate the necessity of keeping more than one kind of gold on hand, as all will be non-cohesive till annealed and can be used in either form.

Annealing Gold is for the sole purpose of cleaning the surface of the gold by volatilizing any film that may have collected.

The Degree of Heat is about 1100°F., or just below red heat.

In the daylight this color is not apparent, but on a dark day the dull red color should show. The gold is not materially injured if carried to the full red of 1200 or 1300 degrees, but in no case should the melting point be reached, as it destroys the possibility of adaptation to the walls of the cavity, or the surface of the gold already in place.

Methods of Annealing. The electric annealer is by far the most satisfactory means, as it is possible to always obtain the same degree of heat for a continued period.

The Next Best Means is to place the gold on a tray above a flame, thus separating the flame from the gold, preventing contamination of the gold with carbon, and various gases which are frequently met with in combustion.

Gold Should Not Be Annealed by Passing It Through the Open Flame of either gas or alcohol, holding the gold either on a plugger point or the foil carriers. This is quite a common practice, which should be discontinued. In the first place, heating the gold with the open flame frequently contaminates its surface, to the injury of its welding properties.

Also that portion of the gold next to the carrier is not sufficiently heated and remains non-cohesive, a fact which is shown by the subsequent pitting of the surface of the filling during service by the flecking off of these non-cohesive particles.

Specific Gravity. The specific gravity of the cast gold inlay is about 19, varying the fraction of a point.

It is possible to condense a cohesive gold filling when confined between the walls of elastic dentine so as to obtain a slightly greater specific gravity than the cast inlay. However, this degree of solidity is not possible of attainment unless the gold is confined and the wedging principle is taken advantage of.

Cohesion of Gold. The surfaces of pure gold when absolutely clean readily cohere. This cohesion is brought about by the friction of the surfaces of the gold when in absolute adaptation. The degree of cohesion is in proportion to the friction. The friction is in proportion to the load, the extent of the surfaces in opposition and the speed of the travel of the surfaces one upon the other. Hence, the greater the load, the smaller the surface, and the more rapid the movement of one surface upon the other the greater the cohesion. Polished surfaces of gold must be brought into coadaptation in order to get cohesion. The smaller the surfaces and the thinner the sheets, the less load and speed will be required.

The Serrated Plugger Points are used in condensing cohesive gold for the following reasons: That these polished surfaces may be kept small and uniform; that great pressure (load) may be easily exerted on the polished planes previously left in the surface of the gold by the wedge-shaped serrations. The mallet is applied to give the additional factor in friction (speed) as the fresh gold is moved over these small polished surfaces. The above conditions are obtained with the least exertion on the part of the operator and annoyance to the patient by the serrated plugger point, which is made of a collection of pyramids which act as so many wedges and exert great lateral force (load) upon the polished sides of their previous impression. That gold coheres to polished surfaces can be easily demonstrated by taking any cohesive gold filling and burnishing its surface to a glossy finish. Pellets of gold from the annealer will readily cohere and the filling may be continued to full contour by applying a steel burnisher with heavy pressure drawn over the surface of the fresh gold. This process proves that burnished gold coheres, but it is slow and laborious and objectionable to the patient, hence the serrated plugger point which accomplishes the same result, the friction of polished surfaces of gold under pressure, causing their welding.

Bridging is the term applied to that faulty manipulation which results in air spaces within the body of the filling, caused by the gold failing to reach the bottom of the indentations of the serrated plugger point.

The Cause may be insufficient pressure being given the plugger point, the gold thereby stopping short of the bottom of the serrations, or it may be caused by too much light malleting, going over the gold surface repeatedly thereby bending down the crests of the pyramids thus choking them to the entrance of the gold. Again, it may be caused by changing to a plugger with a less number of serrations to the millimeter, or one wherein the serrations are not as deeply cut, resulting in a collection of pyramids that do not reach the bottom of the indentations made by the previous plugger.

Plugger Points Should Have the Same Sized Serrations. Each operator should have a set of gold plugger points same denomination as to the cuttings on the working point to use in the same filling. When forced to change to one of different sized serrations the surface of the filling should be gone entirely over with the new plugger to be used, before adding additional gold. This will create a new set of facets to accommodate the gold added with the new instrument. (See Figs. 176A and 176B.)

A little care in this respect will greatly increase the specific gravity of the cohesive gold filling.

Rotating the Plugger in the Fingers Should Be Avoided. The serrations are cut on the square and unless the point is rotated one-fourth of a circle each time the pyramids will ride the crests of the indentations, whereas if the shaft is held in one position as described, the leverage produced by the plane on the surface of the plugger point coming in contact with the plane on the surface of the filling, will twist the plugger point to position with each blow of the mallet. All this will prove plain to the vision if the field of operation is viewed under a high power lens while operating with a serrated plugger on the surface of gold in a technic block.

The Size of the Plugger Point. This depends entirely upon the force with which it can be used. It would seem from all the facts at hand that a point with the surface of one square millimeter should be regarded as the maximum. The force required to properly condense gold with a point of greater surface, is either not permissible in many cases or often not possible with the operator. A point of one square millimeter should receive a load of 15 pounds pressure at each contacting of the point.

At the same time points of much less than one-half millimeter will chop the surface by disturbing the gold close to the point with each impact; hence we are limited to a narrow range as to size of points.

Preparation of the Foil. The gold foil may be used from the book as it comes from the dealer, and shaped as desired by the operator, or it may be purchased as cylinders, squares, ropes and various other forms.

The shaping should be done without bringing the gold in direct contact with the fingers, and all manipulation and cutting should be done previous to annealing.

The Application of the Foil. In whichever form the foil has been shaped, it should be so placed upon the surface of condensed gold that the leaves lay flat. If the pellets are placed so that the leaves of gold are crumpled in packing to place the specific gravity will not be as great in the finished filling. Neither will the cohesion be as perfect.

Sheet gold has left in it a certain amount of spring even after annealing that has to be overcome if folded. The less handling of the sheets in folds when packing the better the result. The gold should be grasped by the carriers with as small a bite as possible to prevent precondensation and carried to the position desired and condensed, with no attempt to shift its position by pushing or poking it around over the surface.

If the pellet is placed near a wall, it should be placed so that it lies fully against that wall that it may be crowded for room when condensed. Short of this will hinder the wedging principle in packing. If the new pellet is to come out to contour it should reach slightly beyond contour and be burnished back to contour with a flat-faced steel burnisher.

The Forces Used in Condensing Cohesive Gold. There are two principal forces used in condensing cohesive gold, hand pressure and blows from the mallet. These may be either alone or one following the other or in combination; the last named is the most popular, the least taxing on patient and operator and produces as great specific gravity in less time. However, the best results are obtained by using each method at given times in the process of building most fillings.

To Illustrate. Hand pressure alone should be used in the filling of convenience angles. Also when on account of position the force must be applied at nearly a right angle to the wall against which the gold is being condensed, as in starting a filling and when covering the seat of the cavity with the first one-half millimeter of gold.

With the plugger point pointing directly at a dentinal wall, with a thin layer of gold between, the elasticity of the dentine causes the gold to rebound when struck a blow with the mallet. In such positions the closest adaptation is secured by hand pressure alone which should be applied with a rocking motion secured by swaying the outer end of the plugger from side to side for a distance of, say one inch, at each change of position.

Hand Pressure Alone is also of most service when packing gold against thin walls. Again in cases where the condensing force should be applied at an angle to the long axis of the shaft of the plugger point as sometimes met with in distal cavities in posterior teeth with a distal inclination. Hand pressure alone is required when it becomes necessary to use force at an angle which would tend to unseat the filling.

A filling should never receive a blow through the plugging instrument when that instrument does not point quite directly toward one of the inner walls of the cavity, preferably the seat.

Mallet Force Alone is of service in adding the last portions of gold to an occlusal surface when adding thin layers of gold at each time, resulting in a very hard surface.

A Good Rule is to increase the hand pressure (load) both in frequency and weight as you increase the thickness of the pellets applied, and as the angle at which the gold is driven to a dentinal wall approaches a right angle.

The Different Plans of Mallet Force.

Hand Mallet. By far the best mallet force is the hand mallet driven by an experienced assistant. By this method the operator is able to vary the amount of hand pressure (load) and its relation to the mallet force (velocity) at will all through the filling, as well as at different points in the condensing of a single pellet of gold, a point of no small consequence.

The Automatic Mallet. It has been attempted to imitate this combination method in the automatic plugger, and is today the best substitute for the hand pressure and assistant mallet method, but it must be regarded as a substitute only and supplies a need in the absence of better facilities.

Power Mallet. Power mallets either electric or mechanically driven by the engine are of service in that part of each filling where mallet force alone is indicated as previously described. But this is such a small proportion of each filling that most operators do not care to bother with them and few have them at hand.

CHAPTER XXI.

MANIPULATION OF COHESIVE GOLD IN THE MAKING OF FILLINGS BY CLASSES.

Class One. Pit and Fissure.

This class of cavities is the easiest of all in that they are surrounded by solid walls of dentine with generally only one wall missing, which is the means of access to the cavity.

Starting the Filling. In the case of a small pit cavity it is generally well to start with a piece of gold that is sufficiently large to more than cover the internal wall and condense the greater portion with a rather large plugger point using hand pressure alone on this piece. With occlusal cavities the inner wall is the pulpal wall. When the cavity is in an axial surface it is the axial wall.

A second pellet of gold may be added and condensed in the same way. The mallet force should now be used on a smaller plugger point going entirely around the cavity close to the walls holding the shaft of the plugger at an angle of about 12 degrees centigrade to the wall against which the condensing is being done.

In Occlusal Cavities the condensing should be in the central portion first; then next to the distal wall; then along the buccal and lingual walls and lastly the mesial wall. This plan of procedure pertains to each separate layer of gold as it is applied when treating simple occlusal pits.

In Buccal Cavities the order of stepping is: first, center; second, gingival; third, distal; fourth, mesial; fifth, occlusal.

When the Cavity Has a Long Irregular Outline caused by the following out of one or more rather long fissures the plan is the same, except that the most distant arm of the cavity is filled first, allowing the gold to gradually build toward the operator's viewpoint, covering the base wall, portion by portion, with the plugger point always at the given angle to this base wall, which permits of the use of mallet force after the first pieces of gold have been securely anchored along the disto-pulpal line angle.

Class Two. Proximal Cavities in Bicuspids and Molars.

Beginning the Filling. There are three distinct methods of starting a filling of cohesive gold in this class of cavities. It is well if both gingival point angles are sharpened to a convenience angle. It will not suffice to have these made into the form of a round hole or slot, but they should be shaped up to the distinct wedge shape. This shape will cause the condensed gold to crowd the elastic dentine on all sides as it is driven to place and insure the stability of the first piece of gold. If this small convenience angle is not sharp at its deepest point, but has a flat wall or seat, the mallet force is precluded as that flat wall will not permit its use, the elasticity of which will cause the gold to rebound when struck a blow, whereas when this point is sharp and the approaching sides leave a wedge-shaped opening the gold is firmly grasped when driven to position. Attention to this small detail will make easy starting of such fillings.

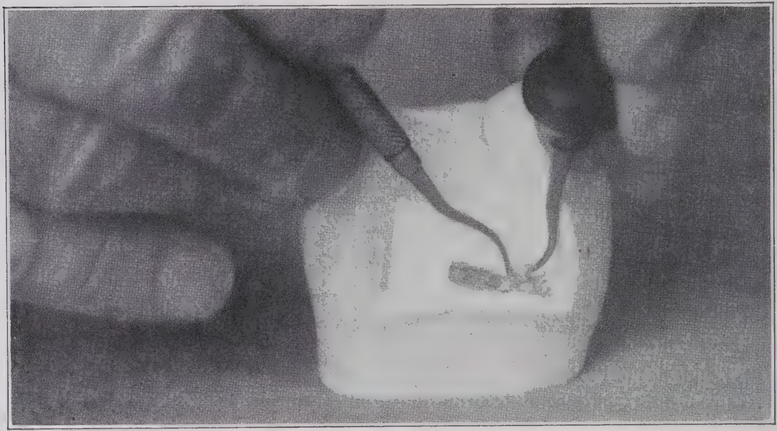


Fig. 74.—Starting cohesive gold, first plan.

As to the Three Plans of Starting Class Two.—*The First Plan,* and probably the most popular, is to fill one convenience angle, the one the farthest from the viewpoint of the operator, and while supporting this in position with a suitable instrument build along the gingivo-axial line angle to the other point angle.

A Second Plan is to fill each point angle separately and join the two with a third piece of gold laid along the gingivo-axial line angle.

A Third Plan is to start with a quantity of gold sufficient to fill both point angles and cover the connecting line angle as well as a considerable portion of the gingival wall next to the axial. This last plan is one used by some experienced operators and is well to be attempted when working for speed. The beginner will do well with the first plan.

The Order of Stepping the Plugger in Class Two. With each pellet of gold added, the wedging principle is made most effective by the following order of stepping: Center of filling first; contour second; ascending line angles third; surrounding walls fourth and against ascending cavo-surface angles fifth, keeping the long axis of the plugger shaft at about a twelve degree centrigrade angle to the axial, buccal and lingual walls.

When the Gold Extends Beyond Contour it should be burnished back to correct position and the plugger again stepped along the contour, holding the plugger close to a line of the long axis of the tooth, instead of striking the gold at nearly a right angle to this line, a practice so common with operators, and one that has a tendency to unseat the filling and separate the layers of the filling already condensed.

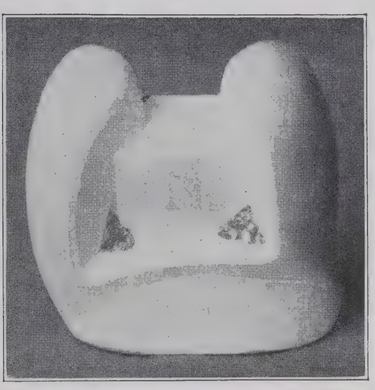


Fig. 75.—Starting cohesive gold, second plan.

The Progress of the Filling should be kept on a plane parallel to the plane of the gingival wall and kept in this plane to near the completion of the filling, having a strict care as to complete contour in the proximal, as the filling advances.

Covering the Pulpal Wall. There are two plans of covering the step portion in Class Two. *The First Plan.* The first and most common is to build the cavity portion to a level of the pulpal wall and gradually cover the pulpal wall by allowing each pellet of gold to extend a little farther than the previous one out over the pulpal wall till the pulpal point angles have been reached.

The Second Plan is to start an independent body of gold in the pulpal point angles, in one of the three ways outlined in starting the cavity portion on the gingival wall and finally uniting the two portions of the filling. Whichever plan is used nothing should be done in the way of covering the pulpal wall till the gold in the cavity portion has reached a level with the axio-pulpal line angle.

The Contact Point. The building of contact point should receive special attention when the proper height of the filling has been reached. The gold should be thoroughly condensed against the proximating tooth much in the same manner as it is wedged against the walls, and should receive extra malleting to insure extreme hardness.

Position of Contact Point. When the proximating tooth is intact, the contact point should be in about the same position as it was previous to decay, and should be a contacting point and not surface or a line of contact. This should round away from this point in much the same manner as do the surfaces of two marbles when touching, and has come to be spoken of as the "marble contact." (See Fig. 26.)

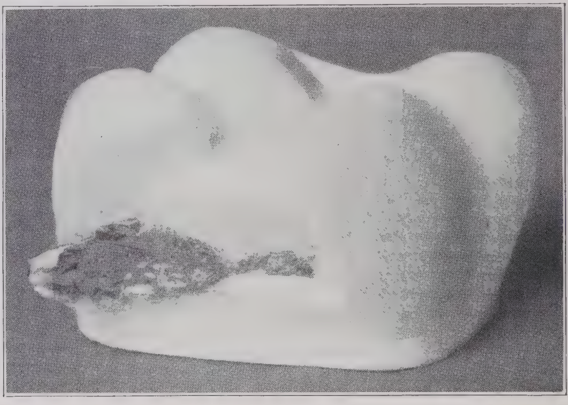


Fig. 76.—Starting cohesive gold, third plan.

Moving Contact Point Flush to Occlusal. The contact point should be moved occlusally when both promixating surfaces are to be restored, one a mesial and the other a distal filling in the teeth making up the proximal space being considered, and when there has been considerable occlusal wear. This will result in a contact point from which the surfaces round away in all directions except toward the occlusal surface and is known as the "half marble contact" advised for the above condition only. In this connection attention is called to the immunity to decay of proximating surfaces where the "half marble contact" has been produced by occlusal wear. Many instances are seen where caries already started in such spaces have ceased to progress because of the cleanliness of such surfaces, due to the lack of the penetration of food substances.

The Last Portions of Gold. After leaving contact point the last portions of gold are added to restore normal contour or as near that condition as occlusion and articulation will permit giving special care to complete covering of the cavo-surface angle at all points.

Filling Class Two With Matrix in Position. This may be done, and is advised by some operators, who advance the theory of additional condensation due to the presence of the substitute for the missing wall.

When the matrix is used it should not be adjusted till the gingival cavo-surface angle is covered. It should be thoroughly wedged at the gingival. The matrix should be removed just before the gold has been built to the height of contact point.

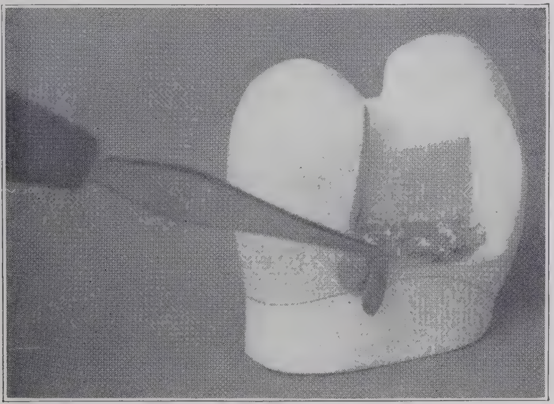


Fig. 77.—Burnishing back excess gold foil in covering the gingival margin.

The Use of the Separator in Class Two. In cases where preliminary separation has not been made, a mechanical separation should be adjusted and tightened at short intervals to the full extent of safety. This will permit of better and more thorough finishing of contact point as the slight space resulting will be taken up, upon the removal of the separator.

Class Three. Proximal in the Six Anterior Not Involving the Angle.

Starting the Gold, in cavities class three, is the same in large or small cavities. The gold is first condensed into the wedge-shaped convenience angle farthest from the viewpoint of the operator which is the gingivo-axio-lingual angle. The gold is kept in this triangular form by covering equally rapidly the three walls forming the angle; the gingival, axial and lingual walls, keeping the shaft of the plugger pointing all the time at the point angle primarily covered.

When the gold has been built out along the gingivo-lingual line angle to the cavo-surface angle great care must be taken at this stage of the filling that the linguo-gingival angle is covered and the gold built to full contour, as this is the only time it can be correctly done with the force directed in the right direction. As the gold reaches

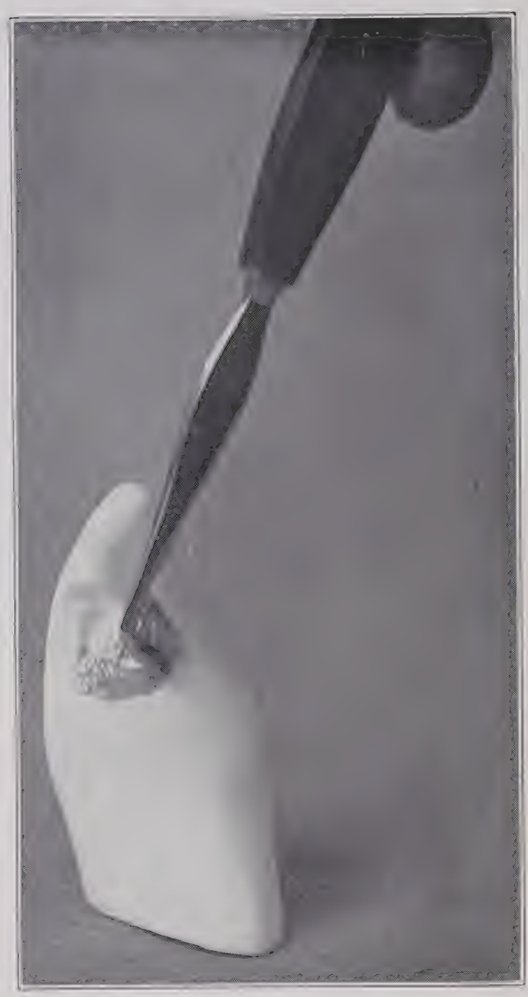


Fig. 78.—Covering the gingivo-lingual angle with cohesive gold.

the height of the gingivo-axio-labial angle this should be thoroughly filled and the filling continued, maintaining the same level of the gold, restoring full contour past contact point which should be well condensed and burnished.

Filling Incisal Angle. Shortly after passing contact point the gold should be advanced along the axio-lingual angle to the incisal angle which should then be filled using hand pressure alone as the direction of the force will not permit of the use of the mallet. The filling should then be completed with the plugger point still directed toward the angle where gold was first condensed, the last portions of gold being added to the labial portion of the filling at the incisal extremity.

With Lingual Approach in Class Three the whole plan is reversed. The gold is first built into the gingivo-axio-labial angle. The plugger point is maintained in a position pointing at this angle as the filling progresses, till the last additions of gold are to the lingual surface at the incisal extremity, all the while the operator is working to the image reflected in the mouth mirror.

The Lingual Approach Is Advised in cases where ample preliminary separation is secured or when the lingual wall is wanting and the axial wall meets the lingual cavo-surface angle. That said about the use of the mechanical mallet in Class Two applies to Class Three with equal force.

Class Four. Proximal Cavities in Incisors and Cuspids Involving the Angle.

The removal of the incisal angle permits of the plugger point being used in an ideal angle to the walls and allows the force being applied more nearly from the direction that the subsequent force of service is received.

Starting the Filling. These fillings are started as has just been described with Class Three; however, the gingival wall should be most rapidly covered and the plan of building similar to that described for Class Two, keeping the surface of the gold parallel to the plane of the gingival wall, restoring lost contour as the filling advances, and maintaining the plugger point at about 12 degrees centigrade to the surrounding walls.

The Final Portions of Gold should be condensed on the extreme incisal angle with the shaft of the plugger point still maintained at an angle of 12 degrees to the plane of the axial wall.

The Layers of Gold in Class Four should receive some attention and what is said in this connection is true of all contour restorations subject to great stress. Not a little trouble has been experienced in the breaking of such fillings through given lines of fracture.

These should be noticed and the layers of gold leaf so placed as to cross these lines. The tensile strength of the sheets of gold is greater than the usual cohesion obtained giving a filling more strength across the laminations than parallel with them.

Class Five Cavities in the Gingival Third.

Class Five cavities in the gingival third need no special mention as they are built under the rules already outlined in Class One.

The gold is usually started in the disto-axio-gingival angle and carried along the gingivo-axial line angle to the other gingival point angle. The gingival wall will be the first wall to be completely covered. The mallet force should not be directed at a right angle until that wall has been covered with a considerable layer of gold.

Class Six. Abraded Surfaces.

These cavities are built the same as large flat cavities in the same surface, the principles of which have been given.

CHAPTER XXII.

FINISHING GOLD FILLINGS.

Secondary Condensation. When a gold filling has been built to its full size, the entire surface should be gone over with a plugger point of moderate size. The point should be stepped so as to cover every accessible part of the filling.

A light mallet with a hard surface should be used. A two ounce steel-faced mallet is preferred.

Burnishing. All accessible parts of the surface should then be thoroughly burnished with a steel burnisher. The egg-shaped burnisher is of most universal use as it will reach most positions.

If the filling is a proximal filling of Classes Two, Three or Four, a thin steel hand matrix should be forced between the filling and the proximating tooth to burnish the contact point and to better condense and harden the filling at this place. This is done by swinging the handle back and forth describing the part of a circle, till there is more or less freedom of movement of the burnisher.

Following This Secondary Condensation the process of smoothing the surface with abrasives begins. The first efforts should be to find cavity outline, second, to correct contour in localities where an excess has been built and third, to polish the contact point.

This is best accomplished by the use of small carborundum stones on occlusal surfaces, disks on buccal, lingual and labial contours, and narrow coarse strips in the proximal, gingivally from contact point assisted by the use of file cut burnishers.

Attention should first be given to all parts of the filling except contact point which, in all proximal fillings should be the last place to receive finish.

The Use of the Saw in the proximal space in the finishing of the filling cannot be too strongly condemned. In the first place no cutting instrument, or coarse abradent, as strips or disks, should be made to pass contact point except where there has been ample preliminary separation and the return of the teeth to position is relied upon to close the resultant space. Again there is no excuse for building an excess of contour sufficient to engage the bite of a saw blade.

The Excess at the Gingival should be slight, and it, with the excess fullness in the embrasures, should be filed away with the files, or whittled off with the burnishing knife, the edge of which should be keen. The files should be carried through the embrasures as far toward the center of the filling as possible and drawn directly outward and over the edge of the filling out to the external enamel surface.

The Finishing Knife should be engaged into the substance of the gold and drawn from the gum and at the same time outward, taking off only a small portion of gold at each cut.

Coarse Abrasives, as carborundum stones and coarse disks and strips, should be abandoned as soon as a near approach to the cavo-surface angle is reached, and the files, plug-finishing burs, and knife edged instruments resorted to, to bring into view the exact cavity outline, after which the finer strips and disks should be employed to bring gold and tooth substance to an exact level at the cavo-surface angle for the entire cavity outline.

Finishing Strips in the Proximal. To reduce the quantity of gold from contact point to the gingival, a coarse finishing strip sufficiently narrow to reach from the gingival outline to near the contact point only, is of advantage. This strip is introduced by sharpening one end and passing through the embrasure below contact point and then drawn back and forth till the desired surface is secured.

Fine narrow linen strips are then used in the same way to give a final finish to this place of difficult access.

When the Entire Cavity Outline Has Been Exposed and the surface otherwise made ready for the final finish the separator should be tightened another degree, when it will be found that a broad fine linen strip will easily pass contact point. This should be given three or four sweeps with this broad strip not too tightly drawn, when the contact point should be considered finished.

The separator should be gradually loosened and removed, the rubber dam removed and the filling tested for occlusion and articulation and properly shaped. The filling should then receive a thorough finish, with wood points, leather wheels and tooth cleaning brushes, carrying first pumice, then whiting, till the surface of the filling is as smooth as the external enamel surface.

CHAPTER XXIII.

MANIPULATION OF AMALGAM IN THE MAKING OF A FILLING.

Definition. Amalgam is an alloy of mercury with one or more other metals. It is most commonly combined with two or more other metals which have been previously alloyed and finely divided either as shavings or filings to facilitate union with the mercury.

The Properties of Amalgam which render it of value as a filling material are: First, its plasticity eliminating access form in cavity preparation, making possible the building up of lost contours in inaccessible places in the mouth, where convenience and access forms are hard to secure, sufficient for the manipulation of gold either cohesive or as an inlay; second, its property of being but slightly affected by the oral fluids, and the fact that it is fairly stable as to bulk and shape; and last, but not least in the minds of many patients, we are sorry to say, is its cheapness, as most dentists see fit to build fillings of amalgam for a much smaller fee than gold.

The Objections to Amalgam are: Its tendency to tarnish on its exposed surface; its discoloration of surrounding dentine in the case of leaky fillings; its changes of volume during and after hardening in low grade alloys or faulty manipulation. It is also liable to injury between the time of introduction and complete setting through carelessness of either dentist or patient.

Cavity Preparation for Amalgam. Many of the failures in the use of amalgam attributed to the property of the material used are in fact due to laxity in cavity preparation, since many practitioners believe that thoroughness is unnecessary in this particular. The preparation of a cavity for the reception of amalgam is even more exacting than for gold, as the operator is dealing with a filling material possessed of a greater number of faults, each of which must be given consideration, and the cavity should be prepared in such a manner as to minimize these to the greatest degree. In comparing amalgam with gold it might be said that amalgam requires less access in awkward localities in the mouth, requires more separation in proximal fillings, and that the outline form must receive more careful consideration as the margins must be farther removed from positions of great liability to caries, as well as stress.

Flat Seats for Fillings are even more imperative than with gold, and the *occlusal step* must be broader bucco-lingually. The enamel walls must be finished with as great care, with a cavo-surface angle more acute, and a more deeply buried bevel angle. Cavities must have more retentive form.

The Rubber Dam is essential because it is imperative that amalgam be built against dry, freshly cut, walls and margins. It is as impossible to make a good amalgam filling as it is a good gold filling against moist walls. The residue from the saliva upon the walls will show leakage more quickly with the amalgam filling than with the gold. When operators come to the full realization of this fact and manipulate all amalgam fillings with as great care as gold, with reference to dry conditions, the frequent failures of amalgam will be materially lessened.

The Matrix. All cavities filled with amalgam must have continuous surrounding walls. This will necessitate the adjustment of the matrix in cases where a wall is missing and applies to all Class Two cavities which reach the occlusal surface.

The matrix should be thoroughly wedged at the gingival, to prevent excess contour at this point, and to secure additional space that contact point may be made close. It should be made of steel as thin as one one-thousandth of an inch. It should be made to encircle the tooth firmly either by ligating or by a retaining appliance, several of which are on the market. When two proximal fillings are to be built at the same time and in the same proximal space, two matrices are necessary, one for each tooth involved.

However, better results are obtained, particularly with reference to proper contact restoration, by building up and finishing one filling first, and then building the other filling at a subsequent sitting. By using a specially prepared matrix band of the proper size for the second filling, with a hole cut in the matrix to allow the metal to protrude at the point of contact with the first made filling, an ideal result may be obtained.

Separation. Preliminary or immediate separation is just as essential in the use of amalgam as gold.

Making the Filling. The cavity should be in complete readiness to receive the amalgam immediately after it has been prepared. The size of the portions will depend upon the orifice of the cavity, and should be as large as can be easily crowded into the opening. This should be immediately compressed upon the seat of the cavity with as large a plugger as possible, with a rocking motion and as much weight as the circumstances will permit. When using a point that is much smaller than the cavity, the same wedging principle used in packing gold should be employed; that is, compress the central portion of the mass first and against the walls last. A burnisher should not be used; neither should the burnishing nor wiping motion be used, but all compressing force should be directed at a right angle to the base wall.

Quite a body of excess should then be added to the occlusal portion and a plugger point applied with mallet force which should be augmented with hard hand pressure. The hand pressure and mallet force combined will produce a more dense filling than by any other method and at the same time crowd the yet movable particles of amalgam and alloy into closer adaptation to every portion of the cavity walls.

Trimming Amalgam Fillings. After packing the amalgam it should be allowed to set undisturbed for one or two minutes, when the excess may be cut away with suitable knives. Gum lancet No. 2 and the discoid and cleoid from the ''University set'' are serviceable, as are also the large spoon excavators.

Removal of Matrix. The matrix should then be removed in proximal cavities by drawing to the buccal while pressing the ball of the finger gently on the occlusal surface. A loosely rolled, rather large, ball of cotton should be laid on the amalgam filling under the finger tip, in order to prevent the matrix from traveling occlusally in the process of removal.

The rubber dam should then be removed and the patient instructed to close the teeth slowly, stopping the instant he feels the presence of the filling between the teeth, which will occur if excess contour has been built. With the teeth still held in this same position, the patient is requested to give the jaws a gentle side movement. This will result in burnishing the spots of contact, after which the excess should be whittled away with knife-edged instruments.

Amalgam Should Be Cut From the Margins to the filling, which is just the reverse from the travel of the instrument in cutting gold fillings. If the cutting instrument moves from the filling to the cavosurface angle with amalgam that is only partially set, it is liable to sink too deeply into the substance of the filling and expose the margin as it crosses over.

Passing Contact Point. In proximal fillings of amalgam nothing of any description should ever be allowed to pass the contact point until the amalgam has completed the process of setting, as one such attempt forever destroys proper contact and a filling so treated becomes at once a makeshift. All overhanging amalgam should be cut away, around the entire cavity outline, but the region of contact point should be entirely neglected at this time, and left for final shaping during the process of polishing. Finally the filling should be gently wiped with spunk or cotton.

Polishing. All amalgam fillings should receive as thorough and careful polishing as gold. This must be done at a subsequent sitting. In proximal fillings the separator should be adjusted and the contact point properly formed and polished.

For this work abradents of only the finest nature should be employed. Burs, carborundum stones, coarse strips and disks only do harm and prolong the operation. Fine strips, disks, wood points and leather wheels, using first pumice then whiting, and lastly the tooth polishing rubber cups should be used.

That which follows in this chapter is taken from a paper presented at a Meeting of the Institute of Metals held on March 7 and 8, 1923, at Storey's Gate, Westminster, London, entitled ''**Volume Changes Accompanying Solution, Chemical Combination, and Crystallization in Amalgams,**'' by Arthur W. Gray, A.B., Ph.D. (Director of Physical Research, Caulk Dental Research Institute, Milford, Delaware, U. S. A.)

New Metallographic Hypothesis. A brief communication to the Toronto meeting of the American Physical Society in December, 1921, outlined an hypothesis to account for the peculiar alternation of contractions and expansions that a dental amalgam undergoes during and after the process of hardening.* No explanation whatever appears to have been previously offered, although, with proper experimental procedure, similar phenomena might be observable whenever solidification of a substance is accompanied by solution, chemical reaction, and crystallization, especially if complicated by long continued diffusion.

The purpose of the present paper is to elaborate the hypothesis outlined to the American Physical Society, and to illustrate its application by showing how dimensional changes observed under various alterations of influencing conditions can be accounted for. The hypothesis seems to be consistent with all facts at present known.

---

*Gray, A. W.: The Causes of Reaction Expansions in Amalgams, Physical Review, 1922, xix, 405.

Metallography of Dental Amalgams. The principal constituents of a dental amalgam alloy are silver and tin. Usually, however, other metals are present in small amounts. Of these copper is the most important. In an alloy of the best grade it forms about 5 per cent of the whole. For the purposes of the present discussion the effects of zinc and of other modifiers can be neglected.

The classic researches of Black[*] were from the viewpoint of practical application to dentistry.

Amalgams from alloys of silver and tin only have been studied from the physico-chemical point of view by McBain and his associates Joyner and Knight.[†]

Petrenko[‡] had previously investigated the silver-tin series of alloys. McBain and Joyner confirmed Petrenko's conclusion that all silver-tin alloys containing less than 75 atomic per cent of silver (73.1 per cent by mass), if well annealed, consist of crystals of Ag_3Sn embedded in an exceedingly fine granular eutectic mixture of Ag_3Sn and Sn. However, upon the freezing of a molten alloy containing more than 50 per cent of silver, the first solid to separate from the mother liquor is a solid solution of Ag in Ag_3Sn. The pure Ag_3Sn is stable only below 480° C.; so that, if the cooling is not very slow, some of this solid solution is retained in the cast ingot.

McBain and Joyner's investigations led them also to the conclusion that the process of amalgamation consists in a chemical reaction of the mercury with the compound Ag_3Sn to form the compound Ag_3Hg_4 *(arbor Dianæ)* and free tin according to the equation:

$$Ag_3Sn + 4Hg \longrightarrow Ag_3Hg_4 + Sn.$$

If more mercury is used than sufficient to combine with all the silver present in the alloy, the excess produces a solid solution of mercury in tin, which forms soft hexagonal crystals. Since this solution becomes saturated when the mercury content reaches a per cent or so, further excess remains as a liquid containing at room temperature less than 1 per cent of tin.

---

[*] G. V. Black, "An Investigation of the Physical Characters of the Human Teeth in Relation to their Diseases, and to Practical Dental Operations, together with the Physical Characters of Filling-Materials," *Dental Cosmos,* 1895, vol. xxxvii. pp. 353-421, 469-484, 553-571, 637-661, 737-757; "The Effect of Oxidation on Cut Alloys for Dental Amalgams," *ibid.,* 1896, vol. xxxviii. pp. 43-48; "The Physical Properties of the Silver-Tin Amalgams," *ibid.,* 1896, vol. xxxviii. pp. 965-992.

[†] R. A. Joyner, "Amalgams containing Silver and Tin," *Transactions of the Chemical Society,* 1911, vol. xcix. pp. 195-208; J. W. McBain and R. A. Joyner, "Amalgams containing Tin, Silver, and Mercury," *Dental Cosmos,* 1912, vol. liv. pp. 641-650; W. A. Knight and R. A. Joyner, "Amalgams containing Silver and Tin," *Transactions of the Chemical Society,* 1913, vol. ciii. pp. 2247-2262; W. A. Knight, "The Ageing of Alloys of Silver and Tin," *Transactions of the Chemical Society,* 1914, vol. cv. pp. 639-645; J. W. McBain and W. A. Knight, "Report on the Chemical Constitution and Physico-Chemical Properties of Dental Amalgams," Sixth International Dental Congress, London, 1914, Section IV., *Dental Cosmos,* 1915, vol. lvii. pp. 630-639.

[‡] G. J. Petrenko, "Ueber die Legierungen des Silbers mit Blei und Zinn," *Zeitschrift für anorganische Chemie,* 1917, vol. liii, pp. 200-211.

The equation expressing the reaction between Ag_3Sn and Hg may, of course, represent only the initial and the final stages of amalgamation. This possibility was recognized by McBain and Knight, who remarked that an intermediate stage might exist, for example, formation of Ag_3Hg_2.

Contractions and Expansions Following Amalgamation. McBain and Knight show that the amalgamation of Ag_3Sn is accompanied by a considerable contraction. From specific volume data they calculated that when freshly cut filings of Ag_3Sn are amalgamated with just sufficient mercury to combine with all the silver, the final volume of the amalgam formed is nearly 5 per cent less than the total volume of the Ag_3Sn and the Hg before amalgamation. Their dilatometric measurements tended to confirm these calculations.*

In pointing out that the only part of this enormous volume change that is of practical importance in the making of a tooth filling is the part that takes place after the amalgam is packed into the cavity, McBain and Knight assert that every case occurring in dental practice must be intermediate between no volume change and the extreme changes indicated in the tables exhibiting the results of their calculations, thus implying that an amalgam tooth filling always contracts.

This implication is, however, contrary to the universal observation of those who have measured the dimensional changes of dental amalgams during hardening. Depending upon composition or physical treatment, or both, some amalgams shrink badly; others expand.

The dimensional changes that occur during the hardening of a dental amalgam are of such importance in connection with the tooth-restoring properties of this valuable filling material that determinations of these changes are nearly always included in tests of amalgam alloys. A contracting amalgam may shrink sufficiently to admit oral fluids and bacteria between the filling and the cavity walls; an expanding amalgam may swell sufficiently to extend above the margins of the cavity, or even to split the tooth. The ideal amalgam expands just enough to make sure that a properly inserted filling will remain firmly in contact with the tooth.

---

*Similar calculations had been made by A. Fenchel, *Dental Cosmos*, 1910, vol. lii. p. 30. Some of Fenchel's assumptions in regard to the reactions involved are questionable.

Most investigators of dental amalgams have confined their attention to the volume changes that occur during and after hardening. Apparently they have completely overlooked the main change that accompanies solution and combination. Even in the changes they investigated, they missed many details because they used unsuitable apparatus and failed to control influencing conditions.

On the other hand, McBain and Knight, as well as Fenchel, confined their attention to the net result of the various volume changes that occur when silver-tin alloys are amalgamated. They failed, therefore, to note the details of the process. They missed the intermediate expansions and contractions that are of particular concern to the dentist. Since they all refer to Dr. Black's epoch-making work, it is remarkable that they should have ignored the changes that he described.

All investigators up to the present time have treated expansions and contractions in dental amalgams as if they were unrelated, though coexisting, actions. The prevailing belief is that silver causes expansion and tin contraction. Black's procedure of so adjusting the composition of a dental alloy that its amalgam will show a desirable small reaction expansion is, therefore, regarded as ''balancing'' the opposing tendencies of the component metals.

This belief is the natural outcome of Black's discovery that, other things being equal, the expansion observed in silver-tin amalgams after they are tightly packed into a cavity, increases regularly as the silver-content is progressively increased, while the contraction increases with increase in the tin-content. Most dental writers and manufacturers of dental alloys seem to have overlooked the fact that the amalgamation of silver is accompanied by a large contraction, and the amalgamation of tin by a smaller, but considerable, expansion, although both of these facts have been pointed out in a widely circulated American dental journal.*

No one seems to have realized that the amalgamation of the silver might be responsible for most of the contraction as well as for most of the expansion, the tin acting mainly as a diluent. How this new conception fits in with a reasonable interpretation of observed phenomena will now be elucidated.

Typical Curve of Reaction Expansion. Black had observed that some amalgams contracted a little before they expanded.†

After studying curves representing reaction expansions of various

---

*By Fenchel and by McBain and Knight, *Dental Cosmos, loc. cit.*

†G. V. Black, "The Physical Properties of the Silver-Tin Amalgams," *Dental Cosmos,* 1896, vol. xxxviii. p. 982.

dental amalgams under widely differing conditions, I discovered that every individual curve could be regarded as a special case of a more general curve. This general curve, which I have designated as the typical curve of reaction expansion, is characterized by the following four consecutive stages of alternate contraction and expansion:

1. Rapid contraction to a minimum.
2. Somewhat slower expansion to a maximum.
3. Considerably slower contraction to a second minimum.
4. Very much slower expansion to a second maximum.

One or more of these stages can be masked or can be accentuated by mechanical treatment of the amalgam.*

The reaction expansions of more than five hundred amalgam specimens have now been measured under accurately controlled conditions that have been systematically varied. Some specimens have been observed at regular intervals for about two years. In every case the expansion curve was found to conform to the behavior outlined above. Many examples were obtained that show all four stages in the same curve. Some will be described later in this paper.

Explanation of the Typical Curve. The work of McBain, Joyner, and Knight, supplemented by my own observations, and by physicochemical facts of common knowledge, leads to a simple explanation of the phenomena.

The rapid drop to a minimum that forms the first part of the typical curve of reaction expansion evidently represents the end of the stage dominated by contraction accompanying solution of the alloy in mercury and formation of compounds with silver and copper.

Crystallization of these mercury compounds quickly follows their formation, and is accompanied by expansion. The first minimum in the curve marks the time when the rapidity of this expansion just equals the rapidity of the contraction caused by the simultaneous formation of more of these same compounds.

As the solution and the reaction diminish, the crystallization ex-

---

*A. W. Gray, "Metallographic Phenomena Observed in Amalgams," *Transactions of the American Institute of Mining and Metallurgical Engineers,* 1919, vol. lx, pp. 684 and 693. *Journal of the National Dental Association,* 1919, vol. vi. pp. 913 and 918; "Oral Topics," London, 1922, vol. ii. pp. 24 and 33. Also, "Contractions and Expansions of Amalgams with Time," *Physical Review,* 1921, vol. xviii. p. 108. *Journal of the National Dental Association,* 1922, vol. xix. p. 324.

pansion comes to predominate. This predominance is indicated by the rise of the curve from the first minimum to the first maximum.

The mixing of the alloy with the mercury, whether by trituration or otherwise, reduces the alloy to particles of microscopic size. Many of these particles must, however, be considerably larger than molecules at the time the amalgam is moulded into a test specimen. Consequently, there will be a gradual inward diffusion of the free mercury coating the alloy particles, resulting in still more solution, reaction, and crystallization, which may continue long after the amalgam has begun to harden. The volume changes resulting from this diffusion might easily account for the slow descent of the typical reaction expansion curve after reaching the first maximum, and for the very much slower rise that follows.

The gradual changes in shape that the reaction expansion curve can be made to undergo by systematic variation of influencing conditions are exactly what might reasonably be expected if the foregoing hypothesis is correct. Illustrations of such changes are given later in this paper as well as elsewhere.*

The slow growth of the crystals during the hardening of a dental amalgam is beautifully shown by a series of eight photomicrographs taken at intervals during the first day and published by Fenchel.†

In many of my reaction expansion curves slight subsidiary maxima and minima appeared. Since the deviation from the general course of a curve seldom amounted to more than a fraction of a micron, I was at first inclined to ascribe such undulations to vagaries in the measuring apparatus; but they have persisted with such regularity that it is difficult to believe that they are not caused by real dimensional changes. Deviations of this kind can be seen in Figs. 94 to 100, inclusive, of this paper. Perhaps they are caused by reaction of the mercury with the copper in the alloy. Additions of this metal to a silver-tin alloy are accompanied by large increases of the expansion observable during the hardening of the amalgams. It is not to be expected that copper and silver will react with mercury at the same rate. Differences in reaction rate would be marked in the composite expansion curve by relative displacements of the maxima and the minima attributable to the separate actions of the component metals.

---

*A. W. Gray, *loc. cit.*

†A. Fenchel, "Some New Researches into Amalgams, and their Significance for Dentists," *Dental Cosmos,* 1908, vol. 1, pp. 553-572, Figs. 17-24, pp. 566-569.

Factors That Influence Dimensional Changes

General Principles. Any procedure that brings about more intimate contact of mercury and alloy will facilitate diffusion, solution, and combination. Reaction in a dental amalgam should, therefore, be accelerated by fine comminution of the alloy, by increasing the effectiveness of the amalgamation procedure, by tight packing into tooth cavity or mould, and by suitable temperature during hardening.

Increase in the average rate of reaction causes each characteristic of the expansion curve to appear earlier and to disappear earlier. Consequently, it causes quicker attainment of a stable volume. Conditions that hasten reaction at the beginning may, however, retard it later, and thus actually delay attainment of stability. For example, either insufficient or excessive amalgamation may result in large, long-continued volume changes, some of which may not become conspicuous until after several days.

Increase of solution and combination before packing is completed leaves less reaction to proceed afterwards. Although this must reduce the *actual* contraction during hardening, it may increase the contraction *observable* by measurements of dimensional changes. How some of the contraction escapes measurement will be explained presently.

Crystallization occurring before packing leaves less crystallization to produce expansion later. One result of this will be a less prominent first maximum in the curve of reaction expansion. Frequently the only suggestion of this maximum is an inconspicuous temporary reduction in curvature during the first few hours. Often the first and the second minimum merge into each other so completely that not even the slightest trace of an intervening maximum is discernible.

The finer the particles into which a dental alloy is cut, the more rapidly will they amalgamate if their surfaces are clean. Increase of alloy surface brought into contact with the mercury, like increase in the solubility produced by changing crystalline Ag_3Sn into amorphous,* accelerates solution and combination. The quicker elimination of the liquid mercury-tin solution that serves to lubricate the mix makes necessary a greater mercury-alloy ratio in order to obtain proper plasticity. Also, fine particles of alloy unite with a greater proportion of mercury during mixing; coarse ones unite with less. Therefore, the fine retain more mercury after the excess is squeezed out during packing.

---

*See page 153.

The more thorough the mixing of mercury and alloy the faster the reaction between them. Some methods are more effective than others. Trituration with mortar and pestle is superior to kneading in the hand—and more sanitary. A good mechanical mixer acts more rapidly than any hand-mixing procedure. Increasing the mercury-alloy ratio enough to yield a smooth, plastic mix starts solution more promptly by facilitating the wetting of the alloy particles with the mercury. Prolonging the time of mixing accomplishes more reaction before the amalgam is packed, leaving less to take place during hardening.

Effects of changing amalgamation variables may, of course, be further emphasized by suitably changing several variables simultaneously. Early rise towards the second maximum of the expansion curve can thus be brought about.*

Manipulation of an amalgam during the act of packing it into a tooth cavity is equivalent to prolonging trituration. Removal of soft material brought to the surface prevents retention of a deleterious excess of mercury and hastens completion of the hardening process.

Increase of packing pressure results in squeezing out of the tooth filling or cast more of the mechanically retained mercury, which carries out with it a little dissolved tin and other metals together with some fine particles of undissolved alloy and of solidified amalgam. Removal of this material must reduce the amount of subsequent reaction in the filling, and must, therefore, lessen the magnitude of the accompanying volume changes. In addition, the more intimate contact between mercury and alloy that is effected by tight packing hastens the attainment of stability, because it increases the rate of reaction during hardening. Tight packing also reduces porosity of the amalgam and secures closer fitting of the filling to the cavity walls. As might be expected, the influence of a given change in packing pressure becomes rapidly less as the pressure is increased.

Temperature reduction hinders diffusion, solution, and combination. It may retard or it may accelerate crystallization. If the temperature is low enough, reduction in fluidity caused by further cooling may so augment the resistance to crystal growth that the increased tendency to form crystallization nuclei will be overcome.

---

*"Metallographic Phenomena," Section 22.

If a dental amalgam after hardening in the ordinary way is softened by heating, and is then packed into a mould until it rehardens upon cooling, it will rapidly expand for hours after it is removed from the mould.* This expansion is easily explainable. Heating melts the amalgam crystals. Besides, it facilitates union of any silver and mercury that previously may have remained uncombined in the amalgam. This eliminates combination, with accompanying contraction, during rehardening, which must consist primarily in recrystallization accompanied by expansion.

Softening an amalgam by heat also gives opportunity for eliminating voids resulting from the combination of silver and mercury while the amalgam was hardening after preparation by mixing alloy and mercury.

Abnormally large and rapid expansion occurs in a specimen moulded from amalgam prepared by triturating more mercury with fillings from a hardened dental amalgam.†

The second trituration breaks up the hard crystals into minute fragments; but since these are already saturated with mercury, the addition of more does not soften them. Consequently, they resist the contraction that accompanies the formation of more compounds after moulding is completed, but they are pushed apart during recrystallization about themselves as nuclei. Moreover, the contraction resulting from formation of additional compounds during retrituration will occur before moulding; but much of the expansion accompanying the crystallization of these compounds will take place while the test specimen is under observation in the dilatometer.

The exothermic nature of the reaction constituting amalgamation should be familiar to every investigator of dental amalgams. Ordinarily the temperature rise from the heat of reaction is so small that it escapes notice unless looked for, but with some commercial dental alloys, and especially with some experimental alloys, it is distinctly perceptible. Warming from the reaction, from the work done during amalgamation, and by conduction from the hand of the operator would all cause some thermal expansion of the amalgam. If cooling then occurred during the measurement of reaction expansion, the accompanying thermal contraction would, of course, form part of the effect observed.

---

*See curve of specimen R 39 in Fig. 37 of my paper on "Metallographic Phenomena in Amalgams."

†See curve of specimen R 40 in the figure last cited.

An amalgam evolving heat while hardening would maintain itself at a gradually lessening temperature above its surroundings. In an air bath, especially if unstirred, the temperature difference might easily be some degrees centigrade; but when immersed in a stirred liquid, the average temperature of a small amalgam cylinder could hardly be enough higher than that of the liquid to account for much of the initial contraction often observed. By far the most of this initial contraction is more naturally accounted for by assuming that it is the last of the large contraction that we know accompanies combination of silver and mercury to form such compounds as Ag_3Hg_2 or Ag_3Hg_4.

Even thorough titration with mortar and pestle leaves many undissolved grains of alloy in the amalgam, although these grains may be so small as to escape detection by eye or by feel. Coarse comminution of alloy, deficient amalgamation procedure, loose packing, and low temperature all facilitate long-continued diffusion of mercury into the interiors of the undissolved grains, and, consequently, long-continued changes of volume. As far as each individual grain is concerned, the net result must be contraction; but the effect observed when dimensional changes are measured may be expansion.

The reason for this apparent inconsistency is easily found. Each grain touches its neighbors in only a few places. Reaction with the adhering mercury occurs mainly on the surfaces that are not protected by contact with adjacent grains. This leaves until the last to be attacked by the inwardly diffusing mercury a core of hard alloy connecting contact regions. The stiff skeleton built up of the connecting cores resists contraction; and the lower the tin-content of the alloy the greater will be the resistance. The contraction accompanying reaction must, therefore, result in the formation of voids in places formerly occupied by the soft mercury-tin solutions that surrounded the original hard grains. The cored skeleton will become stiffened, and enlarged near contact regions, by accretions of surrounding material. Crystal growth following combination will not be greatly opposed by the skeleton framework thus formed, which, consequently, will expand in all directions. Growth perpendicular to lines joining two regions of contact between a grain and its neighbors will merely project crystals into adjacent voids; but growth along such lines will lengthen the elements of the amalgam framework and cause enlargement of the entire structure.

It is easy to see how large grains of alloy will facilitate a procedure such as that just sketched, and will, therefore, tend to yield expanding amalgams. But expansion obtained by coarsely cutting a dental alloy, results not only in an amalgam that is difficult to pack closely to the walls of a tooth cavity, but in one that is permeated by large pores and countless cracks.*

How Tin in Alloy Facilitates Contraction. Since the expansion accompanying crystallization is much smaller than the contraction observable as the net result of the volume changes accompanying solution and combination, any procedure that facilitates continuance of solution and combination after an amalgam is packed into a tooth cavity, or moulded into a test specimen, will increase the proportion that contracts during hardening and will thereby mask more of the expansion. It may even conceal the expansion entirely.

Increasing the tin-content of an amalgam alloy aids in prolonging solution and combination. To a large extent the tin will act as a diluent, interfering with the combination of the silver and the mercury during the amalgamation before packing into the tooth or the mould. While this amalgamation is in progress, considerable mercury must become held by the tin,—some in solution and some mechanically. Much of this mercury remains in the filling even after all attempts have been made to remove it, either before or during packing. Slowly it diffuses to unattacked Ag_3Sn crystals and combines with the silver, causing more contraction than expansion.

Another element may enter here to increase the contraction. According to Fenchel, formation of the solid solution of mercury in tin is accompanied by a volume increase of about 1.5 per cent.† If this be true, there will be a corresponding contraction during hardening while the dissolved mercury diffuses from the tin into the silver.

The retarding effect of excess tin on the reactions that accompany amalgamation is shown by the well-known fact that amalgams from tin-rich alloys harden much more slowly than amalgams from silver-rich alloys. The presence of the mechanically retained liquid solution of tin in mercury, and of the soft solid solution of mercury in tin, account for the long-continued plasticity of amalgams from low-silver dental alloys, which for this reason are called *slowly setting alloys* to distinguish them from the *rapidly setting alloys* of high silver content.*

---

*See pages 175 and 176.

†Desch, "Metallography," 1913, p. 234, and Giua, "Chemical Combination among Metals," 1918, p. 55, quote Maey as having found a contraction of 0.9 per cent. Maey's original papers are not accessible to me as I write, but my own measurements of reaction expansions in pure tin amalgams indicate expansion. For a description of these measurements see page 155.

Although a given mass of a low-silver alloy requires less mercury for easy amalgamation and retains less under given packing conditions than an equal mass of a high-silver alloy, there is more danger of the former's retaining too much for the silver available. The larger proportion of mercury retained by the high-silver alloy is advantageously used to form more Ag_3Hg_4, resulting not only in a harder, stronger, and less deformable amalgam, but also in a greater volume from the same mass of alloy.

That excessive contraction during the hardening of a tin-rich dental amalgam can be materially reduced by removal of softened material brought to the surface during packing in a cavity has been well shown by Black.†

"Ageing" of a Comminuted Silver-Tin Alloy. Annealing ("ageing") a comminuted silver-tin alloy also reduces the rate at which it will react with mercury. McBain, Joyner, and Knight, after many carefully conducted experiments in attempts to discover the causes of phenomena observable upon "ageing" silver-tin alloys, conclude that ageing "is a property solely of the compound Ag_3Sn contained in the alloys; it retards the initial stages of amalgamation, but does not affect the final products."

Although they conclude also that ageing is not "a case of annealing after mechanical strain," I believe that it does consist partly in recrystallization of amorphous or colloidal material produced by severe deformation of Ag_3Sn crystals during comminution.**

One natural result of changing some of the Ag_3Sn from the crystalline to the amorphous state would be an increase in solubility.‡

---

*The low crushing strength observable in fully hardened amalgams from tin-rich alloys, and the pronounced plastic deformation (flow) under a small load maintained for some time, are perhaps attributable partly to one or both of these mercury-tin solutions, especially when more mercury has been retained than sufficient to combine with all the silver present; but they seem attributable mainly to the large proportion of the easily deformable tin insufficiently stiffened by the Ag_3Hg_4. Because tin rich alloys yield easily deformable amalgams they are frequently called *plastic alloys.* The combination of undesirable properties that render such alloys unfit for making satisfactory tooth restorations has caused them to be designated as *low-grade alloys.*

†*Dental Cosmos,* 1895, vol. xxxvii. pp. 648-650, Alloys Nos. 4, 5, and 10.

**A discussion of my reasons for this belief must be reserved for another paper. For the present it will suffice to point out that the annealing phenomena characteristic of silver-tin alloys would be a natural, although not a necessary, consequence of converting amorphous into crystalline material; or, approaching the phenomena from the opposite point of view by considering the crystalline structure as the normal one, the changes observable upon amalgamating freshly comminuted alloys are just what might reasonably be expected if the proportion of amorphous Ag_3Sn should be appreciably increased by deformation during comminution.

‡By "amorphous" or "colloidal" material I mean merely material consisting of very small irregularly arranged particles, whether these particles themselves have or have not a regular (crystalline) structure.

This would cause a freshly cut silver-tin alloy to require more mercury for making an amalgam of workable plasticity. The quicker absorption of the mercury would result in faster reactions. Therefore, after maintaining a given amalgamating procedure for a given time, more mercury would be locked up with the silver so that it could not be expressed from the amalgam by squeezing through a cloth or by tight packing into a cavity. The amalgam would also harden faster and consequently be more difficult to pack. It would shrink less and expand more after packing, because the combining of the mercury and the silver, with the accompanying contraction, would have progressed further before packing could be completed; while the crystallization, interfered with by the trituration or other mixing procedure, and by the presence of the mechanically retained liquid solution of tin in mercury, would not be greatly accelerated. Consequently, less of the expansion accompanying crystallization would be masked by the contraction accompanying solution and combination, in spite of the fact that "aged" Ag_3Sn has a specific volume about 0.4 per cent smaller than that of freshly cut Ag_3Sn, so that the net contraction resulting from amalgamation is greater with a freshly cut than with an "aged" silver-tin alloy.*

Freshly cut and annealed dental alloys show just such differences as are discussed in the foregoing paragraphs.

Contamination by surface films of oxide, sulphide, or other impurities that interfere with amalgamation, and thereby reduce the reaction rate, probably plays some part in masking crystallization expansion. Black's discovery that "ageing" of a comminuted silver-tin alloy is produced, not by surface contamination, but by heat treatment, has possibly led some manufacturers of high-silver dental alloys that yield contracting amalgams to the belief that protection from the air during annealing is an unnecessary precaution.

Experimental Data Illustrating Hypothesis

The foregoing sections have shown how a simple general hypothesis of reaction expansions can explain the particular dimensional changes that have been observed in dental amalgams. Detailed accounts of experiments were omitted from the exposition in order to avoid obscuring general principles. Examples illustrating the application of these principles have already been published.† Additional examples will now be presented.

---

*Knight: Tr. Chem. Soc., 1914, cv, 643; McBain and Knight, Sixth Internatl. Dental Congress, 1914; *Dental Cosmos,* 1914, lvii, 635-637.

†A. W. Gray, *loc, cit.*

Reaction Expansion of Tin Amalgam. The dilatometric behavior of tin amalgam is of interest because it upsets the long-standing current belief that tin is the contracting element in a dental amalgam.

My measurements were made with the same method and apparatus that I have used for the past six years in determining the reaction expansions of dental amalgams.* Each test cylinder was prepared from 3.00 gm, filings of pure tin and 4.50 gm. mercury triturated two minutes in a glass mortar, and then condensed under a measured pressure applied two minutes to the piston of the steel mould, which was at approximately 37.5° C. Expansion measurements were started within two or three minutes after the cylinder was moulded. During observations the stirred oil bath of the dilatometer was maintained at 37.5° S. ± 0.01° C.

Table I shows for each cylinder the relation between mercury content (in per cent) and packing pressure (in kilograms-weight per circular centimetre). Apparently most of the mercury must have been mechanically retained, since tin will dissolve only about 1 per cent of mercury at room temperature.†

TABLE I

MERCURY CONTENTS OF TIN AMALGAMS

SPECIMEN NUMBER	PACKING PRESSURE IN KG. PER CIR. CM.	PER CENT MERCURY	DEVIATIONS FROM AVERAGE
R 515	100	21.4	..
R 511	400	19.6	—0.3
R 512	400	19.8	—0.1
R 513	400	20.3	+0.4
Average	400	19.9	±0.3
R 514	1600	19.0	..

Fig. 79 represents the results of my first attempt to measure the reaction expansion of a tin amalgam. It is instructive in showing how cautious one must be when interpreting the readings of a measuring instrument. The heavy line forming the beginning of the plot follows 370 observations taken at one minute intervals during the first 6.4 hours immediately following the completion of the cylinder. The dashes cover time intervals during which no observations were made. When the cylinder was removed from the dilatometer, it was found that the pressure of the measuring contacts, although so light that they could be lifted by a small camels'-hair brush, had nevertheless been sufficient to press easily noticeable grooves into the surface of the amalgam. Gradual hardening is shown by the changes in slope of the heavy lines that mark the observations. The abrupt changes in direction where solid and dashed lines join is ascribable, at least partly, to our regular practice of eliminating frictional lag by gently tapping the dilatometer with blows from the hammer of a vibrating electric bell before taking a reading. The shaking of the contacts undoubtedly caused them to sink into the amalgam faster than during the intervals when no observations were made.

---

*"Metallographic Phenomena Observed in Amalgams," Part II.

†W. J. van Heteren, "Die Zinnamalgame," *Zeitschrift für anorganische Chemie,* 1904, vol. xlii. pp. 129-173.

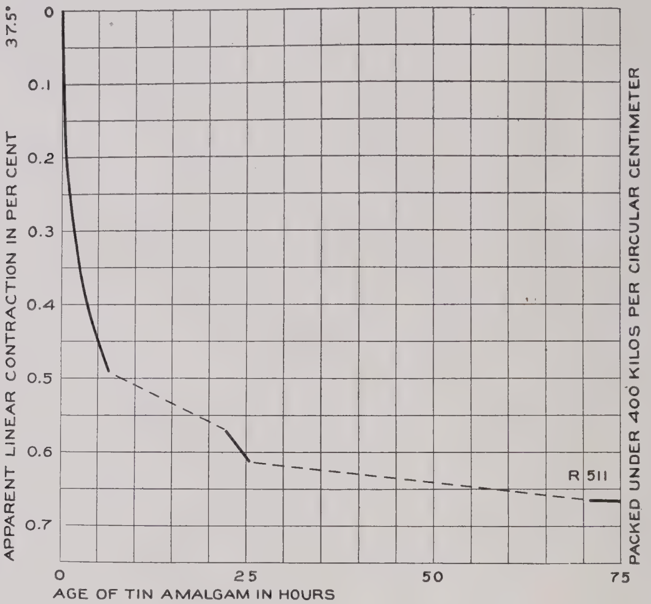


Fig. 79.—Apparent contraction of tin amalgam. An effect of flow under very light pressure. Gradual hardening shown by changes in slope of solid lines.

Fig. 80 represents results obtained with three cylinders of tin amalgam when precautions were taken to eliminate the errors caused by the sinking in of the contacts. Several observations were rapidly taken while the contacts were closed upon the specimen. These observations showed a steady approach of the contacts, which would ordinarily be interpreted as contraction of the amalgam. Then the contacts were lifted, and the specimen was left free from constraint for some minutes. More observations again indicated an approach of the measuring contacts, but comparison of the last reading of the first series with the first reading of the second showed that the diameter of the cylinder had increased during the interval. The curves shown in Fig. 80 were obtained by piecing together expansion elements yielded by repetitions of this procedure. The dots represent the actual observations.

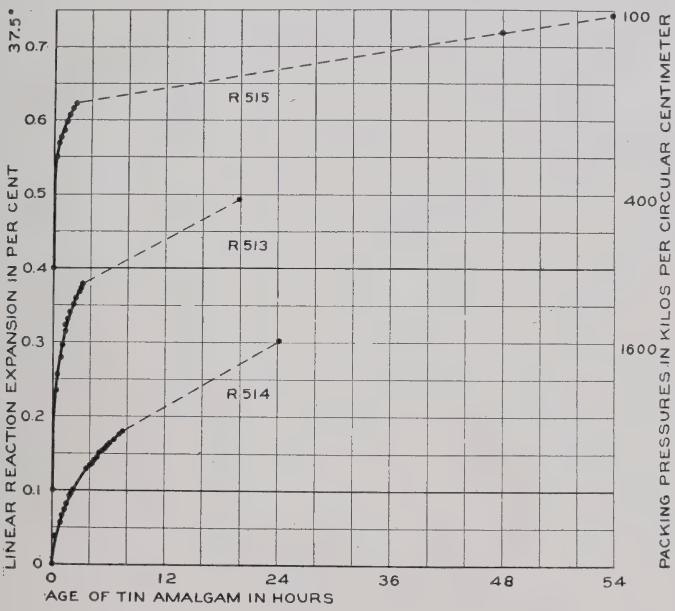


Fig. 80.—Tin amalgam expands while hardening.

Although some of the expansions recorded by Fig. 80 may be caused by the growth of individual crystals immediately under the measuring contacts, the regularity of the curves suggests that the indications of the dilatometer correspond to growth of the entire cylinder of amalgam.

The growth of crystals on an end surface of specimen R 515 is shown in Fig. 81, p. 161. The magnification is 25 diameters.

Effects of Changing Amalgamation Variables. In my paper entitled "Metallographic Phenomena Observed in Amalgams" several charts were presented to show how variations in thoroughness of amalgation cause large differences in the reaction expansions of dental amalgams prepared from the same batch of alloy. An expansion or a contraction could be produced at will by merely changing the manipulation.

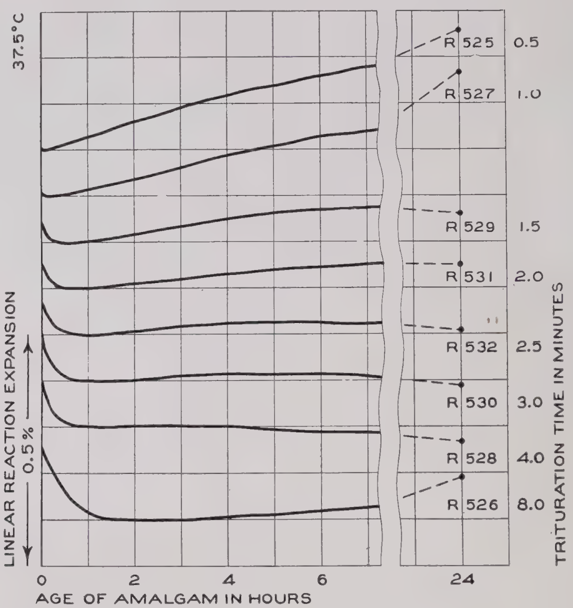


Fig. 82.—Reaction expansion of a dental amalgam is changed by varying time amalgam is triturated. Expansions of some specimens during 6.5 months are described in Table II.

An unusually good exhibition of effects produced by prolonging trituration is afforded by the reaction expansion curves assembled in Fig. 82 of the present paper and by the data on the same specimens assembled in Table II. The results presented here show how the expansion curve is gradually changed. They show also examples of the same specimen yielding both minima and both maxima of the typical curve of reaction expansion.*

The amalgams represented were made from a dental alloy of the highest grade. Each test cylinder was made from a 3.00 gm. sample triturated by mortar and pestle with 1.60 times this mass of mercury; and each was packed under a pressure of 25 kg. per cir. cm. maintained for two minutes.

---

*See page 146.

Reasons were given in the section on page 148 for effects of the kind produced by prolonging trituration. By increasing the proportion of mercury and silver combined before packing begins, less solution and combination are left to proceed after packing. This must lessen the *actual* contraction during hardening, although the contraction *observable* by measurements of dimensional changes may be considerably increased. The reasons for this apparent contradiction are similar to those presented in showing why coarsely cut alloys tend to yield amalgams that expand during hardening. An additional reason is that since more mercury compounds are formed during mixing, more also crystallize then, although the continued agitation and the presence of excess mercury prevent the growth of crystallites into crystals large enough to be noticed unless the mixing time is unduly prolonged. Crystallization that occurs during the process of mixing and packing, by lessening the crystallization available to produce expansion soon after the test cylinder is completed, would naturally result in a less conspicuous first maximum of the expansion curve. Fig. 82 and Table II show clearly how progressive increases in trituration time gradually reduce and finally obliterate this maximum. Specimen R 526, triturated eight minutes, shows how excessive trituration results in a considerable initial contraction that is soon followed by a much larger, long-continued expansion.

TABLE II

EFFECTS OF VARYING TRITURATION TIME

TRITURATED 0.5 MINUTE. SPECIMEN R 525.	
1st Minimum	Reached as soon as moulded.
1st Maximum	+0.30 per cent diameter change in 2 weeks. +0.02 per cent additional change during next 2 months. No observable change during following 4 months, when measurements were discontinued.
Total Change	+0.32 per cent in 6.5 months.
TRITURATED 1.0 MINUTE. SPECIMEN R 527	
1st Minimum	—0.002 per cent reached in 10 minutes.
1st Maximum	+0.33 per cent in 10 days. +0.15 per cent more by end of 6.5 months.
Total Change	+0.48 per cent in 6.5 months.

TABLE II.—*Continued*

EFFECTS OF VARYING TRITURATION TIME

TRITURATED 1.5 MINUTE. SPECIMEN R 529.

1st Minimum	—0.03 per cent in 0.5 hour.
1st Maximum	+0.07 per cent during next 7 hours. Reached maximum during night. Change not observed.
2nd Minimum	—0.01 per cent during 16 hours. Changed less than ±0.01 per cent for a month. Thereafter, slow expansion.
2nd Maximum	+0.05 per cent in 5.2 months.
Total Change	+0.08 per cent in 6.2 months.

TRITURATED 2.0 MINUTES. SPECIMEN R 531.

1st Minimum	—0.05 per cent in 0.5 hour.
1st Maximum	+0.05 per cent at end of 7.5 hours. No change observed following morning.
2nd Minimum	—0.03 per cent during first month.
2nd Maximum	+0.02 per cent during second month. No change during next 2 months.
Total Change	—0.01 per cent in 4 months. Accident stopped observations during very slow expansion.*

TRITURATED 2.5 MINUTES. SPECIMEN R 532.

1st Minimum	—0.07 per cent in 0.5 hour.
1st Maximum	+0.025 per cent during next 4 hours.
2nd Minimum	—0.04 per cent during next month.
2nd Maximum	+0.06 per cent during next 5 months.
Total Change	—0.02 per cent in 6.2 months.

TRITURATED 3.0 MINUTES. SPECIMEN R 530.

1st Minimum	—0.10 per cent in 1.0 hour.
1st Maximum	+0.01 per cent during next 3.5 hours.
2nd Minimum	—0.03 per cent during night. No further change observable for more than 1.5 months.
2nd Maximum	+0.05 per cent during following 4.5 months.
Total Change	—0.07 per cent in 6.2 months.

TRITURATED 4 MINUTES. SPECIMEN R 528.

1st Minimum	—0.10 per cent in 1.0 hour.
1st Maximum	+0.005 per cent during next 1.5 hours.
2nd Minimum	—0.05 per cent during next few days.
2nd Maximum	+0.14 per cent during next 6 months.
Total Change	—0.005 per cent in 6.3 months.

TRITURATED 8 MINUTES. SPECIMEN R 526.

1st Minimum	—0.16 per cent in 2 hours.
1st Maximum	Obliterated by excessive trituration.
2nd Minimum	Practically coincides with first minimum and first maximum.
2nd Maximum	+0.30 per cent during 6.4 months, expanding rapidly at first, then slowly. Apparently still growing when measurements were discontinued.
Total Change	+0.14 per cent in 6.4 months.

---

*Another test specimen (R 464, Fig. 94) similarly prepared some months earlier from the same alloy contracted no more than 0.01 per cent during the first three months after it was one day old. When a year old it had expanded only 0.04 per cent beyond this second minimum.

Surfaces of moulded amalgams after hardening. x25. Oblique illumination.

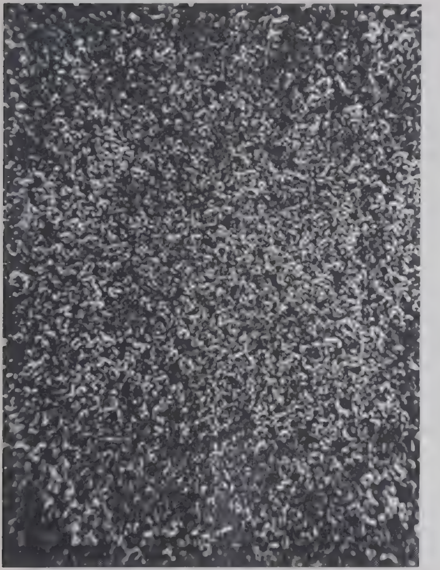


Fig. 81

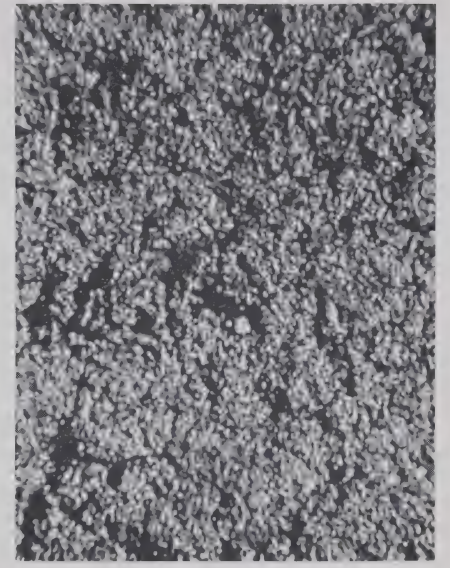


Fig. 83

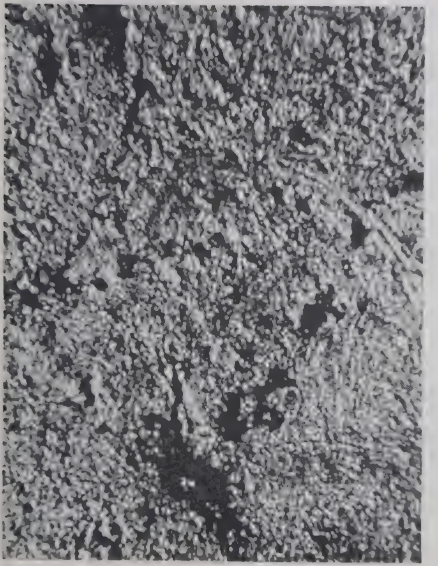


Fig. 84

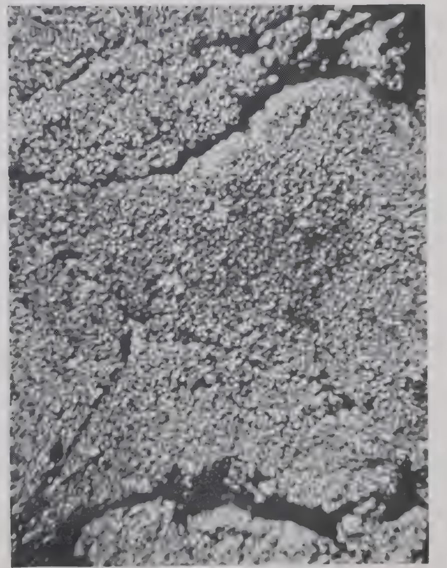


Fig. 85

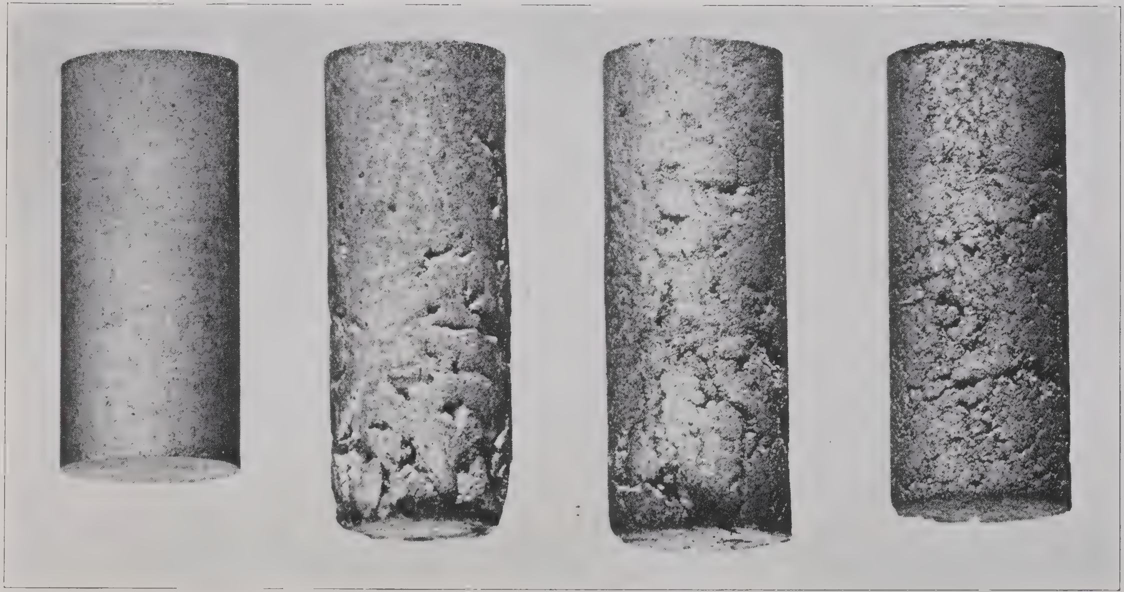
Fig. 81.—Tin amalgam moulded under 100 kg. per cir. cm.

Fig. 83.—Too little mercury used in mixing this dental amalgam. Difficult to amalgamate. Weakened by cracks and coarse structure. S 5584, Fig. 87.

Fig. 84.—Too little trituration. Imperfect amalgamation. Coarse-grained amalgam. S 5578, Fig. 87.

Fig. 85.—Too much trituration. Fine-grained amalgam, but cracks and folds from excessive crystallization before packing. S 5579, Fig. 87.

[Gray.]



S 5580 S 5579 S 5578 S 5584

Fig. 87.—Results of correctly and incorrectly amalgamating same high A grade dental alloy. All cylinders packed under 25 kg. per cir. cm. in same mould. Wrong manipulation yields amalgam that is difficult to condense and to adapt to cavity walls. Cracks and folds weaken. Slow diffusion of mercury trapped in voids causes large and long-continued volume changes. ×4. Bottom surfaces of same specimens ×25 are shown in Figs. 83, 84, 85, and 86.

The lesson that the dentist should learn from these effects of varying the trituration time is to avoid both the extreme of too little trituration advocated by some, and the extreme of too much trituration advocated by others. Both extremes result not only in undesirable volume changes, but also in structural weakness from crevices and other voids. Too little trituration, as well as too little mercury, produces voids by shrinkage following diffusion and combination, as explained in the portions of pages 151 and 152 that show how a coarsely cut alloy may produce expansion of the amalgam as a whole, but contraction around the individual grains. Excessive trituration permits crystallization to reduce the plasticity of the amalgam seriously. This favors the formation of folds that are similar to ''cold shuts'' in castings. Loss of strength and difficulty of making the filling fit close to the cavity walls are the natural consequences. Somewhat similar results follow the use of too little mercury or too little trituration,—in other words, insufficient amalgamation.

Structural differences produced by differences in amalgamation are shown by Figs. 83, 84, 85 and 86 (p. 176), which picture characteristic areas on the ends of amalgam cylinders 6 mm. in diameter, each of which was made from 2.00 gm. of the same high-grade dental alloy packed in the same mould and under the same pressure. The low pressure of 25 kg. per cir. cm. was chosen in order to make the test sufficiently sensitive to reveal defects in even the best amalgam. The magnification is 25 diameters. Fig. 87 shows perspective views of the same cylinders magnified 4 diameters.

In making cylinder S 5584, equal masses of alloy and mercury (*i.e.,* the mercury-alloy ratio was 1.00) were triturated together 2.5 min. The other three cylinders were all made with the mercury-alloy ratio of 1.60; but the trituration times were 0.5, 2.5, and 8.0 min. for S 5578, S 5580, and S 5579, respectively.

Changes in crushing strength produced by changes in amalgamation are shown by Figs. 88, 89, 90, and 91.* Although the results represented were obtained by crushing at uncontrolled room temperatures, and consequently lack the precision attainable with proper temperature control, they indicate sufficiently well the importance of using a high enough mercury-alloy ratio, triturating for a reasonable time, and packing as tightly as possible. Each of

---

*Redrawn for the reader's convenience from Figs. 7, 8, 9, and 11 of my paper on "Metallographic Phenomena Observed in Amalgams," which should be consulted for further details.

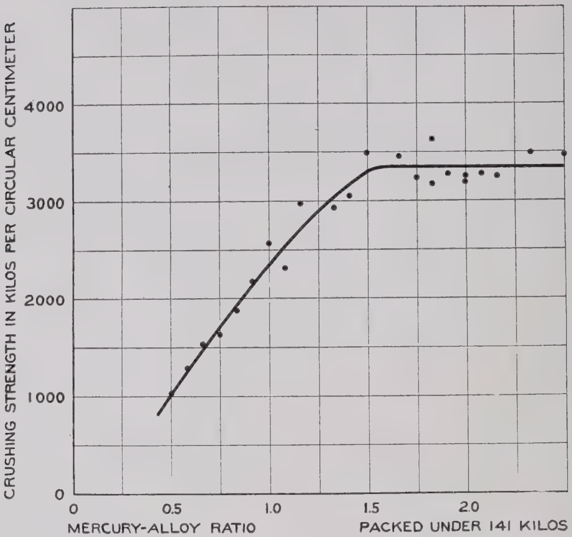


Fig. 88.—Crushing strength of amalgam increased by increasing the amount of mercury that is mixed with a high-grade dental alloy. Full strength not developed when mass of mercury is less than 1.5 times mass of alloy.

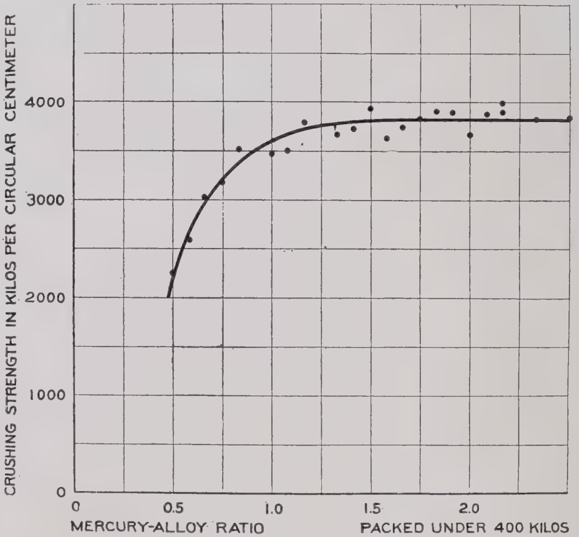


Fig. 89.—Modification of Fig. 88 produced by increasing packing pressure from 141 to 400 kg. per cir. cm.

the test cylinders represented was 1.004 cm. in diameter and was made from 6.00 gm. of the same dental alloy.

Because Fig. 91 indicates that the greatest strength is obtained

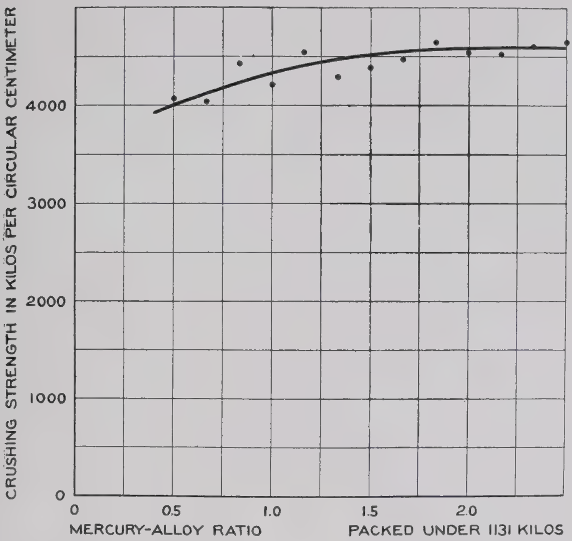


Fig. 90.—Modification of Figs. 88 and 89 by further increase of packing pressure to 1131 kg. per cir. cm.

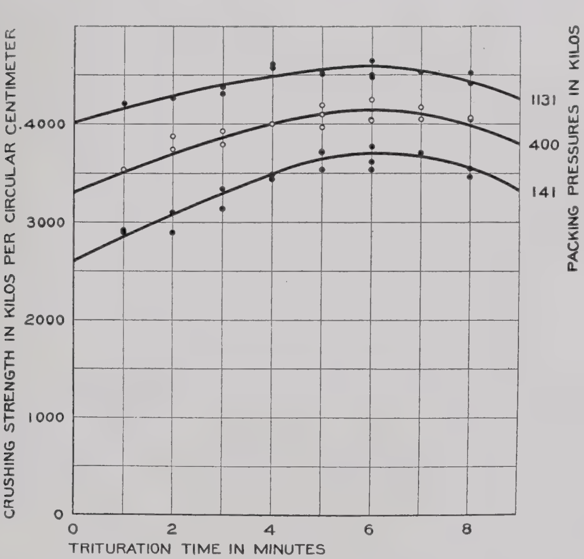


Fig. 91.—Gain in crushing strength produced by increasing trituration time. About 6 minutes seems optimal time for 6-gm. alloy.

with 6.00 gm. alloy when the trituration time is about six minutes, it should by no means be inferred that this is the optimal time when a different mass of alloy is used. With a small mix, six minutes' trituration would be excessive. A safe practical rule for the dentist is to continue trituration from one-fourth to one-half a minute longer than is necessary to produce a smooth, plastic amalgam free from granularity.

Effects of Particle Size and of Packing Pressure. By comminution of a dental alloy into smaller particles the expansion of its amalgam can be changed into a contraction. This is illustrated by Fig. 92.* The three specimens represented were made from particles separated out of the same sample of alloy, and they were all prepared in the same way. But the particles used for specimen R 58 were large enough to be retained on a sieve having 48 meshes to the inch; those used for R 59 passed through a sieve of 200 meshes; those used for R 66 formed a very fine powder obtained by air separation. R 66 shows the first maximum so far depressed that the first and the second minima almost coincide.

The series of curves charted in Figs. 93 to 100, inclusive, form a striking exhibition of the way in which progressive variations in both packing pressure and size of particle can make amalgams from samples taken out of the same batch of a dental alloy yield gradually changing curves of reaction expansion. They also give evidence of the remarkable accuracy attainable in expansion measurements.†

For the investigation in which these expansion measurements formed one element, a large quantity of alloy filings from the same melt was sorted by standard sieves into five samples. The particles of the first sample passed a sieve with 100 meshes and were retained by one with 115 meshes to the inch. The particles of the fifth sample passed a 200-mesh sieve. Unsorted alloy, comprising a mixture of all sizes passing 100 meshes, furnished a sixth sample.‡

The reaction expansion at 37.5° C. was determined for seven specimens from each of the six samples of alloy. The packing pressures under which amalgam from each sample was moulded were increased in geometric progression from 25 to 1600 kg. per cir. cm. In order to obtain the required plasticity, it was necessary to vary the mass of mercury used during trituration from 1.60 times the mass of alloy (with the mixed product and with the samples retained by sieves of 150 meshes or less) to 2.00 times the mass of alloy (with the samples that passed the 200-mesh sieve). Otherwise packing pressure and size of alloy particles were the only factors that were varied.

---

*Fig. 35 of "Metallographic Phenomena Observed in Amalgams."

†Figs. 93 and 94 are taken from the abstract of a paper presented at the Washington meeting of the American Physical Society in April, 1921. (A. W. Gray. "Contractions and Expansions of Amalgams with Time," *Physical Review,* 1921, vol. xviii. pp. 108-113.) From this abstract I freely quote material that illustrates consequences of the hypothesis forming the subject of the present paper.

‡This is the alloy used to show how reaction expansion is influenced by variations in trituration time. Fig. 82 and Table II.

In order to present with greater clearness the gradual changes brought about by systematic variation of packing pressure, all the curves obtained with the alloy that passed the 200-mesh sieve are grouped together in Fig. 93.

The distance from one horizontal line to the next represents a change of 2.5 microns ($\frac{1}{10,000}$ in.) in the diameter of a freely expanding amalgam cylinder 1 cm. in diameter, *i.e.*, a linear expansion of 0.025 per cent. Since an observation was taken every minute during the first seven hours after a cylinder was moulded, the plotted points merge into a continuous line for each specimen. The 42 curves represent more than 20,000 individual observations of diameter change. The change in twenty-four hours is indicated by a single dot at the right of the chart. Subsequent changes were followed for about a year.

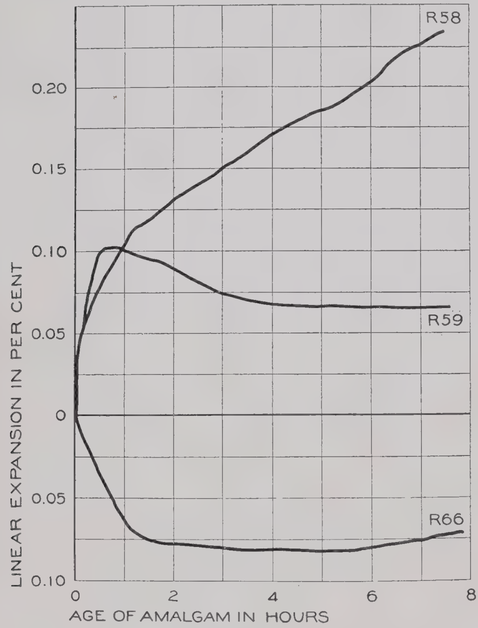


Fig. 92.—Dimensional changes of an amalgam during hardening depend upon size of alloy particles. R 58 retained by sieve of 48 meshes to inch; R 59 passed 200-mesh sieve; R 66 from very fine particles obtained by air separation.

The charts show that each increase in packing pressure is accompanied by an increase in the rate of reaction (solution of the alloy in the mercury followed by combination and by crystallization of the amalgam), each prominent feature of the expansion making its appearance earlier than in the preceding curve. The influence of pressure change is very much greater at the lower pressures. For example, the amalgam from 200-mesh alloy (Fig. 93) packed under 25 kg. per cir. cm. requires about a month and a half to reach the first maximum. Doubling this pressure results in the maximum being reached during the first twenty-four hours. Another doubling shortens the time to about two and one-half hours. Additional increments of pressure progressively hasten the appearance of this maximum until under 1600 kg. it is reached in less than ten minutes. At the same time, the increase of pressure progressively obliterates the initial rapid descent preceding the first minimum, and it finally obliterates some of the following rise toward the first maximum. It also hastens the appearance of the second minimum, which is

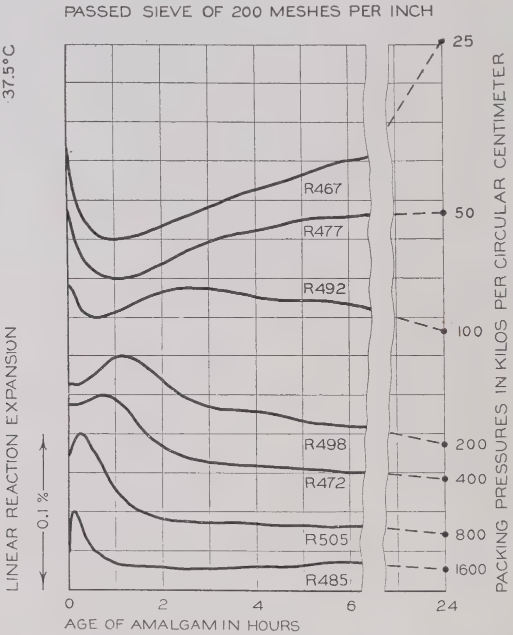


Fig. 93.—Influence of packing pressure on the reaction expansion of a dental amalgam made from an alloy containing silver, tin, copper, and zinc. Approximately 69 per cent silver. Fine particles sifted from same alloy represented by Figs. 82 to 87 and 94 to 100 inclusive.

reached in about three weeks with 50 kg. and in about three hours with 1600 kg. With this alloy, the rise from the second minimum to the final maximum is very slight, being less than 0.1 per cent in the course of a year. Any initial contraction caused by either fine cut of alloy or high pressure, or both combined, was always made up by the time the amalgam became apparently stable, the final diameter of every test cylinder being a few hundredths of a per cent larger than when measurements were begun immediately after the cylinder was moulded.

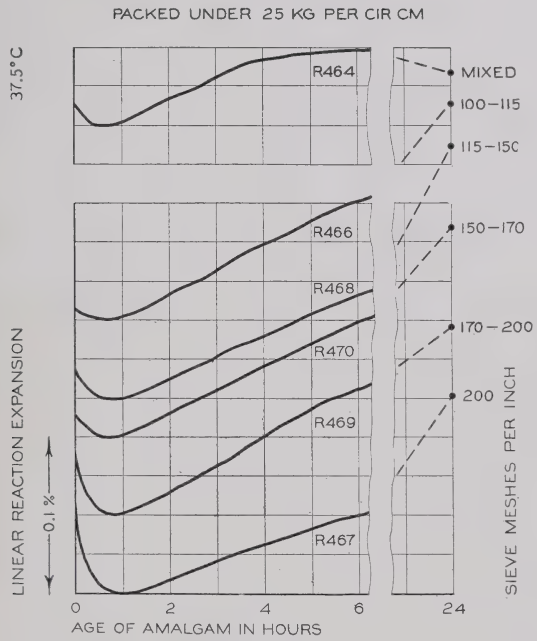


Fig. 94.—Influence of size of alloy particles on reaction expansion. Amalgam packed under 25 kg. per cir. cm.

Fig. 94 shows how variations in size of alloy particles affect the reaction expansion of amalgams packed under 25 kg. per cir. cm. The following charts show similar results for amalgams packed under other pressures.

The figures to the right of each curve give the number of meshes per inch of the sieve that passed and the sieve that retained the alloy used for the amalgam represented by the curve. The curve at the top of the chart was obtained from the unsorted dental alloy, that is to say, from alloy in which particles of all the various sizes represented by the other curves were mixed in proportions that yielded a commercial product of the highest grade.

The control of the reaction expansion produced by this blending of various sized particles is evident on comparing the curve of specimen R 464 with the other curves on the same chart, especially when the comparison is extended to include observations made at intervals during a period of several months. For example, specimen R 467 expanded 0.18 per cent beyond its first minimum, or 0.11 per cent beyond its diameter when observations began a few minutes after moulding, before it attained its first maximum a month and a half later. The other amalgams from the sorted particles of alloy behaved very much like this, although gradual changes in the expansion curve are noticeable as the alloy becomes progressively coarser.

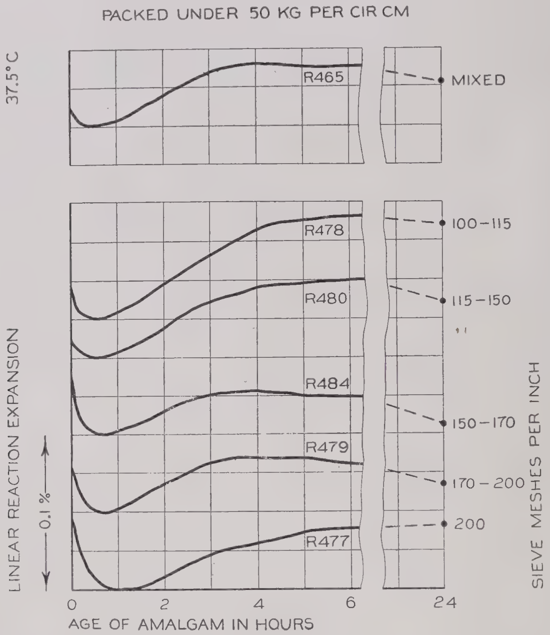


Fig. 95.—Modification of Fig. 94 by increasing packing pressure to 50 kg. per cir. cm.

In contrast with the specimens from sorted particles, R 464 attains its first maximum in a few hours, with an expansion of less than 0.05 per cent beyond its first minimum, or about 0.03 per cent beyond its initial diameter. Contraction of about 0.02 per cent to the second minimum, and final expansion almost too slow for reliable measurement, leave the amalgam at the end of a year about 0.05 per cent larger than when first measured. The same amalgam when packed under 50 kg. gives an expansion curve that is practically the same in all respects as the curve of R 464.

The limitation of dimensional changes exhibited by the curve of R 464 is not an accident of experimental procedure. It is a direct consequence of blending alloy particles that differ in size; this is shown by many almost identical curves obtained during routine tests of different lots of similarly made alloy. When the particles of a dental alloy are graded in size so as to reduce to a minimum the volume of the voids existing among them before amalgamation, it is reasonable to expect that even after these voids have been modified by trituration, less liquid mercury would be retained within them after the excess is squeezed out during packing. The mercury contents actually found in the test cylinders used for these expansion measurements support this expectation.

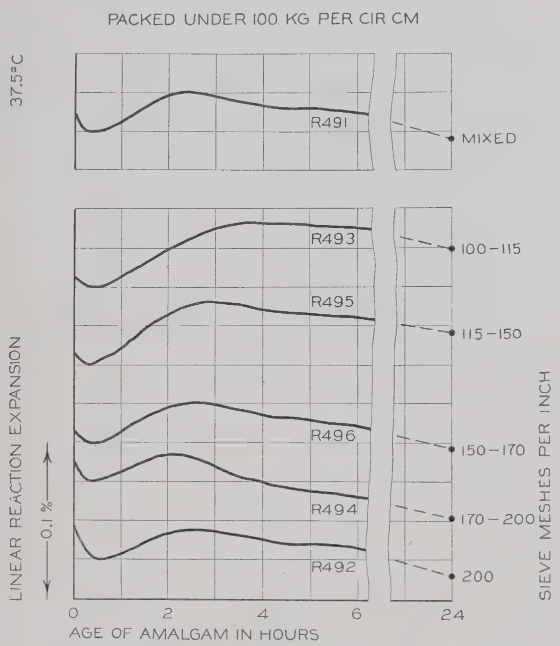


Fig. 96.—Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 100 kg. per cir. cm.

Typical structures of amalgams from four well-known American high-silver dental alloys are exhibited by Figs. 86, 101, 102, 103, and 104 (pages 176 and 177). Each test cylinder was prepared from 2.00 gm. alloy amalgamated strictly according to the directions furnished by its manufacturer, and was packed in the same steel mould under the identical conditions stated in describing Figs. 83, 84, 85, 86, and 87. Differences in quality are obvious.

The blended alloy previously described in detail is represented by specimen S 5580, Figs. 86 and 104. This alloy yields a fine-grained, uniform, plastic amalgam that facilitates good adaptation. When properly manipulated, volume changes during hardening are negligible. The strength is high. There is no flow under masticatory stresses. Being properly annealed, neither the alloy nor its amalgam deteriorates with lapse of time, provided it is kept reasonably clean and is not subjected to gross abuse, such as storing in an unusually warm place or exposure to an atmosphere contaminated by chemicals. By the procedure described on page 180, its setting rate can be easily controlled by the dentist so as to afford ample time for making large restorations.

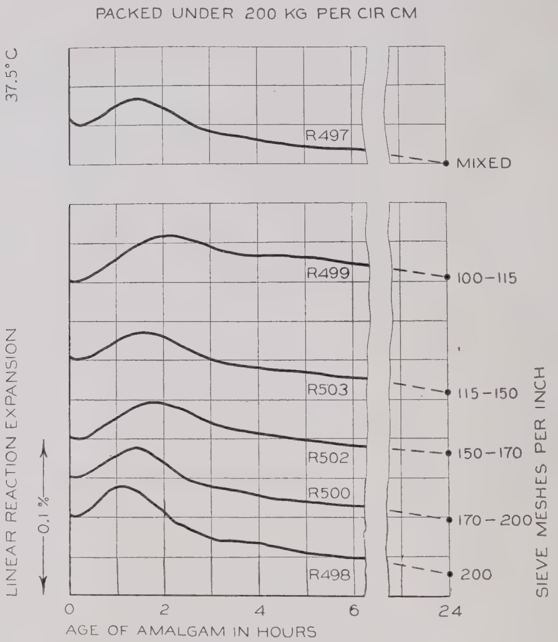


Fig. 97.—Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 200 kg. per cir. cm.

Specimen S 5569, Figs. 101 and 104, was made from a very finely cut alloy. Its close structure suggests good quality, but dilatometric measurements show excessive contraction during hardening. Moreover, although the alloy contains about 68 per cent of silver, a given weight of it yields a considerably smaller volume of amalgam than is yielded by the same weight of the previously described alloy. In this respect, as well as in its excessive contraction, it resembles ordinary low-grade alloys, which also yield fine-grained, smooth amalgams.

Specimen S 5560, Figs. 102 and 104, shows a rather coarse-grained amalgam, traversed by numerous cracks and folds that hinder good condensation and close adaptation to the walls of the cavity, as may be seen by the fact that the amalgam has failed to take an impression of the base-line angle of the cavity, although the cylinder was condensed under the same packing pressure used in condensing the other cylinders of the group. Large, long-continued dimensional changes characterize amalgams from this alloy. In one case the amalgam reached its first minimum in half an hour, after a linear contraction of about 0.04 per cent. It then expanded 0.01 per cent to its first maximum, which was reached within three hours after moulding. The second minimum was reached in about a day,

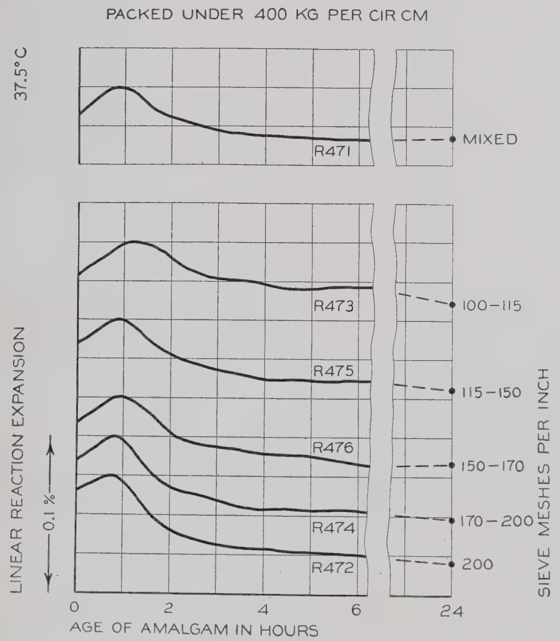


Fig. 98.—Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 400 kg. per cir. cm.

after a contraction of 0.02 per cent below the first minimum, or 0.06 per cent below the diameter when observations began. After this, the amalgam steadily expanded toward its second maximum, which was not reached in eight months, when observations had to be discontinued because the cylinder had grown so large that readjustment of the dilatometer would have been necessary for further measurement. The diameter of the specimen had increased 1.28 per cent and was still expanding. Since the growth characteristic of amalgams from this alloy does not become evident until after several days, it is easy to understand how it has apparently been overlooked by previous investigators.

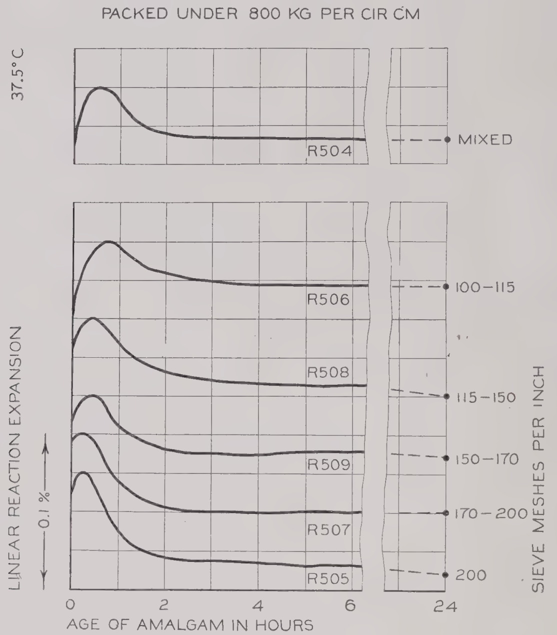


Fig. 99.—Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 800 kg. per cir. cm.

Specimen S 5571, Figs. 103 and 104, was made from a rather coarsely cut alloy, that makes a "dry" mix, so difficult to condense that it requires heavy mallet-packing to obtain even fair adaptation to the cavity walls. Note how this amalgam also failed to give an impression of the cavity. The amalgam is permeated with countless cracks and large cavities. The alloy is improperly annealed. It changes with age.

Moulding under a greater packing pressure would have improved the structures of all these amalgams, and it would have rendered the differences among them less noticeable; but a greater mean effective packing pressure is not always feasible in making an amalgam tooth-restoration. The smoothing-out of surface defects that will naturally be done when packing test specimens by hand-pressure or by mallet blows on dental instruments will, of course, improve the external appearances. One must not assume that a good superficial appearance indicates absence of internal defects.

That defects of the kind shown by Figs. 83 to 87 and 102 to 104 inclusive are quite as serious as excessive contraction will be apparent to anyone who will take the trouble to examine the concealed portions of a considerable number of fillings in extracted teeth. The photographs show that it is easier for the dentist to secure good adaptation with some alloys than with others.

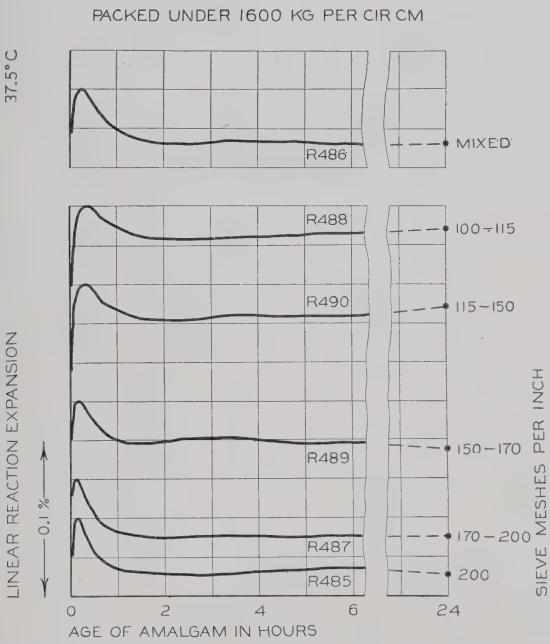


Fig. 100.—Influence of size of particles when amalgam is packed under 1600 kg. per cir. cm.

Figs. 94 to 100 show that, as the packing pressure is increased, the effect of variation in size of alloy particles becomes progressively less.

The contraction found during the early stages of hardening when amalgam from a properly adjusted dental alloy is packed under a

Bottom surfaces of same dental amalgam cylinders shown in Fig. 104
× 25. Oblique illumination.

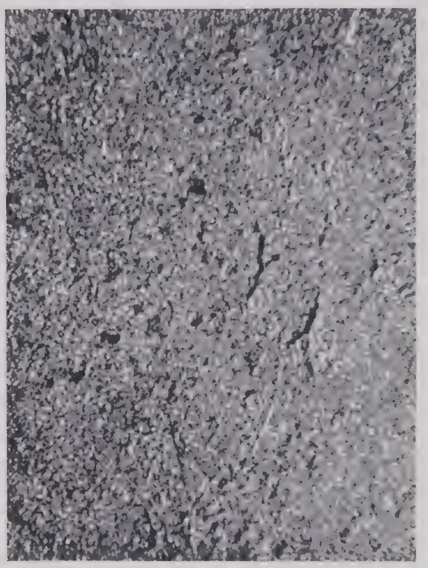


Fig. 86

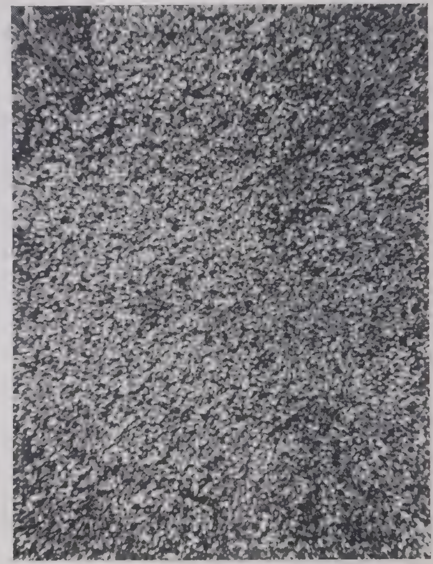


Fig. 101

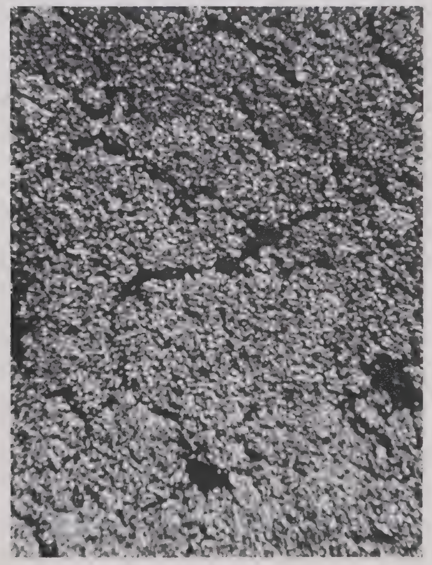


Fig. 102

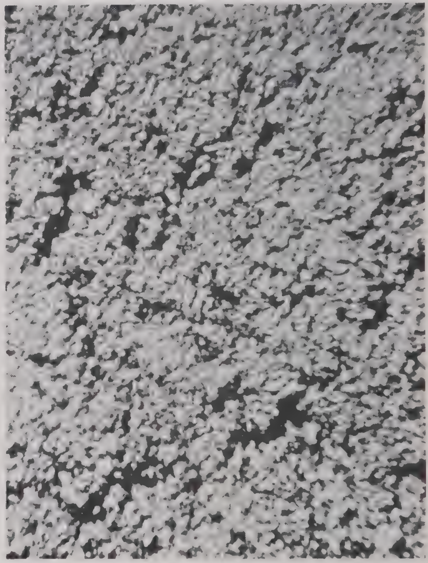


Fig. 103

Fig. 86.—Good alloy correctly amalgamated yields fine-grained, uniform, plastic amalgam that facilitates good adaption to cavity surfaces. Negligible volume changes. High strength. No flow under masticatory stresses. S 5580. Fig. 87 and Fig. 104.

Fig. 101.—Close structure suggests good quality, but this amalgam contracts excessively during hardening. Alloy yields small volume of amalgam. S 5569, Fig. 104.

Fig. 102.—Rather coarse-grained amalgam, traversed by numerous cracks and folds. Large long-continued dimensional changes characterize amalgams from this alloy. S 5560, Fig. 104.

Fig. 103.—Amalgam from rather coarsely cut alloy, that makes a "dry" mix, so difficult to condense that it requires heavy mallet-packing to obtain even fair adaptation to cavity walls. S 5571, Fig. 104. [Gray.]

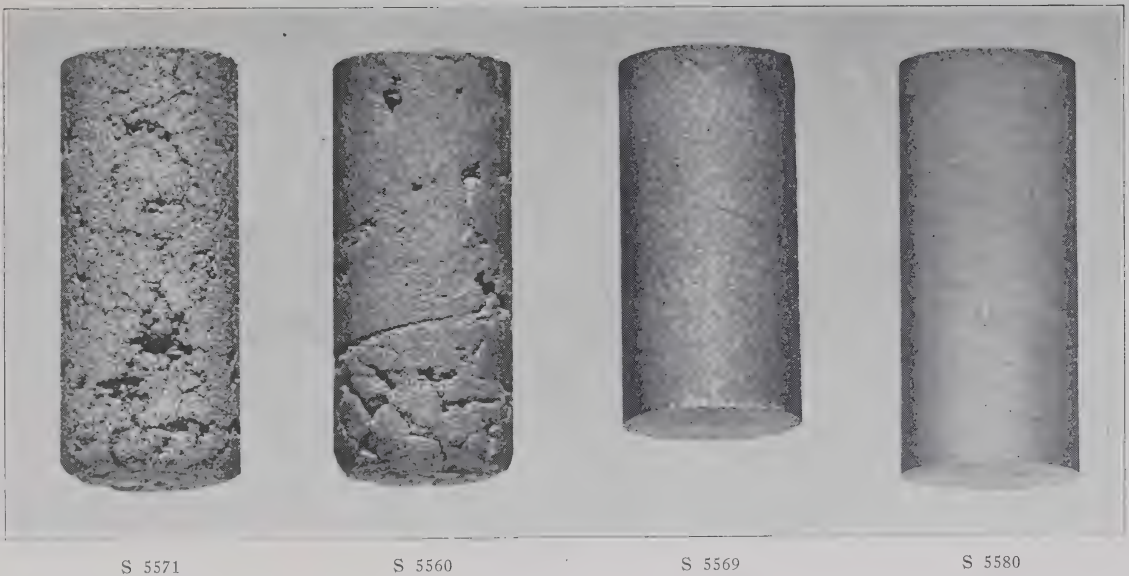


Fig. 104.—Amalgams from four well-known American high-silver dental alloys. Each was amalgamated strictly according to directions furnished by its manufacturer, and packed under same pressure in same mould. Note differences in volume from same weight of alloy. Cracks and folds hinder good condensation and close adaption to cavity walls; shown by failures to take good impressions of base-line angle of cavity. ×4. Bottom views of same specimens ×25 are shown in Figs. 86, 101, 102, and 103.

[*Gray.*]

very high pressure does not in any way prevent the making of a tight tooth filling, because packing hard enough to cause contraction in such an amalgam will stretch the resilient dentin more than enough to make it follow the slight shrinkage of the filling. In fact, moderate contraction after very tight packing is an advantage, in that it relieves to some extent the straining of the tooth. The tighter the packing, the better the filling, because heavy packing pressure not only adds to the strength of the amalgam, but also shortens considerably the time required for it to complete all its dimensional changes and become stable. Moreover, it secures much better adaptation of the filling to the cavity walls and, consequently, reduces liability to leakage.

The packing pressures used in this investigation extend from well within the dental range to considerably beyond it. The mean effective packing pressures employed by different individuals, in condensing amalgam fillings with dental instruments, vary widely. I found the average for four individuals to be 68 kg. per cir. cm. The average deviation from this was 64 per cent; the difference between the highest (234 kg.) and the lowest (17 kg.) was 321 per cent.* Such deviations taken in conjunction with the pressure effects shown in Fig. 93 indicate that, regardless of the accuracy of the particular device employed for measuring the dimensional changes, too much reliance must not be placed on comparisons of dental alloys that are based on expansion tests of amalgams packed by hand pressure or by mallet blows.

The mercury contents of finished test cylinders of the amalgams represented by Figs. 93 to 100 were found to increase regularly as the alloy particles became progressively smaller. Although increase of packing pressure from 25 to 1600 kg. per cir. cm. reduced the mercury content in an amalgam of the coarsest sample from about 55 per cent to about 30 per cent, change of particle size to that passing the 200-mesh sieve increased the mercury content by only about 2.5 per cent. This increase appeared to be independent of the packing pressure, in accordance with the explanation given on pages 148 and 149. The blended sample regularly yielded almost the lowest mercury contents at all packing pressures, apparently because grading of the particles according to

---

*See reply to discussion of my paper entitled "Transition Phenomena in Amalgams," *Transactions of the American Institute of Mining and Metallurgical Engineers,* 1920, vol. lxiv. p. 507, and reprinted in *Journal of the National Dental Association,* 1921, vol. viii. p. 491.

size reduced the voids available for retaining the liquid mercury-tin solution after the amalgam was condensed by pressure.

A simple calculation shows that if a dental alloy contains 68.8 per cent silver, like the alloy used in the investigation just discussed, there need be no fear of retaining a deleterious quantity of mercury in any tooth-filling made with it that is packed into the cavity with reasonable tightness. 3 × 108 gm. silver combines with 4 × 200 gm. mercury to form (324 + 800) gm. Ag_3Hg_4. Therefore, the mass of mercury that can be used by a dental alloy to form Ag_3Hg_4 without leaving after reaction is completed any excess to be retained in a soft solid solution of mercury in tin is 800/324 = 2.47 times the mass of silver contained in the alloy. Consequently, the mercury that can combine with the silver in an alloy containing 68.8 per cent of the latter metal is 2.47 × 0.688 = 1.70 times the mass of the alloy. The retention of 1.70 gm. mercury per gm. of alloy would yield 2.70 gm. amalgam. The mercury content of the amalgam would, therefore, be 1.70/2.70 = 63 per cent.

The use of a higher mercury-alloy ratio to facilitate amalgamation would not under any reasonable dental procedure result in retaining an excess of mercury. Even when a sample of alloy fine enough to pass the 200-mesh sieve was triturated four minutes with 2.00 times its mass of mercury, and packed under only 25 kg. per cir. cm., the mercury content of the resulting test cylinder reached only 60.4 per cent. The highest mercury content found in a cylinder from the blended commercial product was only 55.2 per cent, leaving as a margin of safety about 8 per cent of the mass of amalgam, or about 8/55 = 14.5 per cent of the mass of mercury retained under this low packing pressure. The presence in the alloy of 5 per cent copper, which can also unite with mercury to form a strong amalgam, must increase the margin of safety considerably.

Effects of Temperature During Hardening. Figs. 29 and 30 of my paper on "Metallographic Phenomena Observed in Amalgams" show how both combination and crystallization become retarded upon reducing the temperature during hardening from 37.5° to 25° C. By cooling to 5° or 10° C., I have produced such retardation that it takes many hours to establish the existence of a slow contraction following the flat maximum in the curve of reaction expansion.

If a soft, freshly mixed dental amalgam is placed upon carbon dioxide snow, it will harden rapidly by freezing; but reaction will be so retarded that the amalgam will resume its plasticity as soon as it is warmed to room temperature. Reaction followed by hardening will then proceed as usual. In this way normal hardening of the amalgam can be postponed for a long time.

Commercial application of cooling by means of CO_2 snow has been attempted for controlling the setting of dental amalgams in order to give the dentist ample time for completing a large restoration with a high-grade, and consequently rapidly setting, alloy. But the attempt does not seem to have been successful. The method is unnecessarily cumbrous.

A simpler method of controlling setting time is to triturate the alloy with plenty of mercury and to leave the excess mercury in the mix, to be expressed from each small portion of amalgam just before it is placed in the tooth cavity. Further excess brought to the surface of the filling during packing is removed as it appears. This method of maintaining an amalgam in a workable condition affords ample control for all practical purposes.

Precautions Necessary in Measuring. Upon several occasions I have pointed out that measurements of reaction expansions may lead to erroneous conclusions unless particular attention is paid to the control of influencing conditions.*

Accurate measuring instruments of sufficient sensitivity are, of course, necessary for obtaining reliable results in any investigation. But instrumental accuracy is wasted, and frequently misleading, if measurable parasitic effects of unknown magnitude are not excluded. Liability to misleading indications is particularly great when very sensitive detectors are used.

Control of temperature is nearly always important; but it is often neglected because it costs some extra trouble. Temperature variations affect the dimensions of both the measuring apparatus and the specimen under investigation. Usually it is easier to eliminate the variations than it is to apply corrections to the observations, particularly since it is difficult, if not impossible, to estimate some corrections even approximately.

Since the linear thermal expansivity of a dental amalgam is about 0.000025 per ° C., a temperature variation of 1° will change the length of a 1-cm. specimen 0.25 micron. Results obtained at uncontrolled room temperatures with an interferometer sensitive to 0.005 micron are, therefore, not nearly so reliable as results ob-

---

**Loc. cit.*

tained with a less but sufficiently sensitive instrument and accurate control of temperature. The dilatometer used for obtaining the curves shown in this paper is accurate to 0.05 micron; the temperature of the specimen during measurements seldom varies 0.01° from 37.5° C., or from whatever other temperature is selected.

Even when effects of thermal expansion can be disregarded, the investigator of dental amalgams should never forget that a moderate change of temperature may produce marked effects upon such processes as diffusion, solution, chemical combination, and crystallization. Since the dimensional changes observable during hardening depend so much upon the rates at which all these processes occur, it is hardly safe to assume that temperature control may be neglected because a few short-time trials at differing temperatures fail to show pronounced effects. A small change in composition or in manipulation may result in an amalgam that is far more sensitive. Since dental amalgams are used at the nearly constant temperature of the human mouth, most tests for the purpose of comparing different dental alloys should be made at a constant standard temperature not far from that of the mouth. I use 37.5° C.

Control of amalgamation procedure and of packing procedure is often even more important than control of temperature. This should be apparent from the experimental data presented on pages 158 to 179.

Finally, since diffusion, solution, chemical combination, and crystallization proceed very slowly in solid substances, dental amalgams under investigation should be observed at regular intervals until it becomes reasonably certain that no further changes of importance will occur. Failure to realize the possibility of significant cumulative effects from long-continued retarded reactions apparently accounts for conclusions that some inexperienced investigators have drawn from their short-time tests of dental amalgam alloys.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE USE OF CEMENTS IN FILLING TEETH.

Varieties. There are five main varieties of cement available for use in the operation of filling teeth; silicate cement, oxyphosphate of zinc, oxychloride of zinc, sulphate of zinc, and oxyphosphate of copper.

Cavity Preparation for cement when the entire filling is to be of cement is not unlike that for any other filling, except that the cavosurface angle is left the same as that produced by the cleavage of the enamel, omitting the marginal bevel. The cavity should be given the usual retention form, and the matrix must be employed in cavities to supply the missing wall that the cement may be introduced with pressure to condense and create close adaptation to walls.

The rules given for dryness in the manipulation of gold and amalgam are also to be observed in cement filling.

The silicate filling has been evolved in an effort to produce a filling that would more nearly harmonize with the color of the teeth; to better withstand the action of the oral fluids and the abrading effects of mastication. Synthetic porcelain is a prominent illustration of the silicates. Some of the silicates are now used as independent fillings and are not suitable for use as a cement. This material as a silicate filling is given full consideration in Chapter XXV.

Oxyphosphate of Zinc has many uses in the cavities of teeth as a partial filling and in some instances for the complete filling. Being a poor conductor, it makes an excellent agent as an intermediate between metal fillings and closely approached pulps.

Its adhesive quality gives it great value as a means of adding retention to all kinds of metal fillings. This quality together with its harmonious color with tooth substance makes it invaluable for lining weakened enamel walls which have lost much of their supporting dentine.

Its Chief Fault is its tendency to dissolve in the fluids of the mouth, which renders it comparatively temporary. However there is a considerable variation in its behavior in different mouths; in some instances it wears for years.

Oxychloride of Zinc is indicated in pulpless teeth to fill the pulp chamber, after the canals have been previously filled with gutta-percha, and for the lining of cavities for the preservation of color where adhesiveness is not of importance. It is not indicated in teeth with closely approached vital pulp, or as a root filling, on account of its irritating properties.

Sulphate of Zinc, when pure, is the least irritating of all cements and is one of the best materials for pulp protection. A pulp capping of this material is of most universal application.

Oxyphosphate of Copper is especially indicated in remote cavities on the necks of teeth occasioned by gum recession. Cavities which are so ill-defined that the use of amalgam or gutta-percha is difficult, may be successfully filled with this preparation of copper.

It can be made to adhere very tenaciously to the walls of a cavity, thus obviating much cutting. Oxyphosphate of copper is also indicated in the small cavities in the deciduous teeth.

It is claimed that this material exerts a therapeutic influence upon the tooth substance, thus preventing further decay.

Manipulation of Oxyphosphate of Zinc Cement. The method of mixing this cement is not in the least difficult, yet certain details are essential. The slab, preferably of smooth glass, should be clean. The spatula should be flat with the side slightly convex.

Stellite is the best material as it is not acted upon by the liquid. The liquid and powder should be placed upon the slab separately, the drop of liquid being carried there by the use of a small glass pipette. The spatula should never be immersed in the bottle to obtain more fluid as this would destroy the efficiency of the liquid. Crystallized portions should be carefully wiped off the mouth of the bottle as soon as detected.

Plan of Spatulating. The powder should be added to the liquid a little at a time and each portion thoroughly rubbed by a swinging circular movement of the spatula upon the slab. This rubbing should not be rapid or vigorous. For lining cavities, where thin layers are desired which are very adhesive, the cement will prove correctly mixed when it shows slight stringiness and when the first stickiness appears, as shown by the slight resistance offered the spatula in its movement over the slab. Where the entire filling is to be of cement, more powder should be added and the spatulation continued till the cement materially resists spatulation and the mass is the consistency of freshly made putty. When cement is of the consistency desired no time should be lost in placing it in position, and it should be allowed to harden undisturbed. If the cement is to form the entire filling and permanency is desired, it should be crowded to place with some force and rapidly shaped up. As soon as crystallization begins it should not be disturbed by manipulation till it has fully hardened, when it should be polished with fine strips and disks.

CHAPTER XXV.

MANIPULATION OF THE SILICATES IN THE MAKING OF A FILLING.

Definition. *Materials for Silicate Fillings* are marketed under trade names which no doubt suit the purposes of the various manufacturers, and there can be no just criticism offered from the standpoint of the tradesman. However some confusion exists among the members of the dental profession as to the correct term to use which is broad enough to cover all of this class of fillings and not designate any special make. We will therefore consider some definitions from Webster's ''Unabridged Dictionary.''

Silicate (a noun) ''is a salt composed of silicic acid and a base.'' Silicate from which we make fillings is made by silicatization.

Silicatization (a noun) ''is the process of combining with silica, so as to change to a silicate,'' which is, chemically speaking, a synthetic process,—''the uniting of elements to form a compound.''

Porcelain (a noun). ''A fine translucent kind of earthenware,'' named after the shell ''Porcellana'' ''either on account of its smoothness and whiteness, or because it was believed to be made from it.''

Cement (a noun) when used as a noun is, ''Any substance used for making bodies adhere to each other, as mortar, glue, etc.''

Cement (a transitive verb). ''To unite by the application of a substance which causes bodies to adhere together.''

Cement (an intransitive verb). ''To unite or become solid; to unite and cohere.''

Cementation (a noun). ''The act of uniting by a suitable substance.'' Chemical definition: ''A process which consists in surrounding a solid body with the powder of other substances, and heating the whole to a degree not sufficient to cause fusion, the physical properties of the body being changed by chemical combination with the powder; thus iron becomes steel by cementation with charcoal and green glass porcelain, by cementation with sand.''

Enamel (a noun). ''A substance of the nature of glass, but more fusible and nearly opaque,—with a variety of colors; also other materials used for giving a highly polished ornamental surface.'' Anatomical definition: ''The smooth, hard substance which covers the crown or visible part of a tooth, overlying the dentine.''

From the foregoing references to Webster it would seem that the term ''silicate filling'' is correct when used to name this kind of filling material as a class and when used to restore lost tooth substance.

The use of the word "cement" as a part of the name, hence a noun, is incorrect unless the substance is used to "make bodies adhere together" and should be eliminated from the names of the silicates and other compounds intended for a filling *per se,* except when adhesive properties are taken advantage of.

The term "synthetic" is correctly used when applied to any of the plastics now in use in dentistry, with a possible exception in amalgam, as chemists are divided in their opinions as to exactly what takes place in amalgamation. The use of the word "Porcelain" as a part of the name, its being correct or incorrect, depends entirely upon our understanding of the degree of heat necessary to bring about cementation. (See definition.) This is accomplished at comparatively low and ordinary temperatures with most of the makes. All are assisted in the process by temperatures slightly above that of the body, with one maker advising the melted paraffine bath during the period of setting. The use of the term "Enamel" is correct provided it is a "substance of the nature of glass, more fusible, nearly opaque, used for giving a polished ornamental surface," and the prefix of "Artificial" provided it is "a substitute" for the natural covering of a tooth's crown. It would seem that the silicates are all synthetic, that they all partake of the nature of porcelain,

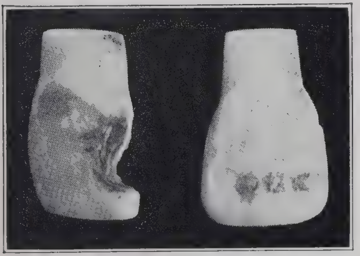


Fig. 105.

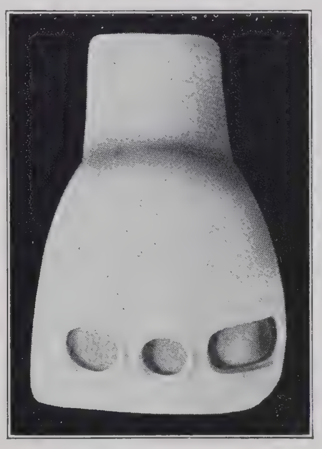


Fig. 106.

Fig. 105.—Suitable cavities for the use of silicate fillings.

Fig. 106.—A Class One cavity on the labial of a central incisor properly prepared for a silicate filling. The decays are shown in Fig. 105.

that they are a trade enamel, that they are artificial when replaceing the lost enamel of human teeth, that they are cement when used to hold a filling of other material in the tooth or when the material itself adheres to the tooth, and that they are not cement (a noun) when used as a filling *per se*.

The author therefore takes the position that the filling material under consideration is "silicate" as the correct manipulation of most makes eliminates adhesion to the cavity. Those which adhere to the cavity or will retain fillings of other materials in the cavity are for that reason a silicate cement. It therefore follows that with the use of silicate there must be retentive form in cavity preparation. At this time we find the best illustrations of this class of silicate in "De Trey's Synthetic Porcelain," Ascher's "Artificial Enamel," and "Smith's Certified Enamel." The last may be used as a cement.

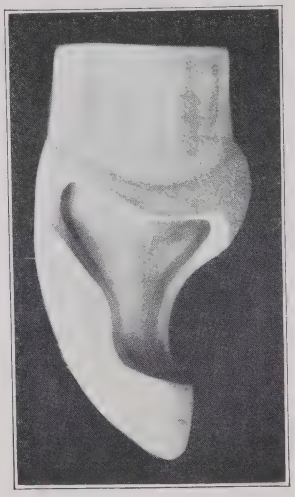


Fig. 107.

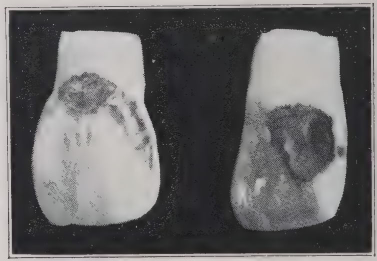


Fig. 108.

Fig. 107.—Extensive Class Three cavity properly prepared for silicate filling. Decay shown in Fig. 105.

Fig. 108.—A Class Five and a Class Three Cavity suitable for the use of silicate as a filling.

Cavity Preparation is quite similar to that for an amalgam filling and is here considered in the order of cavity procedure.

Gaining Access. The access required for the silicate filling is the same as that for any other plastic filling, as far as its introduction is considered and the conditions sought at the time the filling is completed. Contact point in Classes Two, Three and Four is just as essential, but is harder to maintain due to interproximal wear. It would therefore follow that the primary contact should be greater and broader. In other words, if we are to use the marble contact it should be the contacting of larger marbles than in the more durable metal fillings. To put it in other words, the convexity of the filling's surface should be the segment of a larger circle than the metal filling. Proper separation is essential.

Outline Form. In the consideration of outline form, the same rules should apply as when using any other filling. We should extend cavity margins until all surface decay has been included. With other filling materials, we sometimes falter in this because of the unsightly results, but with silicate, when the color has been properly chosen, there should be no hesitancy, as large fillings are generally as little observed as small ones, especially on flat labial and buccal surfaces. When fissures and sulcate grooves are encountered, they should always be included in the outline, as a leaky filling will result at the triangular space formed where the sulcate grooves meet the filling.

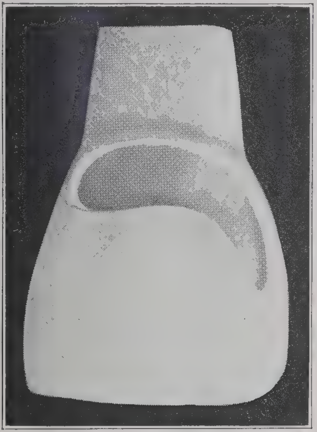


Fig. 109.

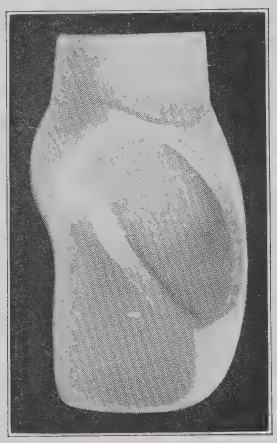


Fig. 110.

Fig. 109.—A Class Five cavity properly prepared for a silicate filling. The decay is shown in Fig. 108.

Fig. 110.—A Class Three cavity, lingual approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling. The decay is shown in Fig. 108.

Resistance Form. In dealing with resistance to the crushing strain, we have a greater problem to solve than in the use of almost any other material. The edge of the filling is more easily broken, and after some months or years of wear there is great danger of exposure of the cavo-surface angle. It is therefore necessary to lay

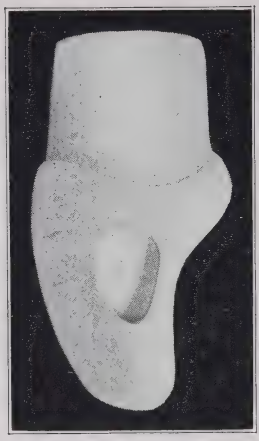


Fig. 111.

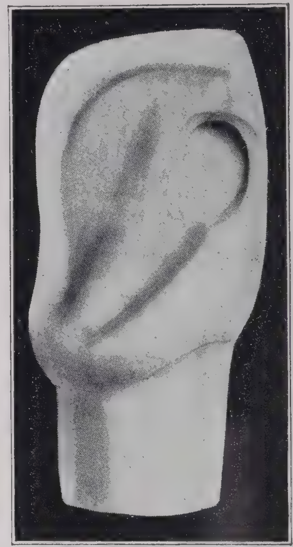


Fig. 112.

Fig. 111.—A small Class Three cavity, labial approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling.

Fig. 112.—A small Class Three cavity, lingual approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling.

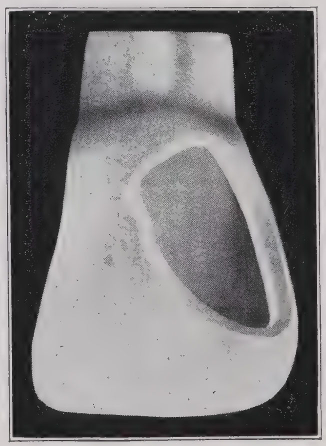


Fig. 113.

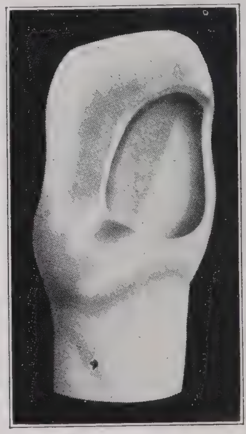


Fig. 114.

Fig. 113.—A large Class Three cavity, labial approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling. Note the irregular outline on the labial. This is not objectionable, for many times an irregular outline hides a slight deviation from the proper color.

Fig. 114.—A large Class Three cavity, lingual approach, properly prepared for a silicate filling. Note the fact that this cavity has two axial walls. This is a good form of preparation in vital cases.

the cavity outline in areas subject to as little stress as possible. In locations subject to great liability to stress, it is necessary to extend the outline until full-length enamel rods, supported by sound dentine, have been reached and then beyond that to a location not subject to the travel of the cusps of opposing teeth in the process of articulation. It is not necessary to pay much attention to developmental grooves, for when these grooves are normally formed they are fully as strong as the material in hand. It is most important that all enamel eminences be avoided, as the material is quite friable and offers very little support to the cavo-surface angle.

Retention Form. Provision against the tipping strain is the same as for other fillings and is more like that for amalgam. This material only reaches its maximum strength to resist dissolution and the crushing strain when it has been so thickly mixed that it has lost much or all of its adhesive qualities. Therefore, the rules which apply to cavity preparation in reference to retention form would be the same as in the use of amalgam. We must have flat walls excepting the axial, flat seats of generous proportions and definite angles.

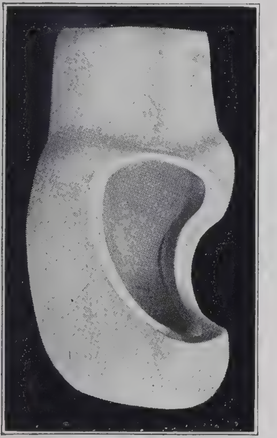


Fig. 115.

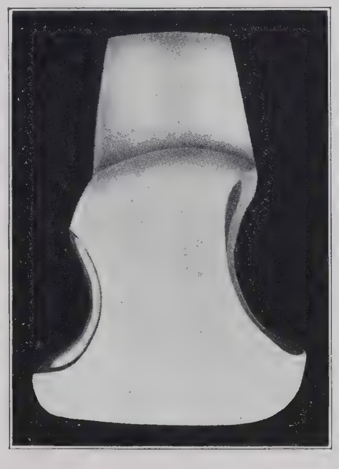


Fig. 116.

Fig. 115.—A large Class Three cavity properly prepared for a silicate filling. Note the small amount of dentine yet remaining near the incisal angle. While this angle can properly remain when using a silicate filling, it would be entirely out of the question when using cohesive gold.

Fig. 116.—Two extensive Class Three cavities properly prepared for silicate fillings. In both of these cavities the dentine has been practically all removed at the incisal angles. Cases like these may be filled with silicate but should be regarded as temporary in a large majority of the cases. The retention of these angles after filling will depend entirely upon the amount of force to which they were subjected. They would be comparatively permanent in cases of irregularity when that condition placed these angles in a position removed from stress in occlusion and articulation.

Convenience Form. This step in cavity preparation for the silicate filling, as with other plastics, comes in for only a minimum consideration, as it is seldom necessary in the use of this material to make any changes to facilitate the making of the filling, for when other rules have been followed we find ample convenience for its introduction.

Removal of Remaining Decay. There is one major reason why all softened dentine should be removed from the cavity walls. The decalcified portion of tooth substance is always saturated with the acid of tooth decay,—lactic acid. Experience has proved that the crystallizing silicate will absorb this acid, resulting in a filling of weak structure. It would therefore follow that no softened dentine be allowed to remain in the cavity.

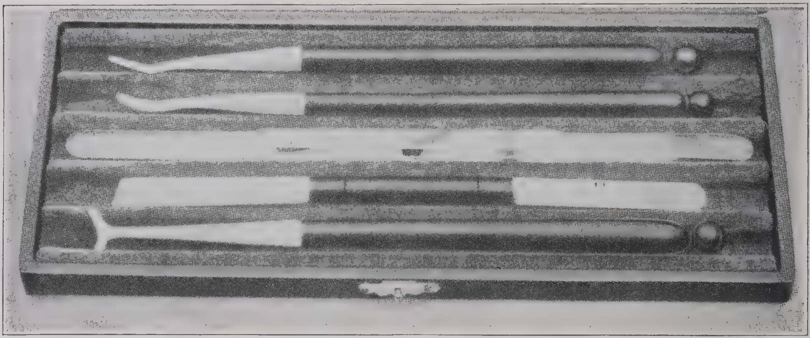


Fig. 117.—A small set of instruments for manipulating silicate.

Finishing of Enamel Walls. With other fillings it has been found advisable to bevel the enamel margins from 6 to 10 degrees centigrade. With all silicate fillings, this beveling seems to make an additional weakness and should be avoided as it will cause the filling to break at the margin, even though the procedure results in an imperfect cavity, from a scientific standpoint. We should determine that we have full-length rods and that we have found their direction by complete cleavage and then omit the beveling.

Toilet of the Cavity. To the ordinary toilet given for other fillings should be added the varnishing of the dentine walls, as a precaution against the material absorbing either acid or moisture from the walls or the absorption by drying dentinal walls of the fluid part of the filling, due to excessively desiccated dentine.

Rubber Dam. The application of the rubber dam, or other means equally as efficient, should have taken place following partial outline form. Prior to adjusting the rubber dam, the color or combination of colors should have been selected, as the opinion formed after the rubber dam has been in place for a short time is worthless as a guide to the proper shade to be used. During the early experience with this material, with each operator, the shade guide should be frequently used as an educator, but in a few months, the operator should begin to be so familiar with the resulting colors that no shade guide is necessary.

Making the Filling. When cavity preparation is completed, the proper material and instruments for making the filling should be placed in a handy position. Absolute cleanliness is imperative, particularly during the process of mixing, as otherwise the filling when completed will not be chemically pure. The mixing slab should always be kept scrupulously clean, should not have a scratched surface and should be without color. This last point is to avoid any effect color could have on the judgment as to the shade desired. A good slab is produced by taking a large-mouthed bottle and filling it with cold water, or even ice water, in order that during manipulation the material may be held at a low temperature. Before using a thick glass slab (Fig. 118), chill to a temperature of 60 degrees or a little below. The temperature feature in this manipulation is of importance. With nearly all of the processes in the filling of teeth wherein the dentist depends upon subsequent chemical action for

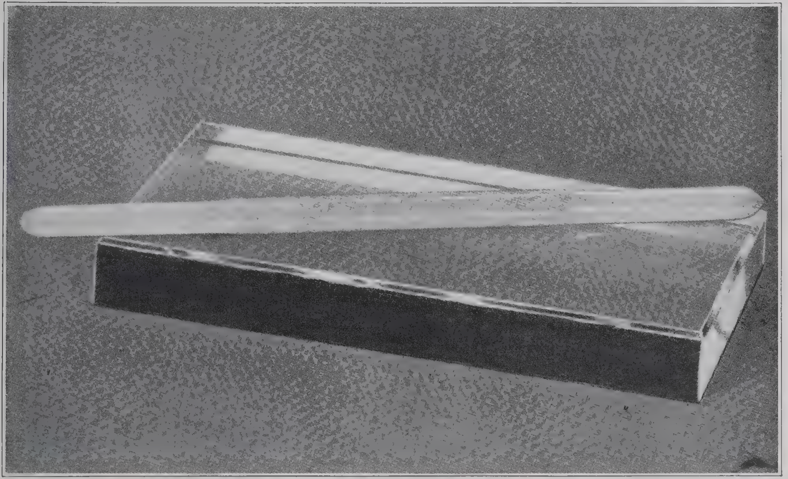


Fig. 118.—A suitable slab and spatula for working silicate. The slab should be thick and heavy in order that when chilled it will remain at a low temperature during the mixing of the silicate.

a final result, chemical action should be either retarded or held in check during the entire process of manipulation, which is easily accomplished by a low temperature mix. "The process of setting" as it is called is held in check until the material is finally in place and further disturbance unnecessary. As soon as the filling has been placed in the tooth, the warmth of the body is sufficient to hasten

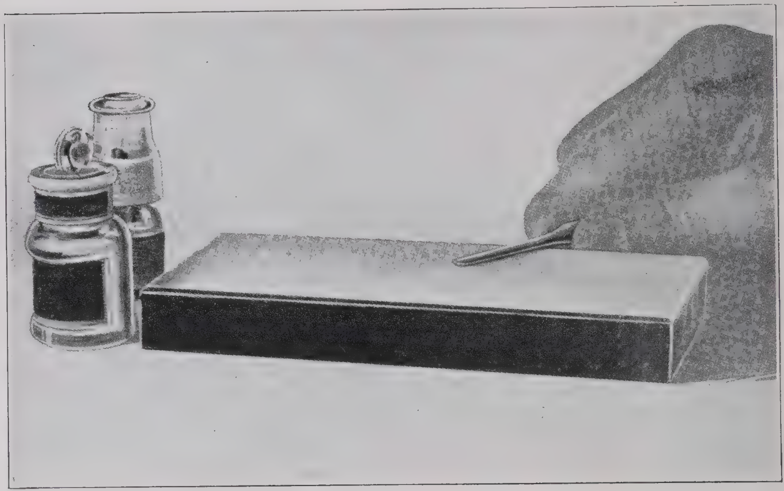


Fig. 119.—Proper position of the spatula on the slab when manipulating silicate.

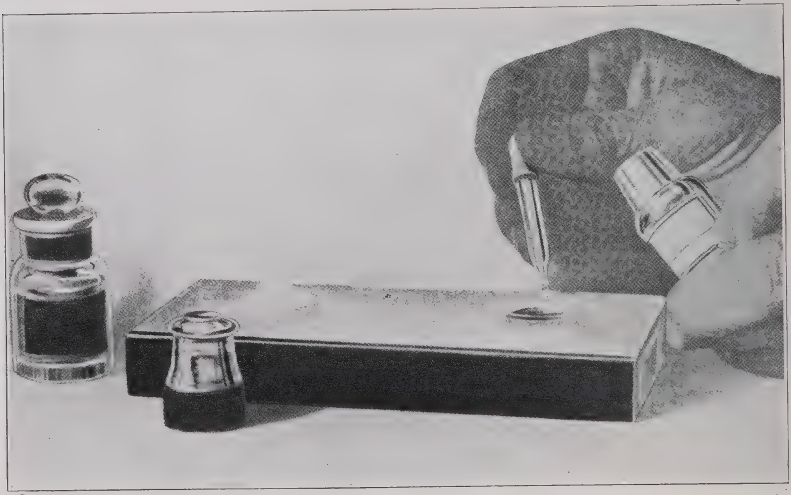


Fig. 120.—Proper placing of the materials when manipulating silicate.

the chemical action and better results will be secured. The mixing slab should be at as low a temperature as possible and should not produce discomfiture to the patient. A temperature of 60 degrees seems to be as low as can be borne by the patient when placing a filling over a vital pulp. It is therefore quite practical to use a

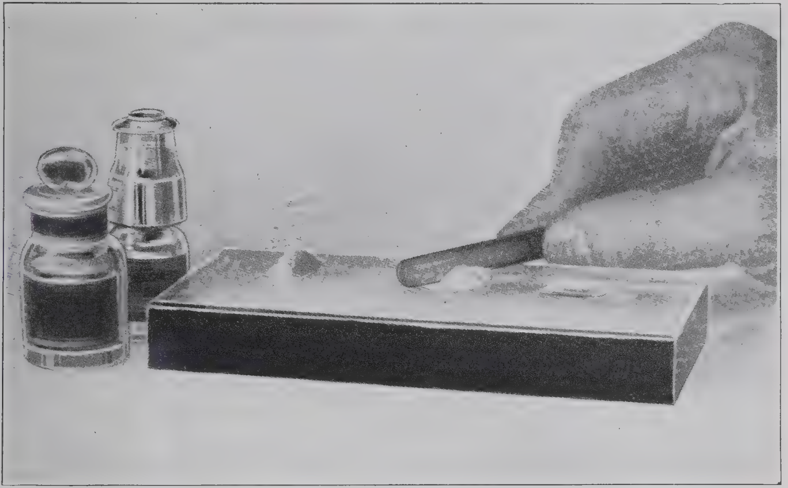


Fig. 121.—Taking the first portion of the powder which should be about half of the entire amount needed.

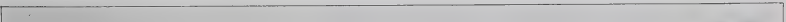


Fig. 122.—Incorporating the first portion of the powder.

bottle slab wherein the thermometer reaches 55 to 60 degrees, as no doubt the temperature of the filling is about 68 when placed in the tooth. It is quite possible to use a bottle that contains iced water when the filling is to be placed in a pulpless tooth. At such times when the atmosphere is close to the dew point, as is evidenced by the condensation on the fountain cuspidor, there will be trouble about the formation of moisture on the cold bottle. When this is only slight, it does not seem to damage the filling. However, when the condensation is sufficient to be noticed, or is excessive, the dentist has to either content himself with manipulation at a higher temperature or postpone the operation to a time when the atmosphere is above the dew point. The spatula must be of some material which will give off none of its substance during the process of mixing. For this reason the stellite is the best and most popular.

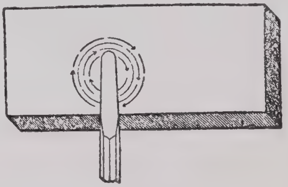


Fig. 123.—Illustrating the circular motion which should be given the spatula in mixing a silicate filling. Note that the spatula should be moved first in one direction and then in the other as indicated by the arrows. Also that the spatula describes segments of small circles and that the material is not spread over any considerable surface of the slab.

Begin the mixing only when the cavity has been prepared and lined with cavity lining, and the filling instruments are ready for immediate use. While there is no great haste as long as the material lays on the cold slab, there are left but a few seconds to make the filling after the material has been removed from the slab, on account of the rising temperature hastening chemical action.

Preparing Materials. First pour out near the end of the slab to the right, the amount of powder the mix is liable to require, and then place stopper in the bottle. With the dropper place the proper quantity of liquid near and to the left of the powder. Immediately return the dropper to the bottle and secure the cap to prevent evaporation. The best results are obtained when no less than three drops of liquid are used for the mix. Stir the liquid in the bottle. Make the mix promptly, for if there is any considerable delay, the chemical formula of the liquid may be changed, due to an evaporation in a dry atmosphere or the addition of water in taking up the condensation from the cold slab at low barometer.

Making the Mix. Begin with sufficient liquid on the slab and do not add any more at that stage. Mix by drawing into the liquid about one-half of the total amount of powder required to make the completed filling. Begin the mix by spatulating with a light rotating movement; hold the spatula flat on the slab, describing the arc of a small circle with a diameter of say one-fourth of an inch. As soon as the powder has been all incorporated and the mass rendered uniform, scrape all of the mass off the slab with about three strokes. Take one-third of the mix each time. This assists in securing uniformity of the mass. Then put it back on the slab this time getting all off the spatula. Do not scrape the spatula on the edge of the slab, but place it flat on the slab, holding it firmly and giving it a turn in the hand, which will practically clean it. Here more powder is added, a small portion at a time, and incorporated in the mass already mixed, by the method of crowding, which is done by rolling the spatula first against one side of the mass on the slab and then against the other. The addition of the powder by this crowding process is continued until the mass becomes of a consistency of putty, losing practically all of its adhesion and giving only slight evidence of a tendency to follow the spatula from the slab.

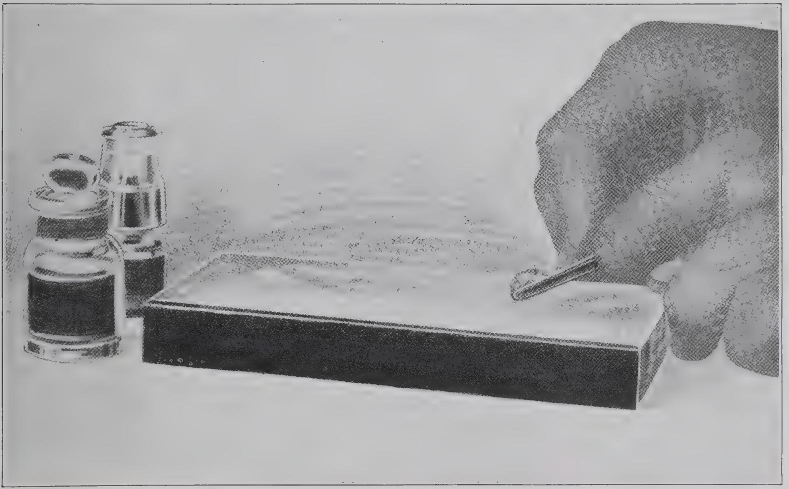


Fig. 124.—The last stroke of scraping the material from the slab.

The Proper Consistency is reached when the mass has been mixed so stiff that the material just loses its gloss when being crowded by a rotating spatula, yet can be made to show a glossy surface when patted three or four blows with the spatula. In case the material looks very wet and glossy the mix is not yet stiff enough. If the three or four blows do not produce gloss, the mix is too heavy and must be entirely discarded.

Time of the Mix. The lower the temperature at which the silicate is mixed the longer may be the time of manipulation; also the thinner the mix, the longer will it be before the chemical action of the setting will be noticed. By using the cold process of mixing, the time of manipulation is lengthened and the time of setting after leaving the slab is materially shortened, due to the thick mixture obtainable.

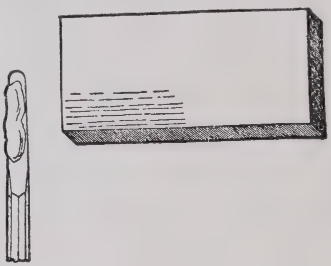


Fig. 125.—The entire mix on the spatula.

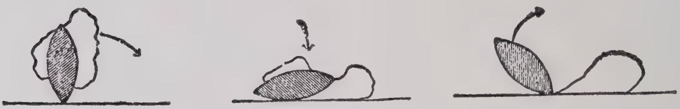


Fig. 126.—Illustrating in three successive steps the method of removing the mix from the spatula to the slab.

Making the Filling. It is important that all moisture be excluded, as we cannot manipulate silicate under moist conditions. Agate or ivory instruments are preferred for placing the material in the cavity. Those of bone or shell will do. If the instruments are absolutely clean and polished so that they will give off no substance in the material, it is possible to place the silicate in the cavity with steel instruments and get no subsequent discoloration. Fill the cavity slightly to excess using absolutely clean instruments, taking a quantity, one-half of that required to fill the cavity, and crowd or wipe the material against every portion of the cavity walls from cavo-surface angle to cavo-surface angle. The second time, take up a sufficient quantity to more than fill the cavity.

Crowd this into position and hastily get a partial contour. Immediately pat or paddle the material to complete contour, continuing until the material has been crowded slightly over the margins. This paddling force will jar the material so as to bring back the gloss, as produced by patting on the slab. In case the gloss is not produced by the paddling, a homogeneous mass is not secured and the filling will lack proper color, will be of poor edge strength, and will make a very weak filling. If the gloss has been produced by the paddling or jarring of the material, it should be allowed to remain undisturbed until the process of setting has sufficiently taken place that the body of the filling will not be moved by any work upon its surface.

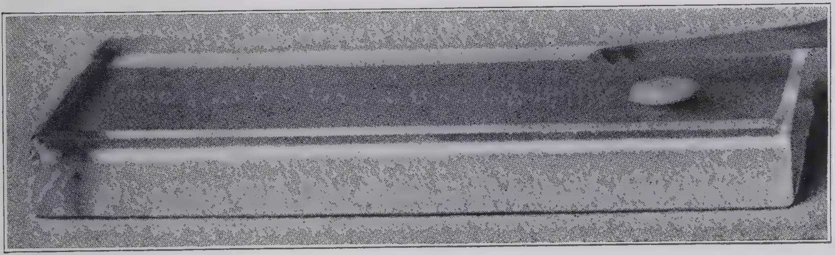


Fig. 127.—Proper consistency of silicate, for immediate introduction into the cavity.

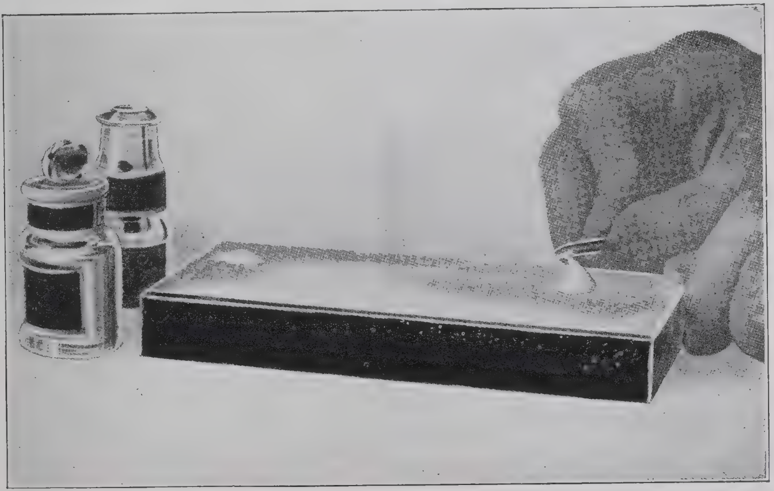


Fig. 128.—This mix of silicate is yet too thin and there should be more powder added. The material should show a tendency to follow the spatula when moved from the slab but it should not follow the spatula as here shown.

The Use of the Matrix either upon the posterior or anterior teeth should be the same as that for the introduction of the amalgam filling. With Class Three fillings, one end of the matrix is left loose until the cavity has been filled more than full with the material. The loose end is then brought over the tooth and tapped on the outside of the surface as it is being tightened upon the filling. This jarring process of bringing the matrix to position results in a homogeneous mass beneath the matrix. Immediately after paddling the filling and the detection of the glossy surface, the filling is to be entirely coated with cocoa butter to exclude the air during the process of setting. Melt the cocoa butter before beginning the mix.

Finishing the Filling. After the filling has been allowed to stand undisturbed for three or four minutes (no longer), there should be applied a very thin-edged knife or chisel and by a scraping motion parallel with the cavity outline the excess is cut away to within one-tenth of a millimeter of the cavo-surface angle, at the same time reducing the general contour to that desired, keeping the filling submerged in the cocoa butter. When the filling has been in position five or six minutes, very fine strips or disks coated with cocoa butter may be used to produce the desired gloss. The author prefers to leave the filling with file and knife finish and has abandoned the use of strips and discs as injurious. This completed filling should be scrubbed with cotton balls in order to remove all of the cocoa butter possible and the finished filling painted with cavity lining. No varnish of which alcohol or ether is a part should be used. Evaporate to dryness with air, remove the rubber dam

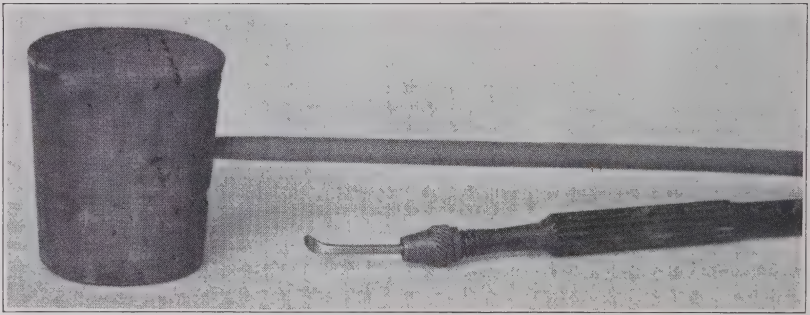


Fig. 129.—A homemade mallet and point used by the author in paddling and jarring silicate to position in the cavity. The mallet should be of light weight and have a soft surface. The plugger point here shown is made of platinized gold. Tandilum would be better for this provided it had a handle attached which was of very light material. It is quite necessary in this process that both hammer and plugger point are of the least possible weight.

and test for occlusion and articulation, provided the filling involves the occlusal or incisal surfaces. In case the filling is found to strike the apposing teeth, the excess should be ground off with alpine points, and again varnished. It is entirely safe to use carbon paper to print these fillings, the same as with gold or amalgam and its use will not cause discoloration of the filling. The instruments used in reducing the size of silicate fillings should be the same as when reducing the bulk of a gold filling. The manufacturers of some of the silicates advise not to use any steel instruments in the finishing of these fillings, but clinical experience has proved that any injury which can result is not due to the instruments, but to their unclean condition.

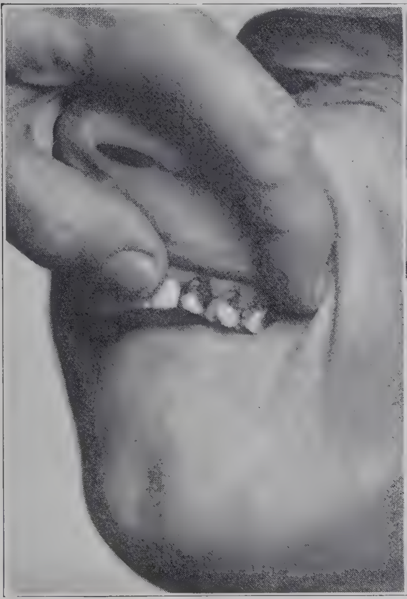


Fig. 130.

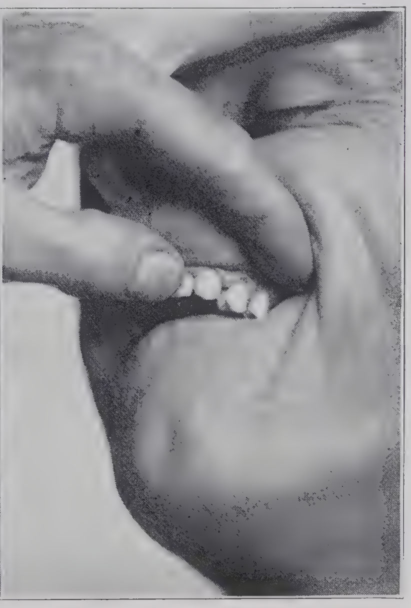


Fig. 131.

Fig. 130.—Three cavities suitable for silicate fillings.

Fig. 131.—This shows the results obtained after filling with silicate the cavities shown in previous figure.

Facing Metal Fillings with silicate is many times of advantage and is at this time the only method wherein it is advisable to use silicate in connection with angle restoration in Class Four fillings. This will be more fully discussed in Chapter XXVIII dealing with Combination Fillings. (See Figs. 132, 133 and 134.)

CHAPTER XXVI.

THE USE OF GUTTA-PERCHA IN FILLING TEETH.

Gutta-Percha has its place in various operations upon the teeth. It is not acted upon by the fluids of the mouth and is quite permanent when placed in locations protected from the force of mastication.

It is a good tooth preserver as decay does not readily take place in cavities so filled.

Base Plate Gutta-Percha is the best form to be had. It comes in the white and pink colors, the last named being the most durable in positions exposed to wear as it gets the harder upon cooling.

Filling Cavities with Gutta-Percha. This material is indicated in subgingival cavities, both buccal and proximal, where a filling that is a very poor conductor of heat is desired, on account of close proximity to the pulp, the pulp being not yet exposed.

It is also indicated for those distressing cases where there is a decay started in the occlusal surface of a lower third molar which has erupted with its occlusal surface at an angle of about forty-five degrees to the distal of the second molar. Such cases cannot as a rule be properly extended to check decay in the use of amalgam or gold.

The gutta-percha filling will check decay and if renewed at stated periods will produce sufficient separation for correct filling or to render extraction easy.

Method of Preparation and Filling. The cavity should be freed of all decay and the cleavage of the enamel secured, omitting the marginal bevel. The cavity should be sterilized and dried, then slightly moistened with campho-phenique or eucalyptol. The gutta-percha should then be warmed and immediately crowded to position. Care should be taken that the material is not overheated as slight burning destroys the durability of rubber.

The gutta-percha should be introduced piece by piece sufficient to a little more than fill the cavity. The surplus must be wiped off flush with the cavity margins with warmed burnishers. Finally the surface should be wiped with a cotton ball carrying chloroform.

For Root Canal Fillings. The gutta-percha is dissolved in chloroform to the consistency of cream and carried to the canals by dipping a smooth broach in the container. The canals should have been previously flooded with oil of eucalyptol, and the chlora-percha mixed with the eucalyptol in the root canal resulting in what may be termed euco-percha. The eucalyptol may be added to the chlora-percha in the bottle, but the method given first is for various reasons the better.

Caution. Chlora-percha shrinks about twelve twenty-seconds, hence, any portion of a pulp canal which is filled with this alone is only ten twenty-seconds filled after the choloform content has been absorbed by the tissues. For this reason care should be taken that the chlora-percha forms the least possible proportion of the total canal filling.

For Canal Points. Gutta-percha is the standard material for canal points which should be at hand in various sizes to suit all cases.

These may be manufactured by the dentist, but with little economy, as they are well made by machinery. Those which are flattened on the larger end are the most handy to use. Such may be had from your dealer, or the assistant can flatten them as purchased by placing them on a glass mixing slab and pressing each large end with a smooth cold steel instrument.

Slow Separation. Gutta-percha for slow separation in proximo-occlusal cavities is unexcelled, the force of mastication doing the work slowly but surely. This fact prohibits the use of gutta-percha as a permanent filling in Class Two cavities.

Temporary Stopping, as purchased from the dealer, is gutta-percha to which wax has been added to render it more plastic when warmed. This is ideal for sealing in dressings, excepting when arsenic has been used, in which case poorly mixed amalgam is better.

CHAPTER XXVII.

TIN AS A FILLING MATERIAL.

History. The first use of tin as a material for filling teeth would seem to date back to about 1780 and was much written about as a tooth preserver for the century following. After the introduction of amalgam in 1826 there seemed to have been much rivalry between the two substances, amalgam gaining the favored position.

At the World's Columbian Dental Congress, in Chicago, 1893, as will be seen by the report, many dentists of national repute went on record as classifying tin as one of our best tooth savers and deplored the fact that its value was being lost sight of.

The late Dr. W. C. Barrett expressed himself so emphatically as to say, "Tin is as cohesive as gold, and if everything were blotted out of existence with which teeth could be filled, except tin, more teeth would be saved." This may be putting it a little too strongly, but the fact remains that more teeth would be permanently saved if a more general use of tin was common with the profession today.

Therapeutic Value of a Tin Filling. Of all our filling materials there are only two for which any therapeutic value is claimed. All others prevent the farther loss of tooth substance by exclusion; mechanically shielding the defenseless tooth substance from the dissolving properties of the products of fermentation.

The Therapeutic Action of Tin is probably due to the formation of the sulfid of tin which is caused by the presence of sulfuretted hydrogen from the decomposition of food substance. The dentinal walls of a cavity which has been filled with tin for some time, turn brown or black and seem to have undergone a structural change rendering them quite impervious to decay, and very hard to excavate with hand instruments or the engine bur.

Discoloration. In some mouths tin turns black not only upon its external surface but this color is in a measure transmitted to the tooth substance, a fact which is one of the greatest objections to its use and debars it from exposed positions in the anterior portion of the mouth. In other mouths there seems to be little discoloration, the filling remaining polished and of a light color.

The Amount of Discoloration seems to bear no relation to its permanency as to bulk or as a tooth preserver.

Thermal Conductivity. Tin is only one-fourth as good a conductor of heat as gold, hence, indicated under gold fillings in deep-seated caries with vital pulp.

Indicated in Rapid Caries. In caries of a light or white color indicating the most rapid form of decay, tin is of peculiar advantage, particularly in regions removed from view and protected from the wear of mastication.

Tin in the Teeth of Children. There is no better material for filling the teeth of children than tin. The principle of mechanical exclusion depended upon with other filling materials to prevent recurrent decay does not seem to be sufficient in the rapid form of decay met with in both temporary and permanent teeth in the mouths of children particularly during the age of rapid development as found before the age of fifteen or sixteen. The additional advantage of the therapeutic influences of tin seems to be sufficient to check this rapid progress of decay till a period is reached when the process of tooth destruction is less apparent, due to more hygienic conditions in the oral cavity.

Cavity Preparation for Tin. The cavity preparation for the use of tin is not unlike that given in the chapters on cavity preparation by classes for cohesive gold. It will be of advantage if the convenience angles are a little more distinct, and the general retentive form throughout should be emphasized. The bevel angle should be a little more deeply buried as the edge strength is not as good as hammered gold. However the edge strength is equal to that of amalgam. Tin has no tendency to spheroid like amalgam. Its flow is similar to that of gold but greater with the same given load and like gold it is capable of being so condensed that it will stand repeated stress of a given load within a limited range and show no flow.

Forms of Tin. Formerly the only form of tin to be had for this purpose was the sheet tin. This was manipulated in much the same way as cohesive gold except that it required no annealing.

It was then, and is yet, sometimes combined with gold by rolling a sheet of pure tin with a sheet of annealed cohesive gold into rolls, the gold on the outside and condensed in the usual manner using a large proportion of hand pressure.

At present there is on the market a form of tin prepared in the shreds, which appears like a mass of coarse silver-colored hair. This is removed from the tube and shaped into pellets of suitable size and placed in the cavity in the manner one would place pellets of gold.

Methods of Introduction. The rubber dam or other efficient means of dryness must be used. When one of the surrounding walls is missing as in proximo-occlusal cavities in bicuspids and molars (Class Two) the matrix must be in place. The first pellet of tin introduced should completely cover the base of cavity and be thoroughly condensed by good steady hand pressure, with points at least one square millimeter in size employing the rocking motion. The points should have deep serrations and be so stepped as to include the entire surface.

This hand pressure should be followed with the mallet force using a plugger point of medium serrations and the surface entirely gone over. A new pellet may now be applied and the plan just given repeated. If the filling is to be entirely of tin the cavity should be filled to excess and by a process of burnishing, condensed and rubbed to the size desired. This last method gives a surface of the greatest density possible.

Tin and Gold. When the filling is to be completed with cohesive gold little dependence should be put upon the gold adhering to the tin as the union is only slight. With a round-pointed instrument new convenience angles should be made in the substance of the tin near the line angles. The remainder of the cavity should be retentive independent of the space occupied by the tin.

Tin and Amalgam. No special care is needed when the filling is to be completed with amalgam. Amalgamation takes place in that portion of the tin next to the amalgam proper and the union is quite strong, even more than tin to tin. The amalgam should, if possible, be more thoroughly mixed and the process of kneading prolonged that all amalgamation possible be secured before contacting with the tin as the tin will take up some of the mercury from the amalgam for which it has a great affinity. This is liable to injure the amalgam as to strength unless the mixing has been thorough. The use of tin and amalgam is not advised where the surface of the tin is to be exposed by forming any portion of the contour as the presence of the mercury absorbed causes the tin to rapidly disintegrate. Gold should be used for topping in such cases.

Tin in Punctured Roots. When through decay or by accident the cavity extends to the exposure of the peridental membrane the use of tin has no substitute. The opening should be rendered as clean as possible, sterilized and dried. The opening should be covered with a mat of pure tin made from folded sheets, being lightly burnished to place and covered with amalgam and the cavity finished with the desired material.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

COMBINATION FILLINGS

Definition. A combination filling is a filling composed of two or more distinct substances introduced into the cavity separately.

Objects of a Combination. The object of combining various materials in the filling of a tooth's cavity is to secure a perfect filling, one possessed of all virtues, and no faults. Many such combinations of material meet this demand in a large measure by bringing into service the strong features of each material, and at the same time nullifying the faults of all material entering into the construction.

Since dentistry has been raised to the dignity of a science there has been a diligent search to discover a filling material which might possess the virtues of all and the faults of none in present use. At the present time this is more nearly reached by the various combinations possible with the usual distinct materials. If perchance the ideal filling is ever produced, dentistry will at once become much simplified as to methods of procedure.

Single Materials Used as a Filling. There are only two filling materials now in use which are used in their pure state, pure gold and pure tin, and there are many instances where these combined with each other or with other materials, will produce better results than when used alone.

Gold and Tin Combination. This combination is of service in large cavities of Class Two which are subgingival and in large occlusal cavities in molars, where the pulpal wall is deep and rounded. In this combination the tin should be placed in the cavity first and thoroughly condensed, and the filling completed with cohesive gold.

In Class Two the tin should cover the gingival wall at least one millimeter deep and be condensed to place with the matrix in position.

Benefits derived. Dentine upon which has been built a thoroughly condensed tin filling does not readily decay. By completing the filling with gold the discoloration of tooth substance is avoided and the gold will better resist the force of mastication.

Gold and Cement. The object of this combination is to produce a filling that is adhesive, will protect weak walls, and resist the fluids of the mouth and the force of mastication.

Two Methods of Combining. There are two methods of producing this combination. One is to cast the filling and lay it into the cement-covered cavity, which is the inlay method. The other is to build cohesive gold into a thin mix of soft cement with which the walls of the cavity have been coated. The essential feature of both is that the cement be completely covered to protect it from dissolution by external agencies, as the fluids of the mouth and the effects of wear.

When Indicated. The inlay combination is indicated in large cavities of easy access. The built-in method of combination is indicated in small cavities of more difficult access, and where correct cavity formation is impossible or ill-advised. When using this method convenience angles may be omitted.

Gold and Platinum. This combination adds to the many virtues of cohesive gold fillings by increasing the resistance of the filling to the wear of mastication. The pure gold is first used as it is capable of more perfect adaptation to the walls, all of which should be covered before taking up the platinized gold. The contour portion should be made of the alloy. This alloy comes from the supply house in sheets which appear to be pure gold except that the color is a little lighter. This foil comes in three numbers, 1, 2 and 3, the No. 2 being preferable for most cases.

The rules for condensation are just the same as for pure gold, only the observance of each specific rule given on that subject is more emphatically demanded here, and when strictly followed the alloy will prove as easily handled.

Cohesive Gold and Non-Cohesive Gold Combined. By this combination much time is saved as the non-cohesive gold may be introduced in greater masses than the cohesive. Also the soft gold is more easily adapted to the walls than cohesive.

The cohesive gold is used to finish the contour as it will better resist the torsion strain and the effects of abrasion. Before the introduction of cohesive gold all gold fillings were non-cohesive, but since the introduction of the former the art of filling teeth well with soft gold has rapidly declined, so that the making of an entirely non-cohesive gold filling is now the exception.

Cement and Amalgam. Results similar to what might be termed an amalgam inlay are produced by coating the prepared cavity with cement, and immediately burnishing into this fresh cement, a portion of the amalgam. The enamel margins are rendered clean again by freshly cutting them with a chisel for their entire outline and the amalgam filling immediately finished in the usual way.

The Benefits. This combination produces a filling with the virtues of an amalgam to which is added the adhesion of the cement and the protection of cavity wall from fracture and discoloration.

When Indicated. This is indicated in most large cavities to be filled with amalgam, where the walls are weak and thin and in cavities where insufficient retentive form is secured.

Cement and Porcelain. Cement is combined with porcelain in the filling of teeth for the purpose of making the filling adhere. The porcelain protects the cement from dissolution.

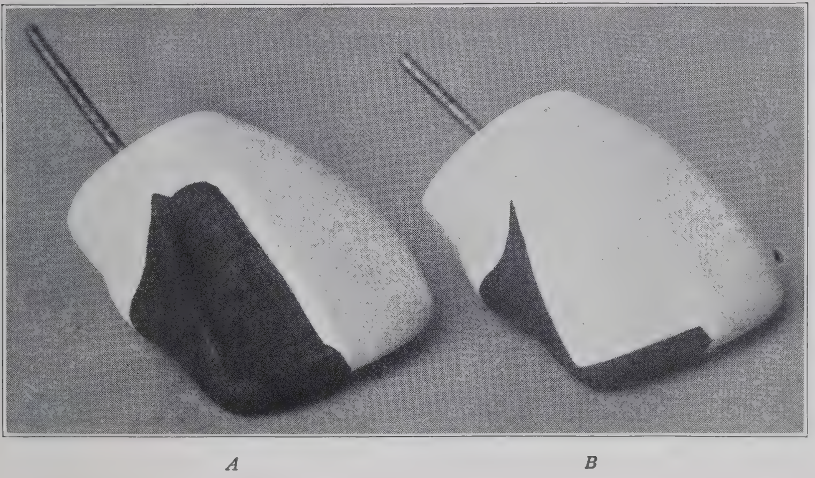


Fig. 132.—Combination gold inlay and silicate. *A* represents the gold inlay in position ready to receive the silicate. *B* represents the same after the silicate has been put in place.

Silicate Cement and Fused Porcelain. Fused porcelain inlays may be set with some of the silicate cements to great advantage. The silicate filling materials which are at their best when mixed thin enough to be adhesive are those which can be used as a cement. In fact some operators are using these materials for setting the gold inlay with seemingly good results.

Silicate and Gold. Silicate may be used to face the gold filling for esthetic reasons. In filling Class Four cavities with the gold inlay, by either one of the four plans, the wax may be cut out of the pattern so as to present a labial surface almost entirely of silicate. After these two materials are combined in this class of cavity, care should be taken that the incisal edge is of gold and particularly that the cavo-surface angle on the incisal outline is protected by one-half of a millimeter to a millimeter of the cast gold. The cast should be made and set with oxyphosphate of zinc cement. At a subsequent setting the silicate face may be built in. A similar effect is produced with the bicuspids and molars, in crown work. The gold crown is made in the usual way and set. A carborundum stone is applied to the buccal surface and ground away and a sufficient amount of cement cut out to make room for the building in of the silicate. Before building in the silicate it is best to coat the cement which is exposed within the crown with a thin application of cavity lining.

Silicate and Amalgam. Many large contour amalgam fillings on the mesial surfaces of bicuspids and molars particularly in the superior teeth are unsightly. A very pleasing effect is produced by cutting away the mesio-buccal contour of amalgam, either in new or old fillings, and in the resulting cavity, build silicate. The silicate will not discolor when thus applied to the amalgam. However, each individual case seems to require a different shade and to get it right a trial mix should be made before deciding on the combination of powder to produce the desired shade.

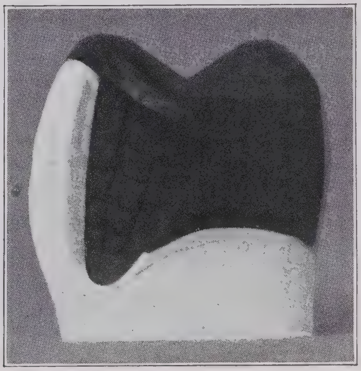


Fig. 133.

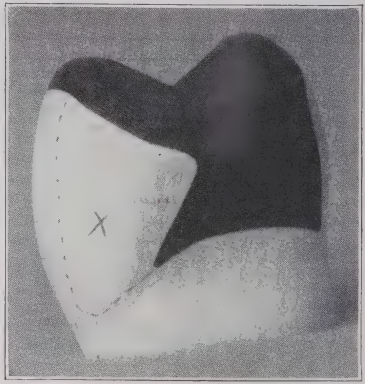


Fig. 134.

Fig. 133.—Amalgam in position ready to receive a partial facing of silicate.

Fig. 134.—This represents the amalgam filling shown in Fig. 133 with the silicate facing built in. The dotted line shows the outline of the silicate with that portion marked *x*, representing the silicate.

Silicate as Applied to Prosthetic Work. It is not within the scope of this book to deal with prosthetic procedures. However, it is well to call attention to the fact that this material is used to advantage in the facing of crowns, the fitting of gingival ends of porcelain pin crowns to the root, and its application to many places in pieces of bridge work. It is also useful in the facing of partial and full removable dentures in a color to imitate the natural gum tissues.

There are many other combinations which are made and used to advantage in tooth salvage. It is improbable that the perfect filling material will ever be produced as the demands are so varied in different mouths, and in different localities in the same mouth.

We are more nearly able to meet all of those varying conditions by a wise selection of the materials to be used in each case and a judicious combination will go far to produce the perfect filling for each individual cavity as presented.

PART III

CHAPTER XXIX.

EXAMINATION OF THE MOUTH LOOKING TO DENTAL SERVICES.

The First Duty of a dentist to one presenting himself for dental services is to comply with the patient's request, which is generally to examine a special tooth or a diseased condition of which the patient is aware. If the patient does not make such a special request it is well to ask some form of a leading question as to the reason of the call. This fact elicited, all else should be ignored until the object of the first visit has been accomplished.

A Light Hand and Slow Movements are very essential for the first few moments, especially at the first meeting of patient and dentist, as first impressions are often lasting and if the stranger is approached in a careless manner he may get ideas of undue roughness, many times unfounded, yet, nevertheless, lasting with the nervous patient.

The Washing of the Hands in the patient's presence or in running water within hearing of the patient should be universally practiced no matter if the operator knows his hands to be already scrupulously clean, as it assures the patient that the operator has a regard for at least the simpler forms of cleanliness.

The Linen Upon the Chair should be inviting and unsoiled. If convenient, it is well that the patient see that which is already on the chair changed for fresh.

Few Instruments should be in sight, as they serve to remind the patient of former experiences not always pleasant.

After the First Requests of the patient have been complied with it is well to take a rather general survey of the mouth before answering many questions regarding the advice to the patient as to future procedures. The operator should note in this ''bird's-eye view,'' as it were, the probable care that is being bestowed upon the teeth and mouth in a prophylactic way. Also the health of the soft tissues, the number of extracted teeth, the presence of dentures and amount of dental work previously done, noting its quality and probable age, as well as the number of badly decayed teeth yet unfilled. He should note the health of the patient, probable age and habits. All this can be done at a glance and in a few second's time, when the operator will be much better qualified to advise the patient as to what is best to do in a special case.

If the Patient Is in Pain its alleviation is of first importance and should receive immediate attention. It may require the application of medicinal remedies, or some mechanical procedure or even the extraction of a tooth, but, whatever it may be, it must be done at once as the patient is in no mood to receive sage advice about the future when he is at present in pain.

Early in the Examination Sitting the patient should be advised of the necessity of a prophylactic treatment provided the teeth and mouth are not scrupulously clean, which is seldom the case, unless the patient has recently visited the dentist for that purpose.

This Is Second Only to the relief of pain and it is manifestly the dentist's duty to attend to prophylaxis before proceeding to the making of fillings.

A Careful Examination should be suggested, following the hasty inspection, and, if advised to do so by the patient, the dentist may then proceed to search all surfaces for the various classes of decay, not forgetting the vulnerable points about work previously placed, as the margins of fillings and about the bands of crowns.

The Instruments Needed are, a clear, uninjured mouth mirror, a sharp pointed instrument called an explorer, cotton pliers and small balls of absorbent cotton, waxed floss silk, chip blower and mechanical separator. A small electric mouth lamp is also of value.

The Use of the Mouth Mirror is to see therein the image of surfaces and locations where direct vision is imperfect or impossible and to flood the point being examined with an abundance of light. Many cavities existing in the proximal spaces are not noticed until strong rays of light from a different angle than the line of vision of the examiner have been directed against them.

The Use of the Explorer is to note the extent of decalcification at suspected points and the inspection of pits and grooves for faults in enamel. This instrument should be in the shape of an elongated cork screw turn, that the more inaccessible points may be reached. A light hand in its use is imperative as the dentist is not excused for breaking down tooth substances or for causing much pain in any of the processes of examination.

Absorbent Cotton in the pliers is used to take up the moisture in cavities of considerable size and whose depth questions proximity to the pulp; also sensitive surfaces suspected in shallow cavities, particularly those in the gingival third. The cotton balls should not be too large and rather tightly rolled.

Waxed Floss Silk is used to examine the proximal space where the reflection of light does not make diagnosis positive. It cleans the surfaces of debris and food particles, giving a deeper insight from the embrasure. When surfaces are roughened or cupped from incipient caries, it will show by the catching or cutting of the fibers of the thread; if the surfaces still retain their normal polish the thread will pass uninjured.

The Chip Blower is a small hand bellows for the expulsion of air and is used in examination of the teeth to blow away and evaporate the moisture from points where it is held by capillary attraction, giving, thereby, a better view and a more correct idea as to the color present, which is a strong factor in a diagnosis of conditions.

The Mechanical Separator will sometimes be of service to gain a little added space for the inspection of contacting surfaces.

The Use of the Electric Lamp on the lingual side of the teeth has many advantages and is a speedy and sure way of detecting any of the stages of caries in the proximal spaces, the vitality of a tooth's pulp as well as abnormal conditions about the alveolar wall and the presence of pus and inflammatory changes in the maxillary sinus.

When the Examination Is Completed the patient should be advised of the true condition of his mouth, including the indicated treatment of both hard and soft tissues. If the patient indicates a desire to have the services rendered as outlined by the dentist it is entirely good business, and by no means unprofessional, to apprise the patient of the probable cost of the work as planned when it can be approximately estimated, unless the patient is a frequent visitor and familiar with the charges expected from the dentist consulted.

CHAPTER XXX.

THE ALLEVIATION OF DENTAL PAINS.

The First Duty of the Dentist is to relieve suffering, and as in many instances this is the reason for the first call of the patient it is most essential that the relief sought is obtained. Many times the relieving of a paroxysm of pain by the dentist has made a lifelong friend and patient.

The Diagnosis is a most vital point and the battle is half won when this is correctly made.

Pay Strict Attention to What the Patient Has to Say as he is quite sure to give you his symptoms in the order of their prominence and it is generally the prominent symptoms that are pathognomonic.

After the Patient Has Given the Most Aggravated Symptoms, make an examination of the afflicted part of the mouth to verify the statements made. If all is not clear quiz him more specifically. Do not jump at conclusions. The patient is generally right as to symptoms but frequently wrong as to location and cause. These last are the points the dentist must decide, as well as upon the treatment for relief.

There Are Two Divisions of Dental Pains, those arising from lesions of the tooth pulp, and those arising from degenerative changes in the sub-dental tissues, which are generally the sequelæ of the same destructive processes in the pulp. They may follow the pulp troubles or occur simultaneously with them.

Pulp Lesions. Symptoms are sensitiveness to thermal changes. The tooth is not necessarily sore to percussion. Pain is increased or induced when assuming a recumbent position. The presence of foreign substances in the tooth cavity cause pain especially when pressed against the walls of the cavity. Pain comes in paroxysms with a tendency to intermittence. Patient may complain of ''jumping toothache.'' These symptoms may all be present in the same case or only one at a time in the series of changes that take place in a pulp from the initial affection to its death.

The Treatment for Speedy Relief is varied according to the most prominent symptoms, as these are the indications of the stage of dissolution.

If Cold Air or Water Causes Pain of a quick, sharp, shooting nature, comes on suddenly and passes off immediately upon the tooth regaining the body temperature, the pulp is in the stages of active hyperemia, which is the initial stage of a destructive disease, and will respond immediately to the application of an anodyne and effectual protection from air and fluids, which is accomplished by stopping the cavity with a non-conductor, generally cotton, or temporary stopping, or an application of phenol.

If Warm Fluids Cause or Intensify the Pain and the application of cold relieves the pain temporarily, the pulp will be found to be well advanced in the stages of dissolution, some portion of which has been resolved into the end products. Gaseous substances occupy portions of the pulp cavity, which is closed over the entire coronal portion by a layer of dentine, a filling or a plug of foreign substance. These gases are expanded by the elevation of the temperature, causing increased pressure upon the remaining vital portions of the pulp and intense pain results, which is further augmented, many times, by the pulsations of the heart. The pulsating symptom in this instance indicates that quite a portion of the pulp is yet vital.

The Treatment for Relief in This Case, which is called closed putrescence, is the removal of the obstruction for the escape of the gas. This involves opening into the pulp chamber through the route of the least obstruction or injury to the tooth. Necrotic portions of the pulp should be removed, disinfectants and anodynes applied and devitalization of the remaining vital portion effected.

If Moderately Warm Fluids Cause Pain as well as cold the pulp is in the first stages of passive hyperemia or congestion. This condition is generally soon followed by the symptom of being more painful upon the patient's lying down and the throbbing pains setting in, and many times patients will say, "I have the jumping toothache;" or, "It began last evening about fifteen minutes after I went to bed."

Treatment of Passive Hyperemic Pulp for relief is sterilization of immediate surrounding tissue at the tooth's cavity and the application of sedatives and anodynes. If the pulp can be bled with causing but slight pain it is beneficial; then proceed to devitalization.

The Painting of the Gum with a revulsive is of service, especially if the pericementum is taking on the stages of inflammation indicated by slight soreness to percussion.

If the Presence of a Foreign Substance in a cavity causes pain it may be an exposed pulp which is not very highly organized, or hypersensitive dentine covered with a layer of leathery decay.

The Treatment Is the Removal of the offending object and the prevention of its recurrence by temporary or permanent stopping.

Pericemental Diseases Causing Pain have for their most pathognomonic symptom the soreness to percussion, as shown by gently tapping on the occlusal surface of the tooth with a steel instrument. Slight swelling of the pericementum causes the tooth to appear to the patient as much elongated and the patient will generally make such remarks as these, "I have a sore tooth;" "It hurts to close my teeth;" "My tooth is too long," etc.

If the pulp is entirely dead, and removed, or there is not a case of enclosed putrescence, thermal changes will have no effect, except in rare cases warmth applied to the parts will give a slight sense of relief.

Treatment for the Relief of Pericemental Pains is the thorough and complete removal of the cause, generally consisting of necrotic pulp tissue, and infectious matter in the pulp chamber. This should be thoroughly removed by mechanical means, assisted by the use of chemicals, and the entire chamber from crown to apex rendered aseptic as soon as possible.

If Pus Has Formed at the apical space and flows freely down the root canal temporary relief is most certain to follow if the case is allowed to remain open for twenty-four or forty-eight hours for free drainage, when further treatment may be proceeded with.

Acute Alveolar Abscesses should be opened externally, as soon as the presence of pus can be diagnosed, this to be done external to the alveolar wall and is least painfully done by freezing the tissues to be punctured.

Abscesses Are Assisted to the Surface by painting the mucous membrane over the diseased portion with aconite and iodine. In no case should such an abscess, no matter what its size, be lanced through the external surface of the face as all are easily reached from within the mouth.

CHAPTER XXXI.

PROPHYLACTIC TREATMENT OF THE MOUTH.

The Importance of Prophylactic Treatment early in a series of visits to a dentist and at stated periods thereafter, is second only to the relief of pain, the neglect of which jeopardizes the remaining tooth structures, the permanency of attempts to check the ravages of caries and disease, as well as the reputation of the operator's skill.

Lack of Hygienic Conditions About the Teeth is the sole, immediate and exciting cause of primary or secondary decay of the teeth, and many an operator of exceptional skill as to the making of fillings has failed from a disregard of these conditions. As much of the success of dental operations depends upon the care of the mouth by both dentist and patient in the way of prophylaxis, as upon the skill of the dentist as an operator. The making of a filling is but the repair of an injury and is only a temporary check to the progress of destruction, if the primary cause of dissolution is to remain operative.

The Sub-Dental Tissues are also diseased by a lack of prophylaxis to the extent, many times, of their entire loss, so that the teeth, themselves, are loosened and lost, through a lack of structures to support them, while the teeth so lost are many times yet undecayed, and, in the present-day advancement of dentistry, experienced operators are forced to consign more teeth to the forceps from the result of diseased conditions in the tissues surrounding them than from decay of the teeth, themselves. If this be true the dentist cannot ignore the importance of combating the agencies which bring it about.

Preventive Dentistry has the same great field of usefulness as has ''preventive medicine'' in the practice of medicine and the dentist who masters this phase of the science of dentistry has gone a long way towards success, and many defects in manipulation, ability and ideals in conditions about tooth repair impossible of attainment, will stand the test of time if only hygienic conditions are attained and maintained.

The Kinds of Deposits Upon the Teeth are generally classified as salivary calculus, serumal calculus, green stain and sordes.

The first two named are enemies to tissue about the teeth, while the last two are responsible for most of the destruction of the hard dental tissues by caries.

Composition of Salivary Calculus. Mixed saliva contains in man an average of about 0.5 per cent solids. The calculus is precipitated into the mouth in a form of a finely divided calcoglobulin, which collects in masses upon any stationary object, close to the mouth of the gland ducts. The fresh deposit is very soft and greasy to feel when first deposited, but within twenty-four hours it begins to harden and increases in hardness up to the time of thirty or sixty days, when it has generally attained its full hardness and will break away from the stationary object in masses showing distinct lines of fracture.

Lime Salts Held in Solution. Calcium phosphate and magnesium phosphate are held in solution in the saliva, made possible by the presence of a little carbon dioxide.

Reasons for Precipitation. When the saliva is discharged into the mouth it is released from the normal blood pressure and some of the carbon dioxide escapes which allows the calcium salts to be precipitated. The lactic acid which is continually formed in the mouth converts the mucus into a curd in which the calcium salts are entangled to harden into salivary calculus. This process is assisted by the presence of the oxygen taken into the mouth with the breath, which facilitates the liberation of the carbon dioxide, in the process of oxidization.

Time of Deposits. It would seem from the experiments of Dr. Black that the deposits of salivary calculus are paroxysmal and also that these periods of rapid deposit follow the ingestion of heavy meals. He thinks that these periods of excessive deposits come at a time when the blood is overcharged with food pabulum.

Kind of Food. It does not seem from his experiments that the kind of food has very much to do with these deposits. The more easily a food is digested, the more quickly following the meal will these deposits appear.

Habits of Patient. It would seem that the habits of the patient have little to do in influencing the amount of these deposits. However those who live a life of physical exertion, which favors the using of heavy meals have a greater tendency to deposits of tartar than those whose vocation would cause them to eat lightly.

Mouths Most Subject to the Deposit. From our present understanding of this subject it would seem that the mouths most subject to the deposit of salivary calculus are those individuals, *First,* who from constitutional reasons have a tendency to an abundance of carbon dioxide in the excretions and secretions. This condition may be brought about by great physical or mental activity or where the skin, kidneys or lungs, or all, are not performing their full functions. These are the principal eliminators of carbon dioxide. Such individuals are very liable to be troubled with precipitation within the gland and ducts, through which their secretions are expelled, resulting in cystic, glandular, biliary or renal calculi.

Second, those individuals who either occasionally or habitually engorge heavy meals, wherein the quantity of such meals is greater than that needed for growth or maintenance.

Third, in mouths wherein the amount of lactic acid is more than normal.

Fourth, in the mouths of public speakers and mouth breathers, whether awake or during sleep. The great amount of oxygen coming in contact with the saliva assists in the rapid liberation of the carbon dioxide and consequent rapid precipitation of the calcium salts.

Prevention of Salivary Deposits. It would seem that salivary deposits can largely be prevented by stimulating the circulation; stimulating the elimination of carbon dioxide from the body; checking mouth breathing as much as possible, correcting overacidity of the mouth, limiting the amount of food taken into the stomach at each meal by more nearly equalizing the three daily meals to the needs of the body. Also by so highly polishing the surfaces of the teeth upon which the deposit is precipitated, as to facilitate the mechanical removal of the fresh deposits. Last but not least, so instructing the patients in the mechanical features of the care of their teeth that insofar as possible all fresh deposits are removed before hardening takes place.

Serumal Calculus is a calcic precipitate from the blood. The salts in solution in the blood as well as the stability of suspension depends materially upon the presence of a normal amount of carbon dioxide.

Serumal Calculus Is Deposited beneath the gum tissue wherein there is a passive hyperemic condition or congestion. Here we have excessive tissue waste, lessened alkalinity of the blood, a liberation of the carbon dioxide and consequent precipitation of the inorganic salts. By the recession of the gum after the formation of the serumal form of calculus, it may be exposed to view, or mixed with the mass of salivary calculus.

Serumal Calculus in Appearance is of a much darker color than salivary of a harder constituency, and generally adheres to the surface of the tooth more tenaciously.

Serumal Calculus Is Also Found on unexposed portions of roots of teeth which approximate inflammatory exudates, or, are bathed in escaping blood plasma associated with chronic conditions of the apical space. It also appears in other portions of the body as about the joints subjected to chronic inflammations as well as in the glands continually gorged with blood.

The Bulk of Serumal Calculus is comparatively small, owing to its formation in restricted spaces and is generally found in small nodules, narrow bands and thin scales, not always easy of detection or removal.

Stains Upon the Teeth are of varying degrees of shade in several colors and from cosmetic reasons stand for immediate removal when detected. However the green stain found upon teeth is so closely connected with the first stages of caries on surfaces so affected that it deserves special consideration.

Green Stain Is Generally Confined to the labial surfaces and particularly the gingival third of the anterior teeth. It is most frequently found upon the teeth of children and may be seen either upon the temporary or permanent teeth. When it persists for a considerable time upon these surfaces of the permanent teeth the enamel will be found to be etched by a dissolution of the cemental substance evidenced by the whitened surface.

The Color Is Due to the bacteria present.

The Injury to Tooth Substance is due to the acid which these bacteria produce.

The Reason for Their Presence is the favorable place for lodgment afforded by the persistence of the cuticula dentis.

Sordes Consists of a mixture of food, epithelial matter and micro-organisms collected upon the teeth.

Neglect in the Removal of Sordes results in tooth caries, particularly in localities habitually so unclean.

The Removal of Salivary Calculus is accomplished by two principal plans, the push-cut method and the draw-cut method, each with its advantages.

By the Push-Cut Method the blade of the scaler, which has a blunt chisel edge, is forced between the calculus and enamel traveling in the direction of the root. In its use the principal danger is the slipping of the instrument to the gum tissue beyond and this accident should be well guarded against by first securing a positive and sufficient hand rest.

By the Pull-Cut Method the blade of the scaler, which has a hoe point of about twenty-eight degrees, is first passed under the free margin of the gum, its point engaged on the ledge of the calculus and its removal accomplished by a pulling force applied toward the crown of the tooth, or in a plane parallel with the long axis of the tooth. Care should be taken in passing the instrument under the free margin not to lacerate the gums. Pen grasp should be used and a secure hand rest obtained before making an effort to remove the deposit.

The First Teeth to Be Scaled is not important, yet if attention is first directed to the lingual surfaces of the lower incisors, we are able to create an impression upon our patients of the importance of the work in hand. It is here we generally find the heaviest deposits and by removing these first, and allowing them to fall in the mouth the patient is fully awakened to the need of the service being rendered. The same impressions never seem possible if the removal of the larger masses is left until the last.

The Proximal Surfaces Are Best Scaled with the pruning hook, draw-cut scaler or the straight push-cut having a very thin blade and about a twenty-three degree bevel.

These proximal surfaces will need such attention more from the deposit of serumal calculus than from the salivary variety, which is only present in the proximal surfaces after gum recession.

The Removal of Serumal Calculus is much more difficult than salivary, as all of the work is done under the cover of the gum. which requires delicacy of touch and the highest degree of digital skill.

Calculus Must Be Distinguished From Cementum, bone and soft tissues, simply by the sensation of touch conveyed through contact of the instrument with the structures in question.

The Surface of Roots, where the attachment of the pericementum has been lost, must be carefully examined and the removal of all calculus accomplished, and the root or roots thoroughly polished, as the gum will not regain health where particles of the deposit remain. Several sittings are often necessary to accomplish satisfactory results.

Pyorrhea Alveolaris. The desire to keep this book within certain limitations prevents the consideration of pyorrhea in its treatment. However the foregoing procedure will go far towards the prevention and cure of pyorrhea alveolaris.

In advanced cases the pockets must be removed surgically to effect a cure. This is done by either extracting the tooth or cutting away all other tissues entering into the formation of the pocket.

The Removal of Green Stain is principally accomplished by the application of some abradent, as pumice stone, with a revolving brush in the dental engine. This also polishes the crowns of the teeth, removing the small particles of calculus still adhering to them after scaling.

Hydrogen dioxide (H_2O_2) added to the powdered pumice in place of water will assist in removing the stains and particularly green stain, of which it is a partial solvent. Following the use of pumice the gums should be thoroughly syringed with water to remove any trace of the pumice, which is insoluble in the mouth and should not be left around the free margins of the gums.

A Clean New Brush Wheel should be used and a fresh mix of the powder made for each patient as a means of preventing the transmission of disease as well as from a standpoint of cleanliness. As well might our patients be asked to all use the same toothbrush, a thing not thought of, even by members of the same family.

The Removal of Sordes is a matter which must be left to the efforts of the patients. Its accumulation about favorable portions of the teeth and mouth is but the matter of a night or a day and upon its speedy and frequent removal depends the salvage of the teeth from the ravages of caries.

The Toothbrush is the one great cleansing agent and nine-tenths of the removal of sordes is accomplished purely by mechanical abrasion through the movements of the bristles of the brush over the surface of the teeth. The movements of the bristles should be not only crosswise to the long axis of the teeth, but also from root to crown and vice versa, that the travel of the bristles may parallel the gingival, enter the embrasures and traverse the grooves and fissures.

Hydrogen Dioxide Is the Only Agent which can be used in the mouth in sufficient strength to dissolve sordes and not injure either the hard or soft oral tissues. This may be used either upon the brush or as a mouth wash. The dissolution of sordes is accomplished by oxidation.

The Massage of the Gums is advised to remove all unsolidified calculus, food particles and other foreign substances from beneath the free margins of the gums as this appears to be the only satisfactory method of cleansing these spaces. The massage is also most beneficial to the gums. It stimulates the circulation, retards tissue waste and lessens the deposit of serumal calculus, and in addition forces away that which has been precipitated before it has an opportunity to solidify.

Instructions to Patients as to the care of their teeth is an all-important duty of the dentist, not only from the standpoint of what is best for the patient, but much of the dentist's reputation as an operator depends upon the subsequent care given the teeth by the owner following the making of fillings, for upon their environment depends their permanency. Comparatively few individuals know how to properly care for the mouth and many will insist to their dentist that they are most careful of their oral habits when upon examination, the dentist finds surfaces which appear never to have been cared for in the least. They have failed to reach these surfaces with their brush.

The Technic of Proper Brushing should be thoroughly explained, with special reference to reaching the surface which they seem to be neglecting. Instruct them as to the massage of the gums with the finger tips, rubbing not only crosswise but also from root to crown, assuring them that if the gums bleed easily it is all the more essential that they repeat the operation and that finally they will regain their normal health and then they will not bleed under the treatment advised.

The Use of Floss Silk for passing through the proximal spaces to clean contacting surfaces by wiping off the embrasures and reaching points inaccessible to the brush, should be demonstrated to the patient.

Care should be taken not to snap the thread past contact points as it may lacerate the gums.

Toothpicks have no place in the care of the teeth and should be prohibited by law, especially those of soft wood so commonly found on the market and at public eating houses. Their square corners and slivered ends irritate the gums, causing their disease and recession thereby destroying the natural protection to the most vulnerable portions of the teeth.

CHAPTER XXXII.

EXCLUSION OF MOISTURE.

The Exclusion of Moisture from most operations upon the teeth is essential to the successful manipulation of most filling materials, the sterilization of tooth structures and the prevention of infection, the cleanliness of cavity walls and margins, that a perfect view of the cavity may be obtained, that the extent of decalcification may be observed, to diminish the pain of operations on living dentine and to protect the soft tissues from injury in the use of caustic drugs, as well as to save time of both patient and operator.

The Methods of Securing Dryness during operations are here given.

The Rubber Dam, invented and given to the dental profession in 1864 by Dr. Sanford C. Barnum, of New York City, is widely used.

Absorbents, as napkins, cotton rolls and pads packed about the teeth and near the mouths of ducts, assisted by specially constructed clamps upon the teeth are also used. Dryness is also secured by the *use of the saliva ejector* whereby the mouth is continually drained of the secretions.

The Objections to the Use of the Rubber Dam are entirely on the part of the patient and can generally be traced to awkward and unskilled handling on the part of the operator. Every operator should become dextrous with each method, that he may employ the one most expedient in every case, using the one least objectionable to the patient.

The Neglect of Dryness in dental operations is to invite disaster in root canal treatment, as well as short life to all fillings so placed, and the operator who makes it a practice to neglect this essential, obtains only a partial success in that which he attempts.

So Important Is Dryness that a patient should be warned that a certain operation, where moisture has been allowed to flood the field, is short-lived at best and is liable to failure from this cause. Such conditions seldom arise but are occasionally met with, due to location and extent of decay and also from the fact that there are some patients who are nauseated by the presence of the dam or absorbents about all but the most anterior teeth.

All Filling Materials are better manipulated under dry conditions at some stage of the operation, porcelain being the only one demanding moist conditions at any stage of the process. This moisture in porcelain filling is only required to preserve the shade of the tooth substance to be imitated in the fused filling.

Those to Which Dryness Is Most Essential are silicate, cohesive gold, cement amalgam and gutta-percha, named in the order of the importance of the demands. It is true that all of these excepting silicate may be successfully manipulated under moist conditions, but the effort is greater and the certainty of success is materially decreased.

The Exclusion of Moisture for Sterilization and the prevention of infection is imperative in the last stages of cavity preparation, as it is physically impossible to properly perform the toilet of the cavity and properly sterilize the same when flooded or even under moist conditions.

The Proper Treatment of Pulp Canals cannot be accomplished when flooded by the oral fluids to say nothing of the introduction of a permanent root filling. The saliva is at all times impregnated with various forms of bacteria. Its presence invites failure by preventing sterilization of canals already septic and permitting the re-infection of those already sterile.

Cavity Walls, and particularly the beveled margins, must be freshly cut and planed after being moistened before the introduction of a filling, as this is the only means of having an absolutely clean surface. We may resort to absorbing and evaporating the moisture from the walls and margins of a cavity, but there will invariably be left a residue or film upon the surface which is soluble in the oral fluids. No amount of pressure in introducing the filling, be it rubber, amalgam or cohesive gold, will displace the moisture absorbed by the cavity surfaces, hence we have this layer of moisture or sediment intervening the filling and cavity. This will be exchanged in course of time for that upon the outside carrying with it bacteria and the products of fermentation or lactic acid and secondary caries is the result. Bacteria, which are the active agents of caries, will go where moisture will not, and the lactic acid which they secrete will go where the space is too small for the bacteria. It will therefore be readily seen that a moist surface or one coated with a residue of an evaporated mixture, whether medicine or saliva, intervening between a filling and a cavity wall, becomes a large passage way for the greatest enemy to tooth substance—lactic acid.

A Better View of the Cavity Is Obtained When Dry, as its outlines become more distinct and its size and shape better defined.

No mechanic ever thinks of trying to accomplish his best work with the object submerged in moisture. The rays of light are broken, objects are distorted and distances misjudged. The dentist who does not effectually exclude the moisture from the immediate neighborhood of a cavity will catch only a glimpse now and then of portions of a cavity, this being particularly true of the gingival wall, except in cases of gum recession.

The Extent of Decalcification of both dentine and enamel is diagnosed only when dryness is obtained to bring out the colors and shades of each incident to these conditions. It is impossible to make proper cavity extension until the cavity has been made dry and so maintained for some time, as this is often the only means of detecting superficial caries. Semi-decalcified tooth substance, when moist, materially resembles the healthy structures and must be dried to detect its injured condition.

The Pain of Cavity Excavation is materially decreased by the extraction of the moisture from the dentine. The protoplasm within the dental tubules is the means of transmitting the sensation of pain to the vital pulp. Water is a large constituent of protoplasm and the extraction of this moisture through extreme and continued dryness removes the media of sensitiveness. It is therefore but humane that the cutting of dentine be done with the moisture excluded.

When Using Caustic and Concentrated Drugs the moisture should be excluded, that the drug may not be carried away to the injury of adjacent tissues and that the drugs may not be diluted to detract from their efficiency in accomplishing that for which they were used. Drugs placed in the cavities of teeth with moist margins even when placed under fillings of rubber, cement or amalgam, will follow the moisture of these margins to join that without and great damage to the surrounding tissues often results from no other cause than a lack of the exclusion of moisture during the operation.

As a Time Saver the exclusion of moisture should not be overlooked. With a dry cavity the continued uninterrupted view permits of more continuous work by the dentist. He does not have to wait for the patient to expectorate, make a few remarks and leisurely resume his position in the chair, not always in the position desired for operating. The operator will also be saved much time in drying the cavity after each flooding. All this takes valuable time, much more than is required to adjust a dam.

The Rubber Dam is the most dependable means of securing a dry field for operating and its proper and speedy adjustment should be mastered. It is made in three thicknesses; heavy, light and medium, the medium being the weight best adapted for all purposes where only one weight is to be kept at hand.

The Size and Shape is of little importance so long as it completely covers the mouth after it has been made to isolate the teeth desired, as well as cover the chin and extend to either side of the mouth sufficient for the proper engagement of the holder. This will require a piece from five to six inches square, for all cases back of the six anterior teeth and is most frequently the size used on the anterior teeth. However, some economy of rubber dam may be practiced by cutting these squares in two triangular pieces, each of which will do for a separate case. These are applied with the diagonal of the quadrilateral (hypotenuse) uppermost.

The Holes to Receive the Teeth should be of the proper size and smoothly cut, otherwise there is an increased liability of being torn in adjustment. This is best done by the use of the rubber dam punch to be had at dental depots. However, in the absence of this, a very good result is obtained by drawing the rubber tightly over a tapering round handle of an instrument and touching the sharp edge of a knife to the rubber down the side of the handle when a perfectly round piece will be cut out.

The Distance Between the Holes will vary according to the space between the teeth, the height of the festoon of the gum, the weight of the dam and the size of the teeth to be engaged. Generally speaking, the holes are cut from two to four millimeters apart in medium dam. The lighter the dam the farther apart should be the holes. The holes are farther spaced with extremely large gum festoons, also when there is a considerable gum recession. If the holes are too close together in above condition the dam may not cover the entire proximal tissues and a leakage may occur, or the gum septa may be unduly compressed and permanent injury result from strangulation. If the holes are too far apart the rubber will wrinkle and bag at the proximal spaces and seriously hinder operations in these localities.

The Location of the Holes in the piece of rubber dam depends upon the location of the tooth to be operated upon and the teeth to be isolated. A beginner will do well to first place the dam over the mouth in the position desired for the outside edges, request the patient to open the mouth and with the finger cause the dam to come in contact with the occlusal surfaces of the teeth it is intended to include and then punch the holes as this trial indicates. By this method the operator will soon become familiar with the location in each case.

The Number of Teeth Isolated depends upon the location and the operation to be performed. For the short treatment cases, sometimes the placing of one or two teeth under the dam will suffice, but in most cases where fillings are to be made and polished, from five to eight teeth should be included that a good view of the field of operation may be had and the loose folds of dam carried farther away to avoid them catching in the revolving points of the engine.

With Anterior Teeth the first bicuspid tooth of either side should be included, as the cuspid from its conical shape is many times unsafe for a final ligature.

With Bicuspids and Molars as the objective teeth in an operation, there should also be included the teeth anterior to the median line.

The Clamp should be placed on the tooth back of the one to be operated upon, excepting in mesial cavities in second molars when the clamp may be placed on the second molar, thereby avoiding the clamping of the third molar except when absolutely necessary, as with distal cavities in second molars.

The Placing of the Dam requires the freedom of both hands of the operator, and the aid of an assistant is of value. The necks of the teeth upon which the rubber dam is to be placed should be cleansed of all calculus and sordes and flooded with a jet of water from the syringe. If the gums show hypersensitiveness they should be bathed in a solution of novocain, restricting its use to the gingival borders. Waxed silk should be passed through the proximal spaces to clear them and prove access for the rubber. If sharp margins of cavities cut the silk these should be dulled by passing a thin ribbon saw through the proximal space or, with the chisel, carry the margin sufficiently into the embrasure to give access.

When teeth are in close contact so that the silk thread is passed with difficulty, the rubber can be made to pass more readily by the use of soap, which is done by placing the row of holes on the ball of the index finger, occlusal side up, and rubbing the soaped fingers of the other hand across the holes.

The Occlusal Side of the Rubber Dam is that side which is toward the occlusal surface when the dam is in position.

The Gingival Side is the opposite side and is next to the gingival margins when the dam has been applied to the teeth.

The Method of Applying the Dam is affected by the fact of whether a clamp is used or not and kind of clamp when one is used.

With the Anterior Teeth we do not generally use a clamp and the rubber is placed by commencing at one side and then crowding the rubber through each proximal space in the order they should go, until the opposite side is reached. The rubber dam holder should be applied to one side before commencing the adjustment, and, as soon as the teeth have been forced through the holes, the other side of the holder should be attached.

With Posterior Teeth the holder should be attached to the short side of the rubber to prevent curling into the mouth, which would be the same side of the dam as the teeth are situated in the mouth, right or left. Adjust clamp to be used as this tooth receives first attention, while the remaining teeth are one by one pushed through. until the most anterior one is reached, when the remaining side of the rubber is secured with the holder.

To Prevent Leakage Around the Teeth the edges of the holes must turn toward the roots. This is accomplished by first pressing the dam well against the gums while grasping the rubber on either side of the tooth and drawing it tight, then releasing the rubber so that it slackens and then gently moving it occlusally. This will generally have the effect of inverting the edges. If inversion is not complete pass a small blunt instrument, as a spatula or dull explorer, around the gingival to turn the edge under.

The Use of the Ligature is to assist in inverting the edges of the holes in the rubber dam and to secure the edges about the teeth in this position against displacement by the movements on the part of the patient or the operator.

Caution in the Use of Ligatures is most important as much permanent injury is done the gingival attachments by the careless crowding of these on the dental ligaments. This is particularly the case where the proximal gum festoons are high as in these cases, especially with young people, the attachment to the tooth is also high. A tight ligature tends to encircle the tooth in a straight line and would thereby ride down the high proximal attachments, if the ligature is crowded to the full height both labially and lingually. Hence either the labial or the lingual should not be crowded to the full height of the crown.

Ligatures Are Made of well-waxed floss specially prepared for the purpose, cut into lengths of about five or six inches. Some economy may be practiced where three teeth are to receive ligatures by starting with a piece about twelve inches long. Tie the first tooth in the center of the strand and when the ends are cut off enough remains for the other two, thus getting three out of the amount usually used for two.

The Cutting of the Loose Ends may be practiced for all the teeth except the lower anterior, cutting one or two millimeters from the knot. With the lower anterior teeth, ends of two or three inches should be left from each knot and the farther ends of all tied together, and weighted to overcome the efforts of the patient to elevate the lower lip, which endangers the security of the dam.

The Most Popular Knot for tying ligatures is the ''surgeon's knot,'' either full or half. This knot is made by passing the ends around each other twice before each tie is made, for the ''full surgeon's knot,'' while for the ''half surgeon's knot'' this is done with only the first half of the knot.

The ''Wedelstaedt Tie'' is even more secure than the above and is made by using the first half of a ''surgeon's knot'' on the lingual side of the tooth first and then passing contacts with the ends on either side of the tooth, complete the operation with a ''half surgeon's knot'' on the labial, thus circling the tooth with two strands.

The Removal of Ligatures from the tooth when the operation has been completed should be accomplished before the rubber dam has been disturbed, and is best done by the use of a small sharp-pointed knife as a No. 1 gum lancet. The thread should be severed to one side of the knot on the labial or buccal side, and by grasping the knot with a pair of pliers, the thread is pulled through from that side.

Where Amalgam Fillings Have Just Been Completed in a proximal space the ligature about a tooth so filled as well as that around the proximating tooth should be cut so that the part lying gingivally from the fresh amalgam will be loosened and will pass out to the lingual embrasure. The ligature about a tooth in which there has just been completed a filling in both the mesial and distal should be cut on the lingual portion. This action will result in both ends being loose ends. Attention to this point will prevent the ligature plowing a ditch in the amalgam and destroying the filling, in many cases, at the gingival-cavo-surface.

A Good Rule to Remember with mesial fillings is to cut to the mesial of the knot; with distal fillings cut to the distal of the knot and where a tooth has both mesial and distal fillings cut ligature on the lingual.

The Selection of the Clamp should be made and then tried on the tooth it is intended to be used upon. One should be secured that has jaws which fit the contour of the tooth at its gingival border, that will remain in position and yet does not hug the tooth so tightly as to cause the patient pain or in any way injure the soft tissues.

The Method of Applying the Clamp with the dam is to stretch the rubber over the clamp, then apply the clamp forceps and carry all to position on the desired tooth, using the hole in the dam thus intended as a means of getting a view of the tooth to be clamped, which aids in the placing.

Some of the older makes of clamps require that they first be placed in position on the tooth and then with the first fingers of each hand the hole is distended in the rubber dam sufficiently to permit it to slip over the bow of the clamp.

In Using Cervical Clamps for cavities on the buccal and labial surfaces in the gingival third the dam is first passed to position and then the clamp applied.

The Removal of the Rubber Dam is accomplished by the following order of procedure:

First—The removal of the ligations as before described.

Second—Pull the rubber to the buccal or labial and with a sharp pair of scissors cut strips passing between the teeth.

Third—Disengage one side of the dam holder.

Fourth—With the right hand remove the clamp which should be holding the rubber dam, remove all clear of the mouth immediately, as the patient does not take kindly to any delays at this stage of the procedure.

Fifth—Inspect the rubber to see if it has all been removed.

Sixth—Inspect the teeth for any portions of rubber dam, ligatures or stray particles of filling material. Now proceed to knead the gums with the fingers, at the same time flooding them with a forceful stream of water from the syringe, to cleanse them and to re-establish circulation.

The Use of Absorbents may be resorted to in place of the rubber dam for short operations and more particularly with the upper teeth as these are the most easily managed. Absorbents are to be had in the market in the form of rolls and napkins at small cost and are to be discarded after once used, which is the only hygienic method. In their use particular attention must be paid to the mouths of the ducts responsible for the most abundant secretions and the absorbents so placed as to not only readily absorb the fluid which is ejected, but also that they compress the ducts thereby restricting the flow.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

TREATMENT OF HYPERSENSITIVE DENTINE.

Hypersensitive Dentine is dentine which is more than normally responsive to mechanical or chemical irritation and thermal changes.

Normal Healthy Dentine is only slightly sensitive, but when exposed to abnormal conditions and irritating agents it may become excruciatingly hypersensitive.

The Sensations Are Conveyed to the Pulp by means of the contents of the dental tubules which are prolongations of the odontoblasts. The odontoblasts are thickly surrounded by the terminal fibers of the nerves within the pulp.

The Contents of the Tubuli is largely protoplasm and although this has the power of transmitting sensation in response to irritation, it has not yet been demonstrated that the nerve fibers enter the tubuli or penetrate their contents. Hence it cannot be said that there is nerve tissue within the dentine.

The Direct Cause of Sensitive Dentine is the loss of the enamel which is the natural covering of the dentine.

The Most Common Agent in the removal of this normal covering is caries, which exposes the dentine to mechanical injury through contact with foreign substances and chemical irritants, particularly the acids of fermentation.

Rapidity of Caries has much to do with the degree of hypersensitiveness in dentine, as shown in the white and light stages or rapid forms of caries wherein the sensitiveness is most exalted, while with the dark, yellow and brown varieties it is not so marked and with the black or slow progressing form of caries the sensitiveness is scarcely above normal.

The Most Sensitive Part of a Carious Tooth is at the junction of the dentine with the enamel or cementum at the periphery of the tubuli. It is therefore evident that the second stage of caries will show a higher degree of hypersensitive dentine than the deep-seated stages and that the preliminary steps in cavity preparation in this division of caries will be more painful than the deeper cuts into the dentine, as then the more sensitive part has been passed.

Mechanical Abrasion is also an agent which produces hypersensitive dentine by first wearing away the enamel and then encroaching on the dentine. However, this process may be so slow and the irritation so slight as to act as a stimulus to the odontoblasts and result in the obliteration of the dental tubuli by the deposit of calcific matter termed "tubular calcification." When this is the result all sensation may be absent.

Exposure of Cementum through gum recession is another exciting cause of hypersensitive dentine aggravated by allowing the accumulation of sordes on the cementum which is lost by decay exposing the dentine.

Abnormal Oral Secretions often produce hypersensitive dentine and may be particularly looked for in the convalescent stages of fevers, as well as in dyspepsia, neuralgia, pregnancy, pulmonary tuberculosis and acute rheumatism.

Hypersensitive Dentine is found in poorly calcified dentine including the teeth of the growing child; teeth that have not been erupted for more than a few months; the teeth of those who follow indoor lives, particularly if they are under a heavy mental strain, as well as anything which may produce nervous irritation or debility.

The Varying Temperaments of Patients must be studied and understood to best cope with the problem of hypersensitive dentine. The suffering is actual upon the part of some, while there are those who magnify every pain and seem to be able to stand nothing and make as much fuss about a pin stick as it would be possible for them to make were they thrust through with a bayonet. The operator must separate these classes and vary the methods. He must understand the actual conditions and, by kind words of encouragement and a positive procedure, stimulate the nervous to withstand the necessary pain. This can only be done when the operator has full control of his own feelings, seeing to it that his temper is not ruffled, for, having lost control of himself, he has no control over the patient.

Highly-Wrought, Nervous Temperament is, by nature, sensitive to impressions, especially augmented by environment or occupation and calls for the most skillful management of both patient and teeth. People of this type are generally of a high order of intelligence and when handled by a master hand prove a most desirable clientage.

Patients of This Temperament will permit being hurt for a short time provided something definite has been accomplished. They should be advised at times as to the coming pain, and for what purpose it must be inflicted, as the forming of an angle or the flattening of a wall, explaining, when done, that that which had been intended has been accomplished. They will stand for no awkwardness or fumbling but admire exactness and precision and are the class which will reward the dentist most liberally for painstaking efforts and actual achievements. This class make the day long but they serve to stimulate the dentist to his best efforts and work to the advancement of the really progressive operator.

The Irresponsible Individuals who have no mental or physical stamina require a strong hand to control them in any emergency in life. They go to the dentist only when forced there by pain or are children brought by their parents. While a dentist should never be harsh with any patient, yet this class will necessitate, many times, stern commands, and a ''why, of course'' method. In cases of this character where the operator has chosen to assume the role of a disciplinarian, the stern proceeding should universally be tempered with the kindest of tones before the patient leaves the chair, that he may depart with the impression that the dentist is kind of heart and has been severe only for the patient's good.

The Naturally Cowardly Patient who is strong, healthy and robust, yet lives in mortal dread of any physical discomfort, is the hardest class to manage. This class of patients have generally been raised in luxury and taught by example made possible by their environment, that they should not even be inconvenienced. They seldom work and mistake that tired feeling for sickness. To be hungry, cold or warm, is described by them as ''simply terrible.'' With such, often the best an operator can do is simply to temporize to keep the teeth comfortable. To attempt thorough work merely drives them away to seek gas for painless extraction.

The Patient Who Simulates Pain should be early detected and severely dealt with. An operator should remember that a large amount of the gesticulation, grabbing the working hand, cringing and outcry, is simply voluntary on the part of many patients to inform the dentist that he is hurting them. Most of this can be done away with by the following procedure:

First tell the patient that ''this will not hurt you,'' and then proceed to make the statement true by working on enamel margins, even to gently scratching on the external surface. Then state to the patient that ''this may hurt a little'' and the operator can proceed to test the dentine for its sensitive portions. He may then proceed to do the less painful parts of cavity preparation. Lastly when it comes to cutting the angles and cutting sensitive portions the patient should be warned that this particular place may be sensitive but that a certain amount of cutting is necessary. Advise the patient to hold still for just a second or two and then he will be allowed to rest. Caution him against moving during this brief period as it will undo what has been accomplished, necessitating his withstanding the pain again. Praise the patient for his bravery when he has complied with the request and advise him as to the work accomplished. All this instills confidence into the patient as to the dentist knowing what he is about and as to his knowledge of the place and time that pain may be expected. Nothing unnerves a patient so much as to get the slightest idea that the dentist is not aware of the pain he is inflicting or that he has little care for one's sufferings and has no definite idea as to when it will end.

The Expert Simulator of Pain will try to make the operator believe he is causing pain when he is not suffering at all, with the idea that the dentist will be frightened into extreme care in his case. This class is easily detected by scraping an instrument on a surface where pain is impossible, as the external surface of a tooth. If the demonstrations continue it is the operator's duty to inform the patient of the detection of the attempted deception and that such will not be further considered, at the same time advising him to save his demonstrations until he is hurt when they will be considered, and every effort made to lessen the pain.

The Agents for Relief of Sensitive Dentine are:

First—Those which produce a physical change in the contents of the tubuli, as desiccation, heat and cold.

Second—Those agents which destroy or disorganize the contents of the tubuli, as caustics and escharotics.

Third—Those agents which, when applied, to the dentine, locally or hypodermically produce a condition of analgesia or absence of sensibility to pain, termed local anesthetics, and anodynes as phenol, menthol, morphine, oil of cloves, cocaine and novocain.

Fourth—Those agents administered with the view of reaching the nerves of the pulp through the general system as bromide of potassium, nitrous-oxide chloroform, etc.

Fifth—The mechanical condition under which the cutting of sensitive dentine is done.

Physical Agents.

Desiccation Is a Physical Agent of great virtue in alleviating hypersensitive dentine and accomplishes the result by extracting the moisture from the tubuli, which is a large constituent of the protoplasm.

This Is Best Accomplished by first flooding the cavity with absolute alcohol which has an affinity for water, and then directing into the cavity a continuous stream of warm air which is more effective if the temperature can be controlled so as to gradually raise it to the highest point tolerable to the patient. Painless cavity excavation can be accomplished to the depth of desiccation which will vary with different cases.

A Continuous Stream of cold air will have a similar action through its desiccating effect and is practiced where compressed air is at hand. The force with which the air is contacted with the cavity walls is a factor in its efficiency.

Heat and Cold When Moist will produce physical changes in the protoplasm of the tubuli sufficient to destroy the sensation of pain.

In any locality of the body a moderate rise in the temperature, particularly moist heat, quickens vital action and heightens functional activity. This is true of sensitive dentine and the temperature must be materially raised before a stage of paralysis is reached.

The Best Means of Applying This Method is to direct into the protected cavity a forceful fine stream of water which can be gradually raised in temperature to the point of toleration, cutting the sensitive part of the cavity while the stream of water is still playing on the point being operated upon.

With the Application of Cold to any part, vital phenomena of every nature is retarded and entirely ceases with the lower temperatures.

The Best Method of Applying this principle is to spray the cavity with a highly volatile liquid as ethyl chloride, sulphuric ether, and its combinations with choloroform. The rapid evaporation lowers the temperatures, extracting the heat from that with which it comes in contact.

The Primary Pain in Applying these agents may be lessened by filling the cavity, temporarily with stopping, directing the spray first on this and the surrounding parts and later removing the stopping, directing the spray into the cavity without causing much pain, provided there is not a hyperemic pulp within the tooth, in which case all thermal changes must be avoided.

The Electric Current (Cataphoresis) as a physical agent to obtund sensitive dentine should be mentioned. It has been used to assist in carrying various drugs into the dentine, to facilitate their activity, but its use has proved so unsatisfactory, in many ways, that further description of this method is unwarranted.

Destroying Agents.

Caution in the Use of Caustics and Escharotics to relieve sensitive dentine in deep-seated cavities will save much pulp complications and great care must be exercised in their use not only for the safety of the pulp but also the soft tissues about the tooth must be effectually protected. Many caustics are not limited in their action and when once applied on the dentine continue their destruction to the envelopment of the pulp. Arsenic trioxide is a notable example of this.

Zinc Chloride is one of the oldest and most efficient remedies for hypersensitive dentine. Its action is due to its affinity for water and its coagulating properties upon albumen.

The Danger in its Use in deep-seated cavities is through the liberation of hydrochloric acid, which causes pain in case of a nearly exposed pulp. This effect may be modified by using it in a solution of one part chloroform and four parts alcohol. Add the zinc crystals to the proportion of five grains to the ounce. Clarify by adding a drop of hydrochloric acid.

The Methods of Using Zinc Chloride are:

First—Saturate a pellet of cotton with the above solution, place in the cavity and evaporate with a draft of warm air from the warm air syringe or chip blower.

Second—Mix a thin paste of zinc oxychloride cement. Paint the sensitive dentine with this cement and cover with stopping or gutta-percha. After a few days or weeks, often, excavation may be accomplished with little pain.

Caustic Potassa and Phenol, equal parts (Robinson's remedy), often relieves sensitiveness of the dentine and is applied by placing a pledget of cotton in the cavity, always with the rubber dam in position to protect soft tissues.

Silver Nitrate may be employed to good effect upon exposed surfaces of dentine in the posterior parts of the mouth, such as those on the occlusal surface of molars due to abrasions, or exposed cementum. It reduces sensitiveness and by forming the albuminate of silver it retards decay even so far, in some cases, as to render the surfaces to which it has been applied immune to caries. On account of its discoloring effect its use is not permissible in parts exposed to view.

Formaldehyde. Formaldehyde is a protoplasmic poison and is a great desensitizer. The author called the attention of the profession to this method at the World's Columbian Dental Congress in 1893 in a paper before that convention. However, its irritating effects are sometimes injurious to the pulp and great care has to be exercised in its use, particularly that there is not a near pulp exposure. It is of advantage if the material can be so combined as to cause a slow liberation of the formaldehyde, which materially lessens danger to the pulp and pain from its application.

Local Anesthetics and Anodynes.

Procaine stands first as a local anesthetic to desensitize dentine. The methods of using novocain for sensitive dentine are slow absorption and injection by pressure, in the tooth and hypodermically.

The Slow Absorption Method is best practiced by putting into the cavity a one-sixth grain tablet of procaine; over this place a pledget of cotton which has been moistened with the normal salt solution, and proceed to fill tooth with stopping, seeing the cavity again for excavation in twenty-four or forty-eight hours.

Pressure Anesthesia of the dentine may be accomplished in two general ways. The dentine should be thoroughly sterilized, the above application of procaine in the normal salt solution made, over this a piece of unvulcanized rubber placed, and all crowded into the cavity with as much force as the patient will permit.

High Pressure Syringes are sometimes of service to simply desensitize the dentine, but their use for this alone has never become general practice, due to the danger of pulp infection.

Phenol (known to the laity as carbolic acid) is a valuable remedy for hypersensitive dentine, as well as for materially lessening the pain caused by the blast of air from the chip blower, and should never be forgotten when the patient complains of the air causing pain. In addition to coagulating the albumen in the tubuli it possesses analgesic properties.

The Method of Using Phenol for sensitive dentine is to carefully desiccate the dentine with alcohol and warm air, applying a pledget of cotton saturated with the phenol, directing thereon a current of warm air until the cotton is nearly or quite dry. This should be repeated as often as the case demands.

Oil of Cloves is a valuable remedy in this respect and the method of its use is the same as that just described for phenol.

Oil of Cloves and Phenol Combined, as two parts phenol and one part oil of cloves, applied to the dry open cavity and evaporated therefrom, with the current of warm air, is more effective than either the phenol or oil of cloves alone. This method with these agents has to recommend it the fact of being a good means of sterilization, it is a pulp pacifier in deep cavities, and no injury can reach the pulp, provided the temperature of the current of warm air is not too high.

Through the General System.

Potassium Bromide in 5-grain doses three times a day for forty-eight hours previous to a sitting at the dentist's will do much to remove the nervousness caused by the fear of the intended visit and serve to minimize the pain to be endured.

Nitrous Oxide when properly administered is of great value and efficiency. It should be combined with oxygen or compressed air in proper proportions. So combined and administered, it may be given for a protracted period, long enough to prepare one or more sensitive cavities without pain to the patient and in most cases with no danger to health or life.

Somnoforme. Somnoforme when administered through a special apparatus is one of our most efficient means of rendering the patient semi-conscious and practically immune from any pain of dental operations. In the administering of this as well as other anesthetics for analgesia, all of the rules pertaining to the administration of the same anesthetic for major operations must be observed as the same danger to life exists.

Chloroform Slowly Administered and only to the first stage of anesthesia is a most valuable means of dealing with severe cases. This is particularly true of the A. C. E. mixture (alcohol, chloroform and ether, equal parts). The primary effect is to paralyze the sensory nerves, as the ends of the fingers, the skin and mucous membrane in general and this is true in the tooth's pulp with the fibers ending in the odontoblastic layer of cells wherein abundant sensitiveness has been developed.

The Method of Administration is quite the same as that for any other operation except that it is not carried past the first stage of anesthesia. All that part of the preparation of the cavity not producing pain is carried out, after which the dental chair is tipped back to as recumbent a position as will admit of operating. A napkin is then spread over the lower part of the face, leaving the eyes uncovered. The chloroform, or better the A. C. E. mixture, is added, first slowly a drop or two at a time and carried to the point where the patient feels a tingling sensation in the finger tips or expresses the fact that they begin to feel the effects of the drug. The anesthetic should never be crowded or confined while the patient can smell the chloroform, but can be pushed more rapidly when the olfactory nerves have been paralyzed, so that the sense of smell is lost, and it is not long thereafter until the dentine can be excavated painlessly. As soon as the operator begins to operate the assistant should hold to the nostrils a large-mouthed bottle of the anesthetic to prolong the stage of anesthesia reached. At no time should the patient be sufficiently under the influence of the anesthetic to be unable to converse coherently or intelligently answer the questions put to him.

It must be remembered that any anesthetic has its dangers, particularly when its use is abused, but the above method can be recommended as comparatively safe. One writer reports its use in over 20,000 cases without ill effects. It is true that a large per cent of the cases wherein death has resulted from the administration of chloroform or ether have occurred in the first few breaths, as we believe due to a strong mixture used at first or before the nerve filaments of the air passages have been anesthetized.

If a few breaths administered as above, by the open method, proved fatal, literature would be replete with long accounts of druggists, physicians, dentists and others having met death by smelling of opened bottles of these drugs.

Rapid Breathing as a means of producing peripheral anesthesia should receive consideration, not only for hypersensitiveness of the dentine but for other minor dental operations as the use of hypodermic needle, lancing of abscesses and extraction of teeth. The anesthetic effect is brought about by superoxidization within the tissues caused by charging the blood with an abundance of oxygen.

This Method Is Employed by instructing the patient to take deep, long breaths as rapidly as possible and continue the same until a sense of dizziness is brought on, when from thirty to sixty seconds of the anesthetized condition will be found available for operating.

Mechanical Conditions.

The Mechanical Conditions under which the cutting of dentine is done is a great factor in the amount of pain produced.

Sharp instruments which cut without pressure upon the contents of the tubuli cause much less pain than dull ones even with hand instruments. With rapidly revolving engine burs this is also true to say nothing of the heat produced by the friction caused by rubbing surfaces which are worn away rather than cut, which is the chief source of pain in the use of burs.

The Cutting Should Be Done as much as possible at a right angle to the long axis of the tubules rather than to follow their course with pressure towards the pulp or in a line with their long axis.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

PROTECTION OF THE VITAL PULP.

The Normal Pulp has no tactile sense, neither is it responsive to thermal changes even though they vary considerably from the body temperature.

When Robbed of Its Normal Covering and Protection the reverse of the above conditions quickly develops. The sense of touch becomes very acute and any contact with foreign substances causes great pain. This is best illustrated when a tooth is broken through its crown by a blow, thus exposing the pulp. At first the pulp may be touched with the finger or an instrument without the knowledge of the patient but in a very few minutes the same will cause unbearable pain. Also at first the cold air does not affect the pulp, but, coincident with the development of the tactile sense, comes a repugnance to the cold.

The Chief Idiosyncrasy of the Pulp is its response to thermal changes and especially to cold, when these changes are rapid or the pulp is in any way hyperemic. A normal pulp will tolerate without response quite a range of temperature when the change is brought about slowly. This is generally the case when the pulp is covered with the full crown of the tooth. But when, through decay or other causes, this covering is all or partially lost, the changes are so rapid that the peculiar responsive features spoken of are developed.

The Recuperative Powers of the Pulp have been discussed by many writers. The previous teachings have been that the recuperative powers of this little organ were very limited. Recent research, however, has developed the fact that the possibility of repair in pulp tissue is much in harmony with the repair of the medullary tissue, or bone marrow. Pulp tissue responds readily to the repair of aseptic wounds in that tissue.

It would seem that those who have believed and taught these theories, have based their opinions on the great mortality of pulps, following exposure or traumatic injury, but have not taken into consideration the importance of aseptic measures in dealing with the exposure of this delicate tissue to infection. You should and may expect the same results here as elsewhere in dealing with vital tissue.

The Protection of the Pulp from its greatest enemy, sudden thermal changes, is most essential and as most of our desirable filling materials are good conductors of heat it becomes necessary to place some substance which is a poor conductor between the filling and the dentine, this operation being termed "capping the pulp."

The Indications for Pulp Protection are not always clear, but will involve a consideration of the age of the patient, extent of loss of dentine, location of the cavity in the tooth, location in the mouth, length of time the pulp has been exposed, the stage of hyperemia, the general health of the patient and the possibilities of pulp infection.

The Age of the Patient has a bearing on the successful issue of a conservative treatment, as the teeth of the young are more easily saved from further irritation through capping than are the teeth of those past middle age, while at the same time they demand capping more frequently under the same conditions. Again, the pulp should be saved if possible until the teeth are fully formed, and many times the teeth of the younger patients are badly decayed and the pulp in great danger before the teeth are complete, hence if the pulp can be conserved and devitalization avoided, it is of great good to the patient.

In Advanced Age the apical openings become smaller and many become much contracted, barely accommodating the vessels with a normal flow of blood so that a very slight congestion may cause death from strangulation or gangrene.

When a Large Amount of Dentine Has Been Lost, even though the pulp as yet seems normal, it is safe practice to avoid the placing of the best conductors, as gold or amalgam, in close proximity to the pulp as repeated shocks to the pulp through the filling from thermal changes may bring on hyperemia of that organ. In the use of phosphate of zinc cement in such cases, there should be an intervening media to prevent the irritating effect of phosphoric acid.

The Location of the Cavity is a factor in the demands for pulp protection, as well as the probability of success in extreme cases. The first portions of the pulp to show hyperemic conditions are those nearest to the point of irritation. These congestions are more dangerous when they appear in the body of the pulp, as they do where decay approaches the pulp in the gingival third. Hence, when a pulp is nearly exposed in this location it demands greater protection and is at the same time harder to save than when the horns of the pulp are involved.

The Location of the Tooth should be considered. Anterior teeth are subject to greater extremes of heat and cold than are the molars, hence the demand for preventive protection with the anterior teeth should be remembered. At the same time their exposed position makes pulp-capping more hazardous and it should be practiced with great care in this location. Again, less risk should be taken in the capping of pulps in the anterior portion of the mouth as it is better to amputate a number of questionable pulps than to have one die in the tooth with its consequent discoloration.

The Length of the Time the pulp has been exposed to the irritating influences is to be taken into account as the shorter the time of exposure, the greater the probabilities of success in capping.

The Stage of Hyperemia should be a safe criterion where there are actual pulp complications, as there will be in almost every deep-seated cavity. In active hyperemia, from causes other than bacteria, it is safe to protect the pulp from future irritation and insure its conservation. However, when the symptoms of passive hyperemia have developed it is not safe practice to attempt to restore the pulp to normal and expect permanency.

The Symptoms of Active Hyperemia when the pulp demands protection and success may be expected are:

First—When the excavated cavity exposed to the air causes a continued pain not of a throbbing nature and the condition is relieved by packing the cavity with dry cotton.

Second—When a blast of air from the chip blower causes a quick, sharp, shooting pain which subsides as quickly as it came.

Third—When the pulp shows the power of accommodation as evidenced by tolerating a draft of cold air when the same is gradually applied.

Fourth—When it is improbable that the pulp has become badly infected.

Pulps Infected With Bacteria should be excised as too large a percentage of those exposed and capped die and thereby bring reproach upon dentistry in general and chagrin to the careful operator.

The time was when the profession attempted to conserve all portions of the pulp found to be vital. However, this was in the days of imperfect root canal treatment and filling and about as many abscesses followed one kind of treatment as the other. But at the present time the partial removal of a pulp is attended with such universal success that the capping of exposed pulps, in general, is unwarranted, as most pulps are infected at the time of exposure. Even in the case of an accidental exposure in the preparation of a cavity neither cavity nor instruments are surgically sterile.

The General Health of the Patient must be considered when choosing between the conservative or radical treatment of the pulp. With the same conditions presented, the pulps in the teeth of the anemic patient, those wherein the vital processes are at low ebb, or the elimination of the vital ash is imperfect and cell metabolism is deficient, protective means of conservation are more imperative, while at the same time less risk should be taken in questionable cases.

With Robust and Particularly Plethoric Patients, all inflammatory processes run a rapid and riotous course, and when the pulp has taken on any stage of hyperemia changes towards dissolution are of rapid succession.

In Deep-Seated Cavities it is not unlikely that the thin layer of the dentine covering the pulp is infected and the pulp should be protected from the invasion by the thorough disinfection of the overlying dentine by medication, previous to filling as well as placing next to the dentine in question and under the filling a permanent dressing which will exert a mildly antiseptic influence for some time following the operation.

The Requirements of the Materials Used in Protective Procedures Are:

First—That they shall be poor conductors of thermal changes.

Second—That they shall be non-changing in character, both as to consistency and bulk.

Third—That they have no action upon the pulp.

Fourth—That they may be introduced into deep seated cavities without pressure.

The Materials Advocated for This Purpose Are Numerous and the market is flooded with preparations of a secret nature which are warranted to save the pulp in almost any stage of dissolution, but the operator who pins his faith to such slipshod methods will sooner or later find that he has been duped and his grief is measured by the extent to which he has employed these cure-all methods.

There Are Four Distinct Classifications wherein success may be expected in methods of pulp protection. The treatment of each class is here given.

First Class. In the Progressive Stage of Caries wherein but little dentine has been lost, yet a blast of air from the chip blower causes a quick, sharp pain, passing off as soon as the draft of air is checked, we find the simplest form demanding protective measures. This is the class most often neglected by the operator and many times irreparable injury is done a pulp by placing in such a cavity a filling of high conductivity, such as gold or amalgam. The patient often believes that "cold water leaks in about the filling" and may visit another dentist thinking that he has a poor piece of dentistry. and the patient may be lost to an otherwise good operator, all through the neglect of what may appear to the operator as a trivial matter.

The Treatment of the First Class is the thorough disinfection and then the application of phenol, full strength, for a few seconds, when the cavity should be dried and it will be found unaffected by the blast of air from the chip blower. The change is brought about by the superficial coagulation of the albumen in the exposed ends of the dental tubuli which renders them non-conductive.

Second Class. If, after one or two applications of the phenol as above, the distress from the blast of air is not relieved, or if the pain is continuous while the surface of the cavity is exposed to the air it is probably of the second class as met with in the nearer approaches to the pulp. This class of cases demands a media intervening the dentine and the filling.

The Treatment in the Second Class is as follows: Moisten the cavity with phenol and evaporate to comparative dryness. Then paint the entire dentinal walls with Caulk cavity lining or copal and gum dammar in alcohol and ether solution. Such a preparation can be had at the dental depots or it can be prepared by the druggist. This should be thin and spread evenly, applying one, two or three coats and drying with a draft of air from the chip blower after each coat. When the varnish is entirely hardened the filling may be placed.

Third Class. In the deep-seated stage of caries, where large quantities of dentine have been lost, even though the pulps may seem to be protected by secondary dentine that is much retracted, it is not safe to place a filling directly on the overlying dentine. The lost tooth structure should in a measure be replaced with a material which is a poorer conductor of thermal changes than dentine. This should be neutral as far as irritating properties are concerned, non-changing and should resist the force necessary to properly introduce the intended filling. Caulk pulp protector is recommended.

The Treatment in the Third Class is as follows: Phenolize and dry. Varnish with the above cavity varnish and dry. Flow over the dentine, covering most if not all of the axial or pulpal wall, or both, according to the class of cavity being treated, a thin layer of oxyphosphate of zinc cement, being careful not to include thereunder any air bubbles; also apply without pressure. Then allow this to set to complete hardness, when the filling may be completed. In the three classes given above it will be noted that coagulation of the protoplasm in the exposed ends of the tubuli was the first step. This is good practice from the fact that this layer of coagulum is the least irritant to the remaining protoplasm of anything of which we have knowledge. Phenol is very limited in the extent of its action and this layer of coagulation is very thin. Again, with this third class, it will be noted that in addition to the use of the phenol the cavity is given a coat of varnish before applying the oxyphosphate of zinc cement. This procedure is to prevent the irritating effects of the phosphoric acid, particularly while the cement is setting. Again, should the zinc contain any impurities their action on the pulp is prevented. One of the impurities of zinc is arsenic and some cements are thought to contain traces of this devitalizing agent. The cavity varnish given above is quite impervious to this element when it has been thoroughly hardened, a fact which should not be overlooked when it is desired to prevent the action of arsenic trioxide in a particular direction in a dental wall.

Fourth Class. In deep-seated cavities where there is a slight pulp complication from thermal shock and where the thin overlying layer of dentine is probably infected to some depth and more deeply affected in the process of caries, the dentine should be subjected to quite a continued disinfecting process and a portion of the lost dentine restored with a poor conductor of heat to shield the pulp from sudden thermal changes.

The Treatment in the Fourth Class of cases is as follows: The cavity should be flooded with a non-irritating antiseptic, as camphophenique, pure beechwood creosote or oil of cloves. If sealed in the cavity for twenty-four hours the result will be much better. The cavity should be then wiped dry with absorbent cotton and a thin paste of thymol and zinc oxide spread over the dentine overlying the pulp. Over this spread a layer of oxyphosphate of zinc cement and allow this to set hard before completing the filling.

In very questionable cases, the entire cavity may be completed with the cement and the patient dismissed for six months, at the end of which time, if the pulp is found to be normal, a portion of the cement may be removed and replaced with a more permanent material.

Pulp Preservers and So-Called Mummifiers should be avoided. Even their name is misleading and such preparations are used without permanent success in the majority of cases. Their use simply proclaims their users as unskilled laggards who will accept an uncertainty to avoid a little honest labor in pulp amputation and root filling. The entire procedure is diabolical and its condemnation cannot be couched in too severe terms. It is a retrogression in dentistry, unskilled in principle and unwarranted in practice.

Gutta-Percha as a Protecting Covering is not a success from the fact of its great range of contraction and expansion under varying thermal changes. When enclosed under a perfectly tight and unyielding filling, as all fillings should be, the change in bulk must have a piston-like effect upon the contents of the dental tubuli resulting in continued irritation.

Sulphate of Zinc Pulp Capping. A good pulp capping is made by thoroughly mixing four grains of the sulphate of zinc with ninety-six grains of plaster of Paris. This is mixed with warm water to the consistency of plaster for taking an impression. This paste is flowed over the nearly exposed pulp and allowed to set. Yet another reliable pulp capping is made from pure thymol and pure zinc oxide. The dentist can prepare these if he so chooses. However, both have been on the market for many years and are to be had at the dental supply houses.

CHAPTER XXXV.

PULPOTOMY, PULPECTOMY, AND PARTIAL PULPECTOMY.

Defined. Pulpotomy is defined as any operation on the dental pulp. Pulpectomy is that which designates the entire removel of the pulp. Partial pulpectomy means the partial removal of the pulp. We have been taught, have believed, and then taught that the recuperative powers of the pulp were practically nil. It would seem that this is in error and that, in case the pulp is not overwhelmed by bacteria, it is above the average of the other tissues of the body in its ability to withstand surgical treatment; that it undergoes repair in a perfectly orderly manner, and that this repair is in harmony with the general process of the repair of other connective tissues.

Requisites for Pulp Repair. Pulp repair depends upon the action of vital living cells and a continuous supply of nutriment, the same as with any other tissue repair. It is not surprising, therefore, to find no cases of pulp repair following pulp devitalization with arsenic, or where tissue destroying drugs or chemicals have been used after attempted pulp extirpation. It should be remembered that the pulp tissue does not extend to the several foramina, but that it meets the pericemental tissue some distance within each orifice. Pulp tissue and pericemental tissue are both connective tissue.

However, they differ physiologically as well as histologically, and their genetic cells produce different tissues. Pericemental tissue builds cementum and ages with the other tissues of the body. The pulp builds dentine but early senility is a pulp idiosyncrasy. The repair of traumatized pericemental tissue results in simple connective scar tissue, which is the case with other connective tissue similarly situated. The repair of pericemental tissue is normal as to time required. With the traumatized pulp following pulpotomy the process of repair is slow. The cause is probably inherent. The pulp early in life becomes semi-dormant, and awakens from its senile lethargy only for the repair of injury to that tissue or to the dentine, the tissue the pulp has built.

When the injury to the pulp is of such a nature that its genetic cells, the odontoblasts, are left vital particularly in the bulbous portion, the repair is accomplished by the odontoblasts and adventitious dentine results. This repair is expected following the operation known as "capping the pulp." The dental profession has long relied on this fact and expected secondary dentine as a protective measure. However, many pulps have been so long subjected to enemies, that degenerative changes have involved the coronal, or bulbous portion to a degree that the odontoblasts have been destroyed or so weakened as to no longer function. Such cases demand a clean amputation of at least the bulbous portion of the pulp.

This leaves the pulp with a wound in which there are no odontoblasts. We must rely on the connective tissue cells for repair. The usual process of the formation of a connective tissue scar develops. As previously indicated the process is slow. Long drawn out repair is favorable to a tissue metaplasia. The normal function of the pulp is the construction of a calcified tissue, which is an additional explanation of this metaplasia.

Pulpectomy. Pulp extirpation, or attempted extirpation, is time honored, but that is about the only honorable mention which can be made of it. The practice has been followed by millions of diseased areas about the apices of the teeth. This result is due:

First, to attempting the impossible; that of complete pulp removal. Only recently has this fact been brought to the foreground. First one investigator and then another has placed the evidence before us in a conclusive manner. The article by Dr. C. J. Grove in the *Journal of The National Dental Association,* Vol. 6, No. 8, page 669, and also the one by Dr. Walter Hass, of Switzerland, in the same publication, Vol. 8, No. 10, page 790, are striking examples. Figs. 135 to 175 inclusive are photomicrographs of sections of teeth all with vital pulps at the time of extraction.

After reading these articles and viewing the illustrations, it would seem that no dentist should longer harbor the illusion that it is at all possible to remove the entire pulp from the majority of teeth because of multiple canals and the many ramifications of the pulp through the dentine, particularly between the ages of twenty-five and forty-five. Those writers who have been reporting the results of their laboratory work pertaining to root anatomy of the apical third have given the percentage of the roots of teeth which have multiple pulp endings, as varying from 35 per cent to 95 per cent.

The different percentages are associated with different ages of the patients and with the different teeth in the same mouth. With

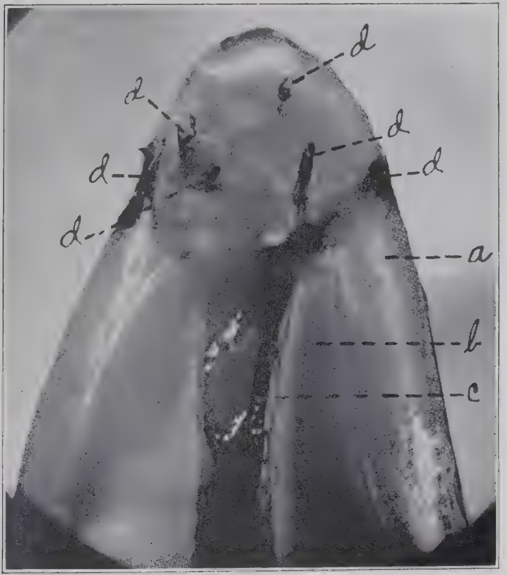


Fig. 135.—Upper left cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

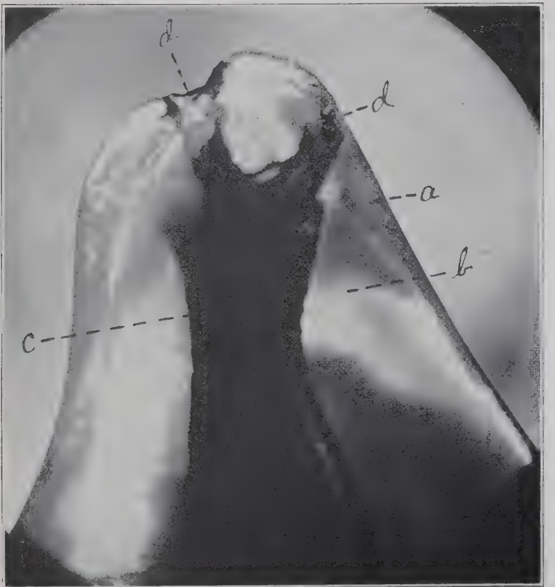


Fig. 136.—First left lower molar distal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*dd*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

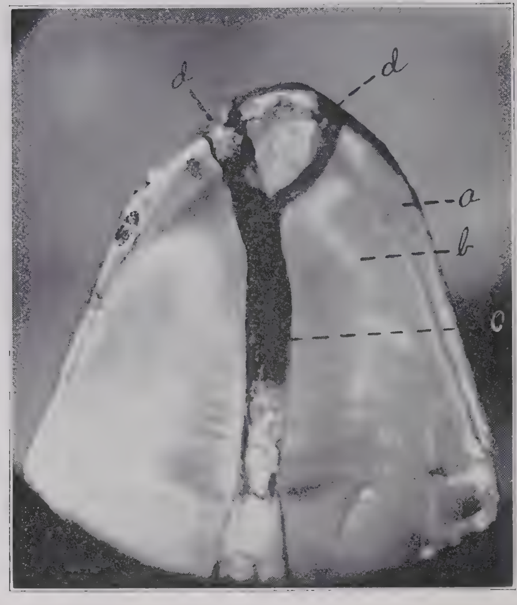


Fig. 137.—Left lower lateral. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*dd*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

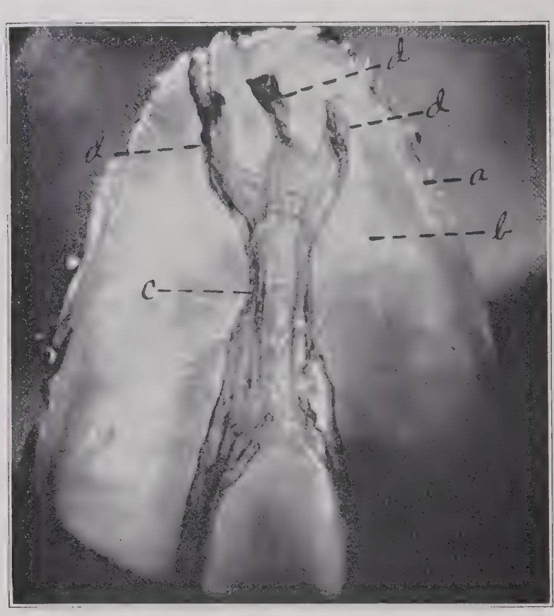


Fig. 138.—Right lower central. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

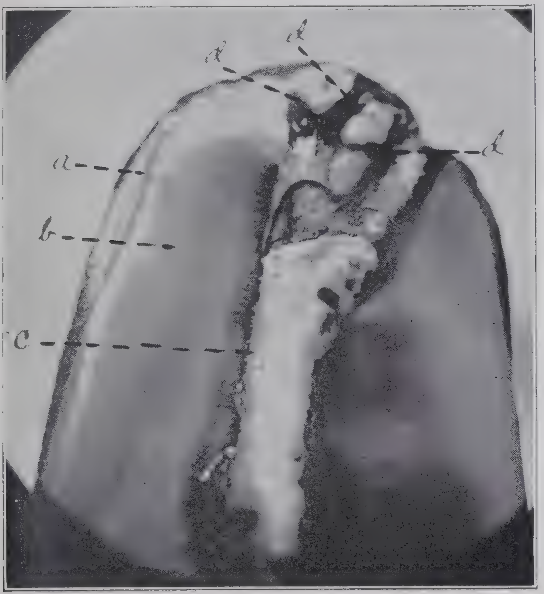


Fig. 139.—First left upper molar, mesio-buccal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

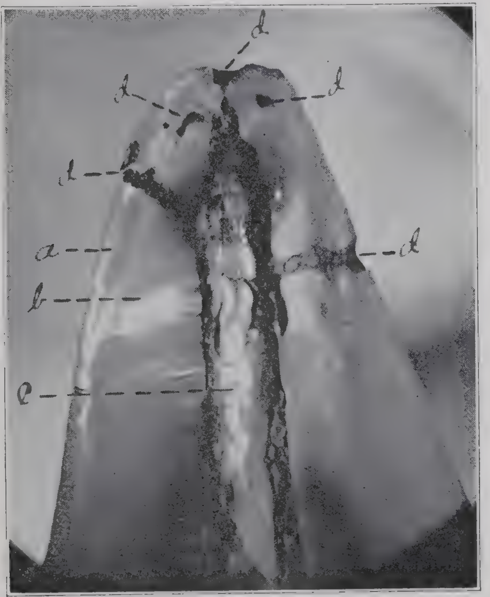


Fig. 140.—Second right superior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches and foramina (*d d d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

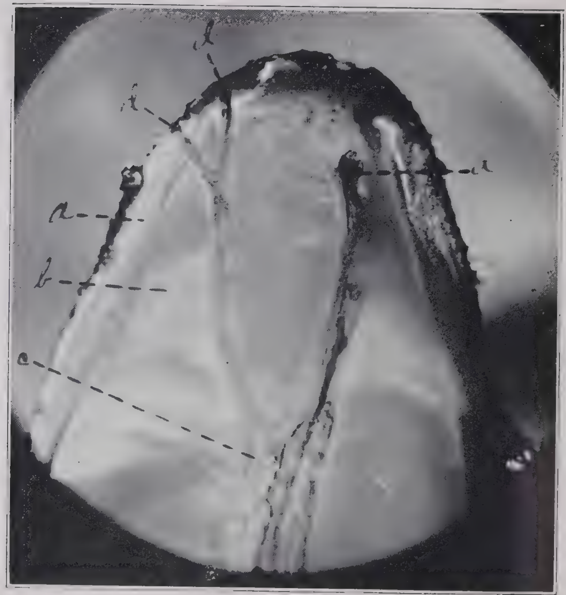


Fig. 141.—Second left lower bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches and foramina (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

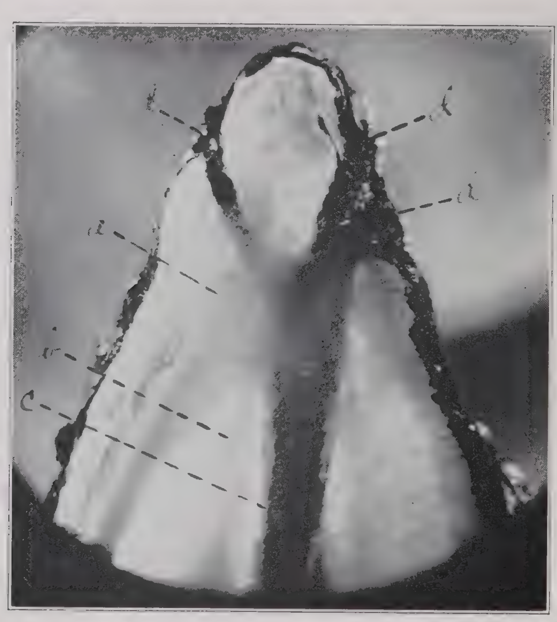


Fig. 142.—Right superior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

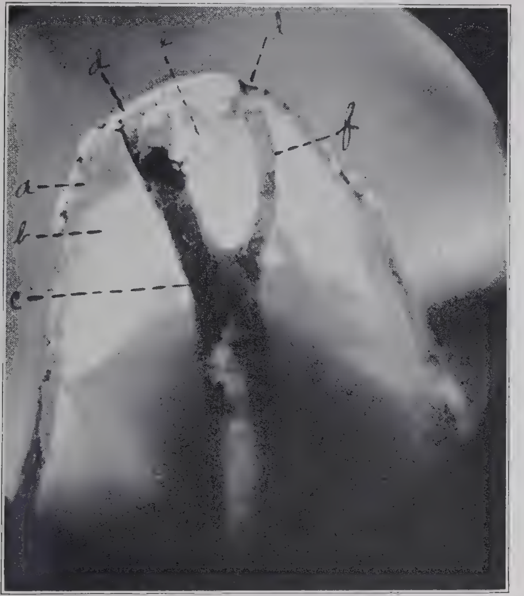


Fig. 143.—Right inferior lateral. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*dd*). Communicating canal (*e*). Lateral branch (*f*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

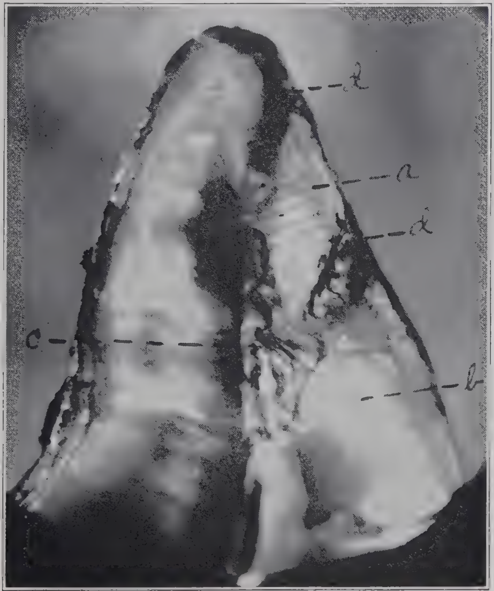


Fig. 144.—Left superior central. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

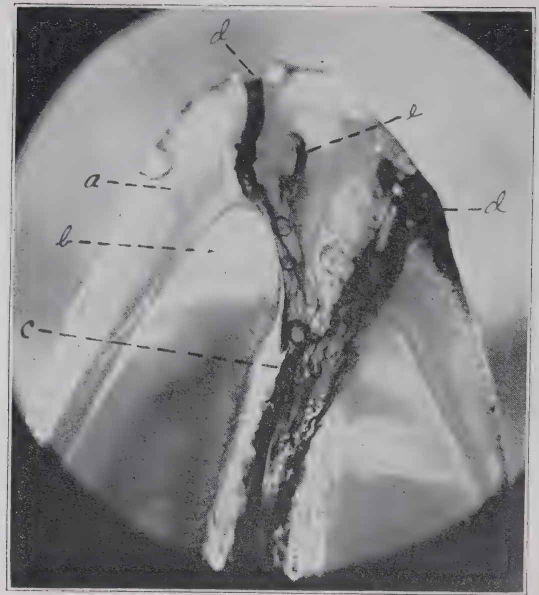


Fig. 145.—Right inferior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). Lateral branch (*e*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

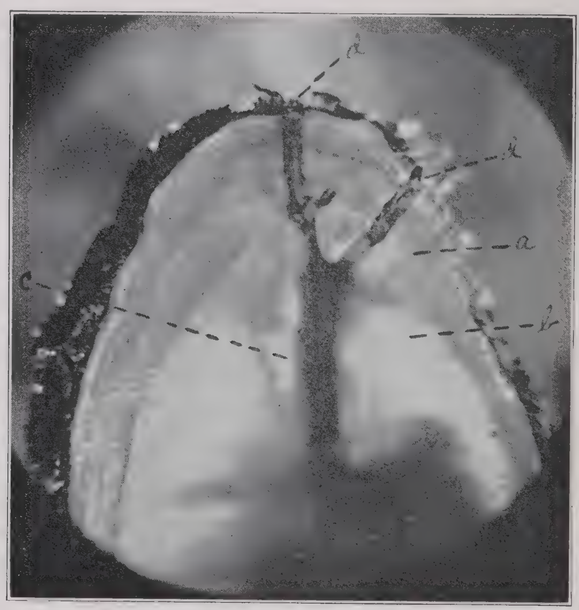


Fig. 146.—Second left superior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

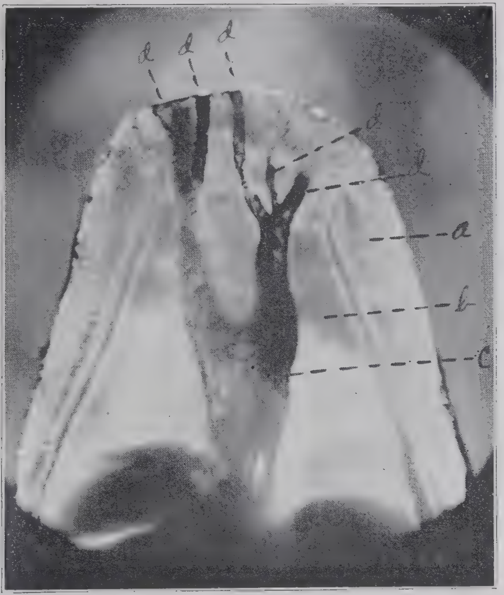


Fig. 147.—Second right superior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

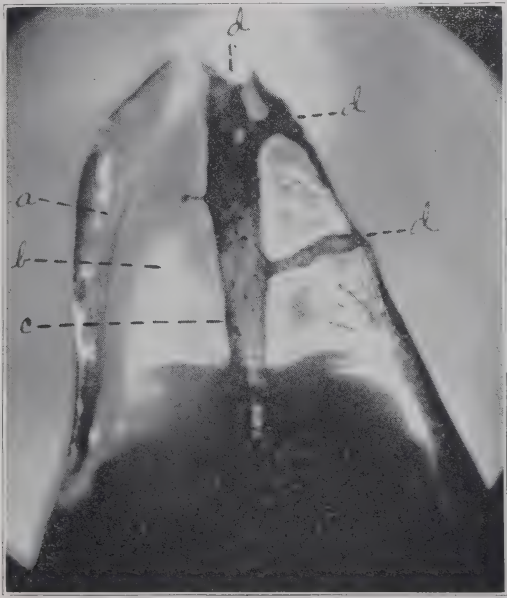


Fig. 148.—Left superior lateral. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

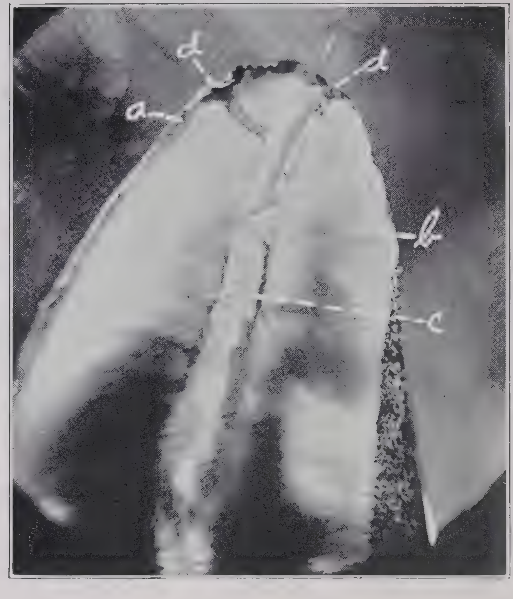


Fig. 149.—Left inferior central. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

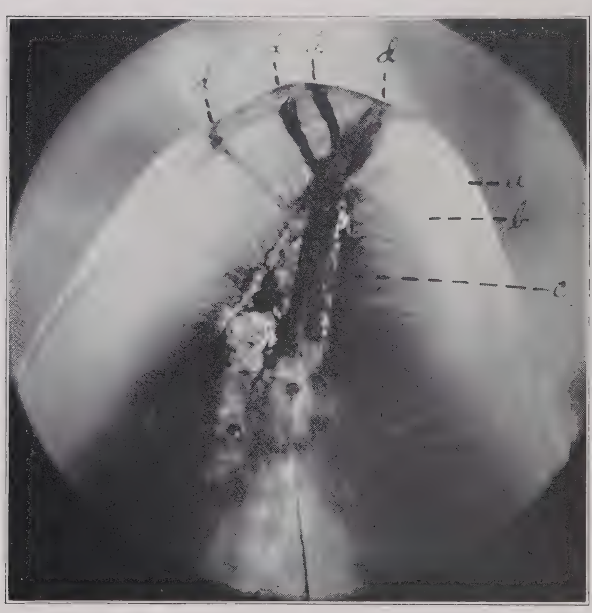


Fig. 150.—Second right inferior molar distal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

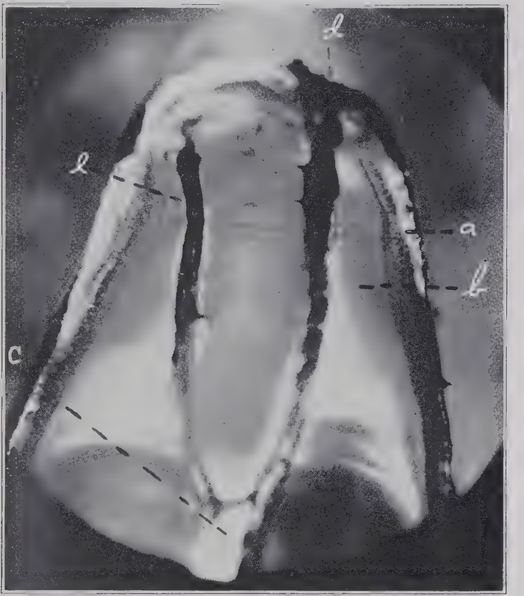


Fig. 151.—Second left inferior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramen (*d*). Lateral branch (*e*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

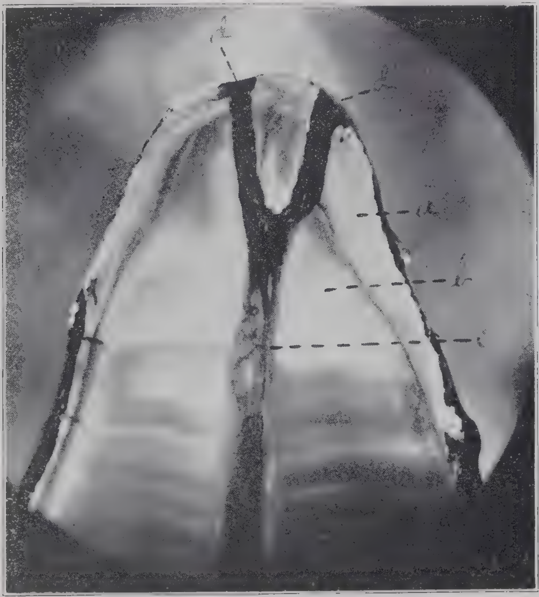


Fig. 152.—Right superior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

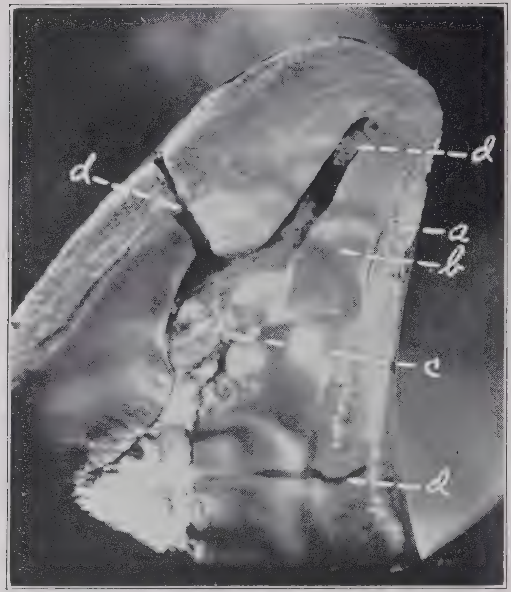


Fig. 153.—Right inferior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

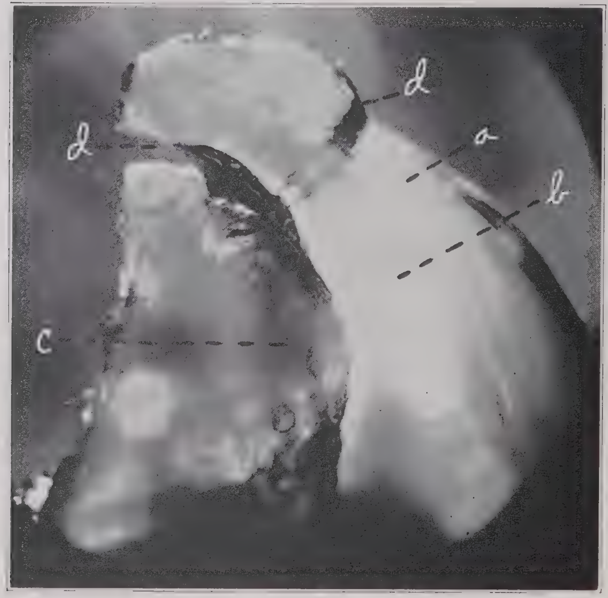


Fig. 154.—Second left superior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

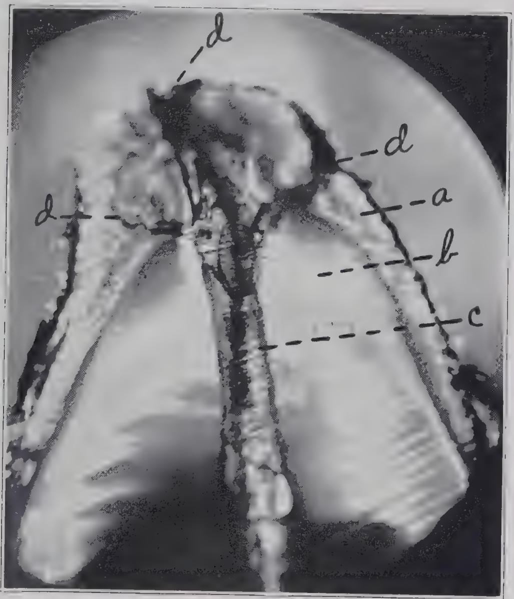


Fig. 155.—Left superior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

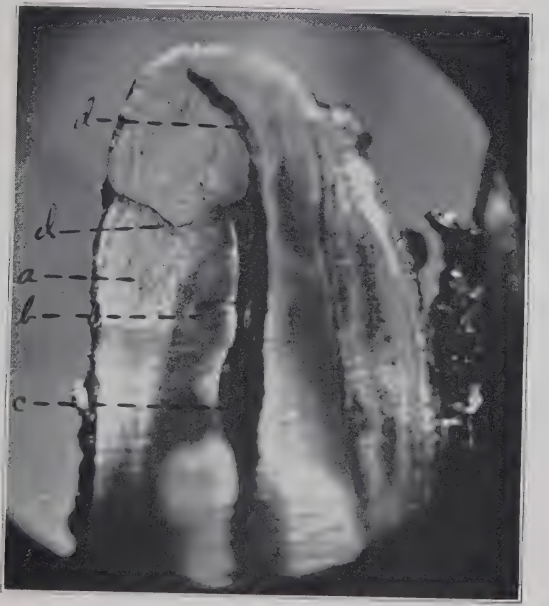


Fig. 156.—First left superior bicuspid, lingual root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

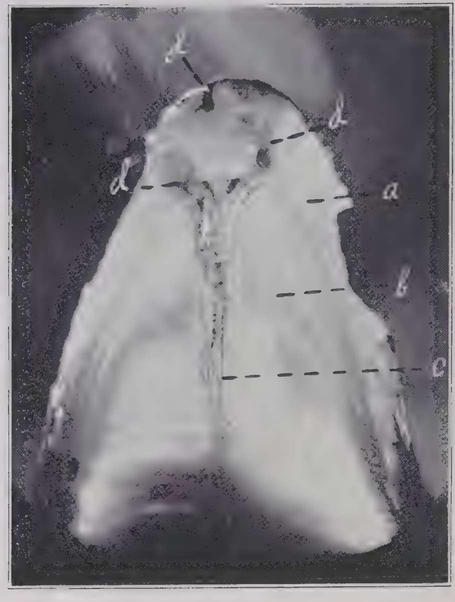


Fig. 157.—First right inferior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

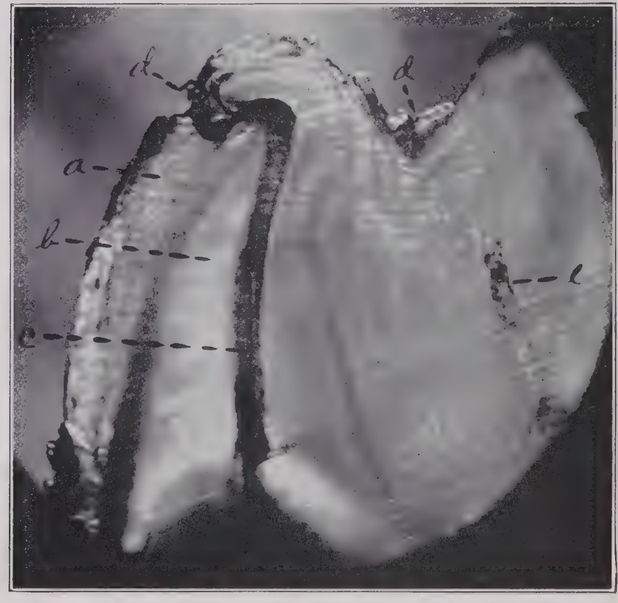


Fig. 158.—First right superior bicuspid buccal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). Pulp branch (*e*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

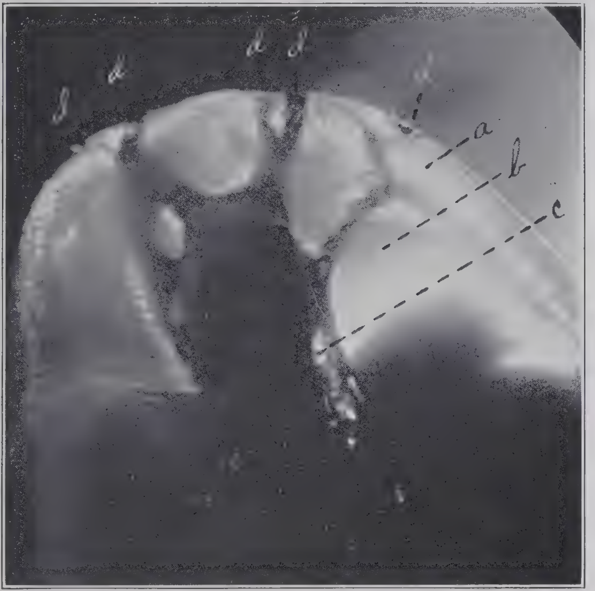


Fig. 159.—Second upper right bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

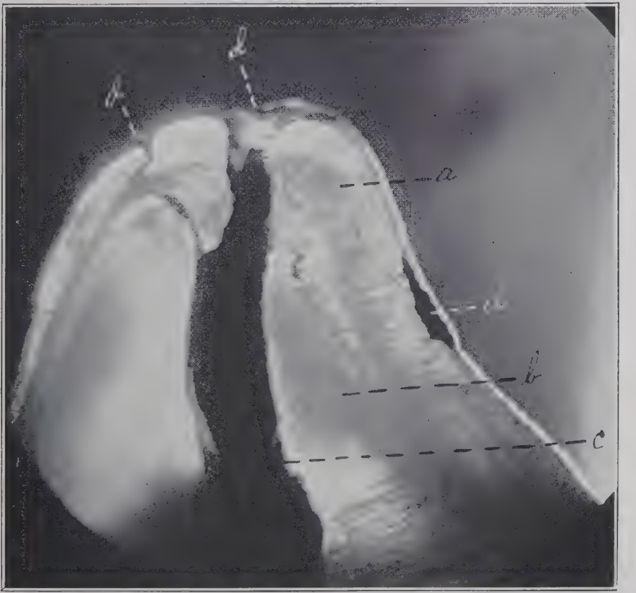


Fig. 160.—Left lower cuspid. Cenentum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

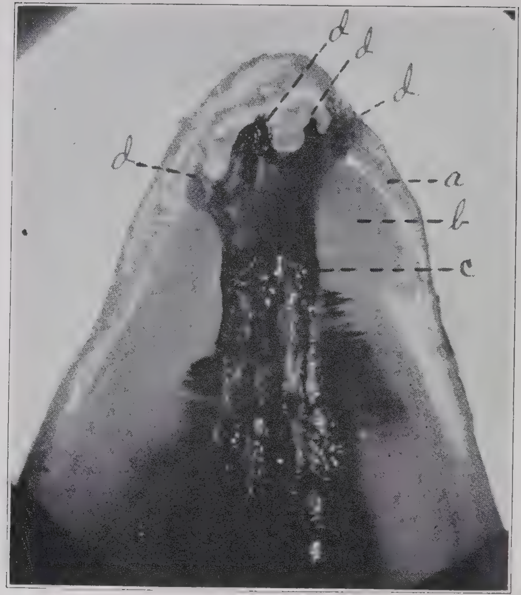


Fig. 161.—First left lower molar distal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

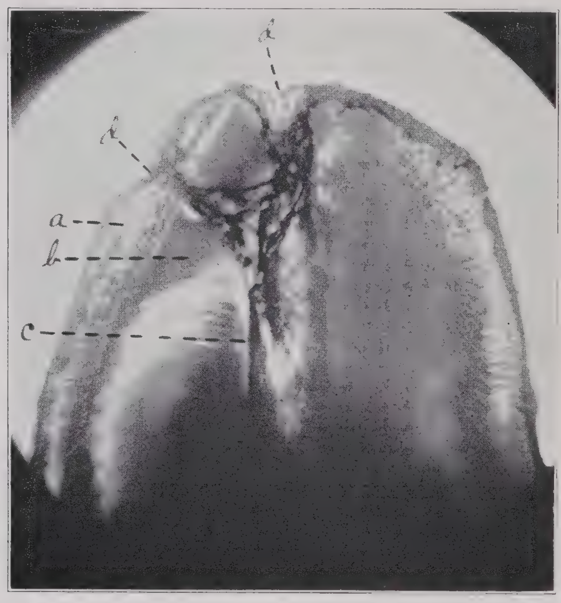


Fig. 162.—First right superior molar lingual root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

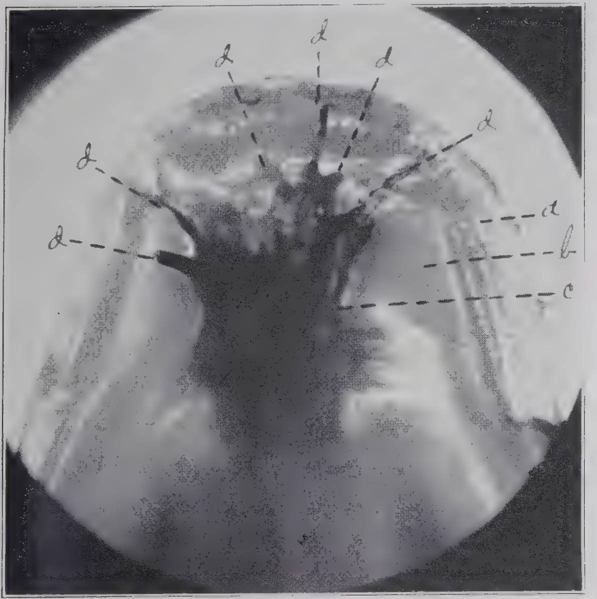


Fig. 163.—First right inferior molar distal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

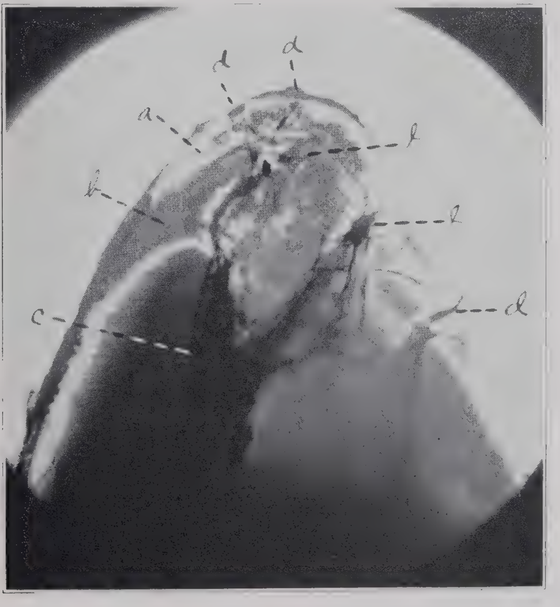


Fig. 164.—First right superior molar mesial buccal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d*). Lateral branches (*e e*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

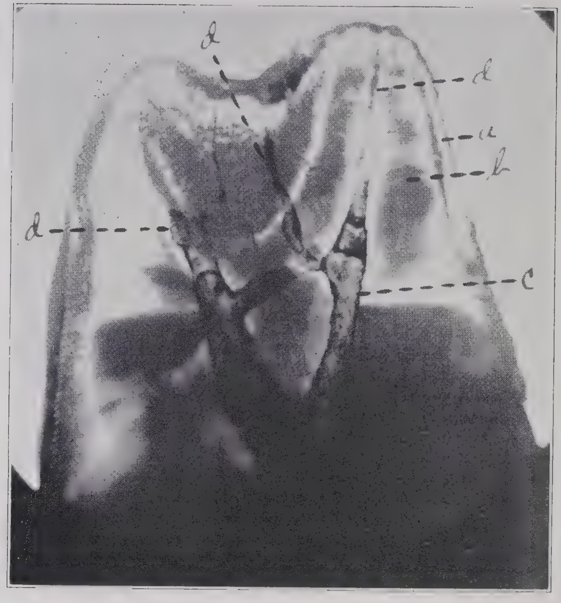


Fig. 165.—Second left inferior molar distal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

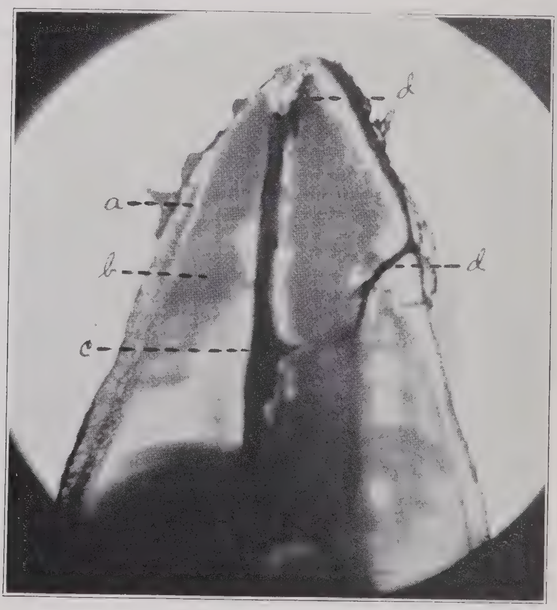


Fig. 166.—First left superior molar distal buccal root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

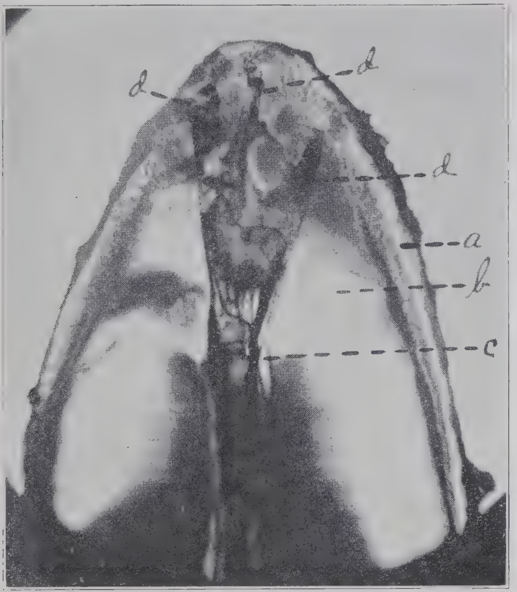


Fig. 167.—Second right superior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

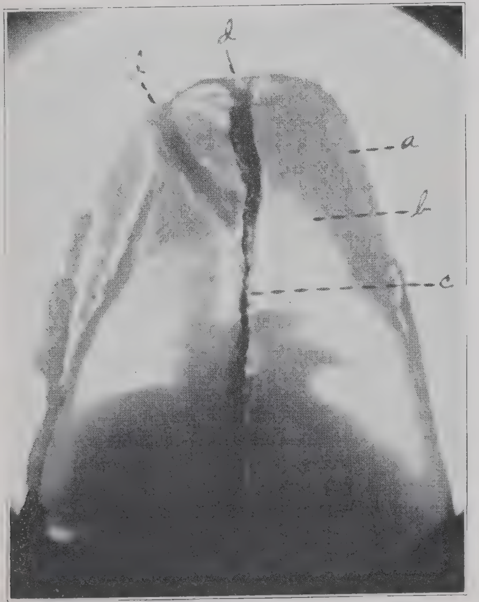


Fig. 168.—First left inferior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

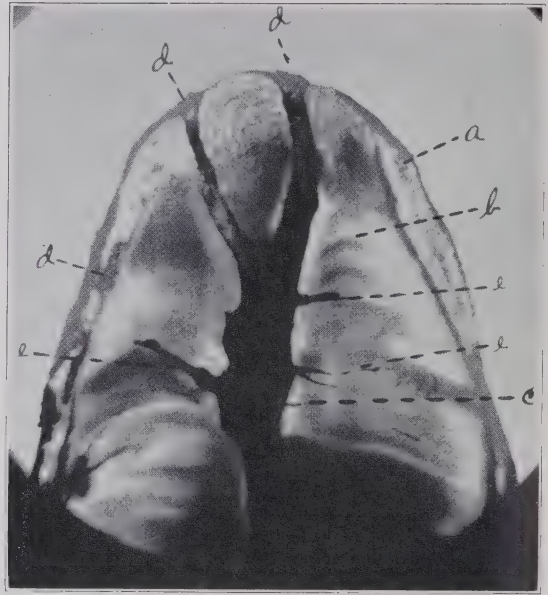


Fig. 169.—Second right superior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d*). Lateral branches (*e e e*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

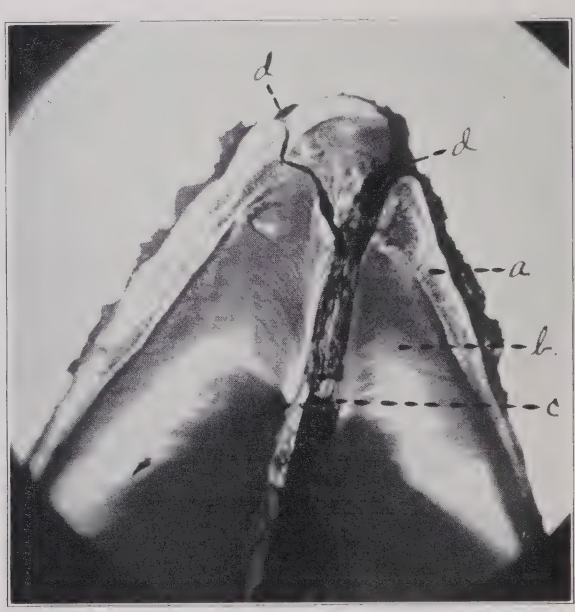


Fig. 170.—Right superior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

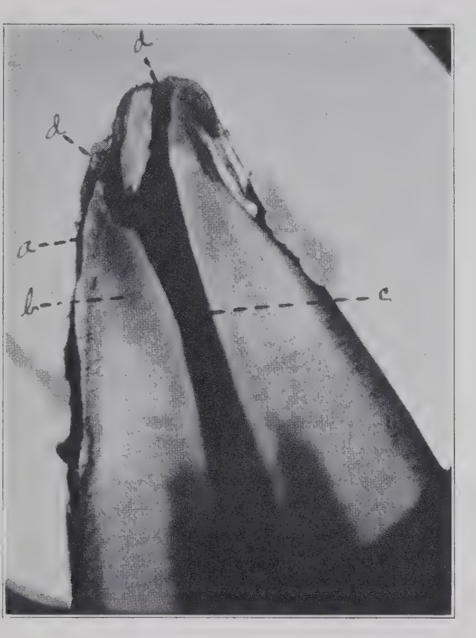


Fig. 171.—Right inferior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

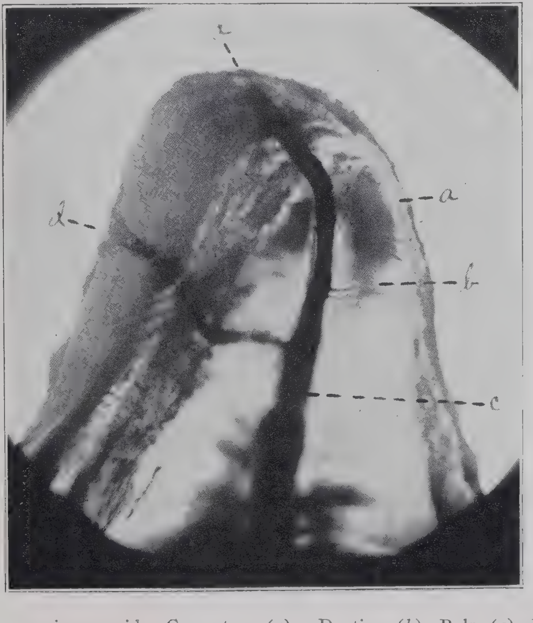


Fig. 172.—Right superior cuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

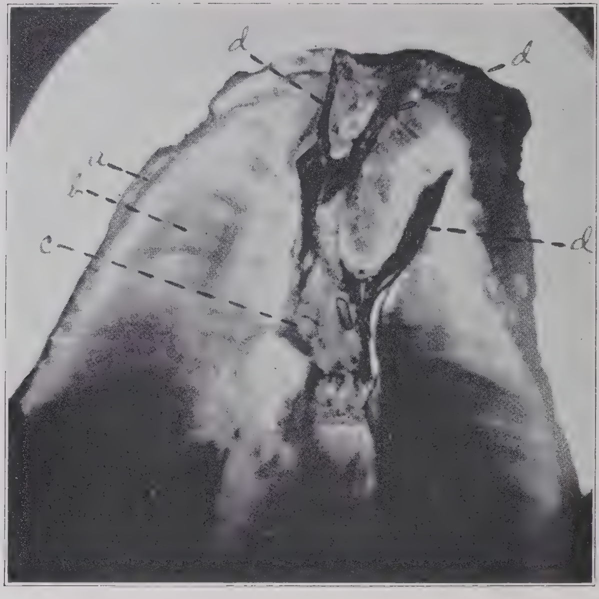


Fig. 173.—Left inferior lateral. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Lateral branches (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

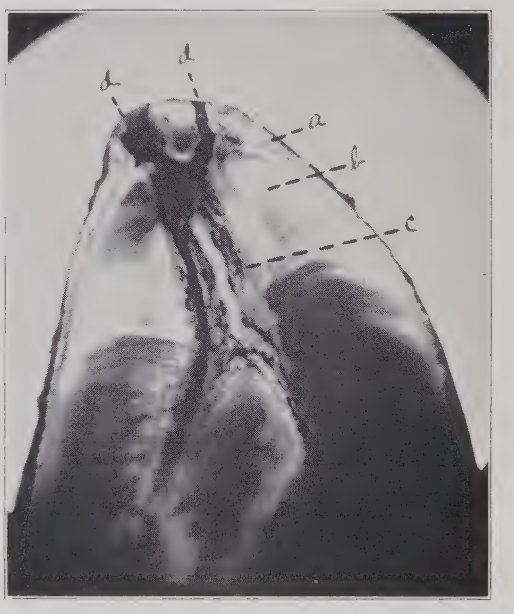


Fig. 174.—Right inferior central. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

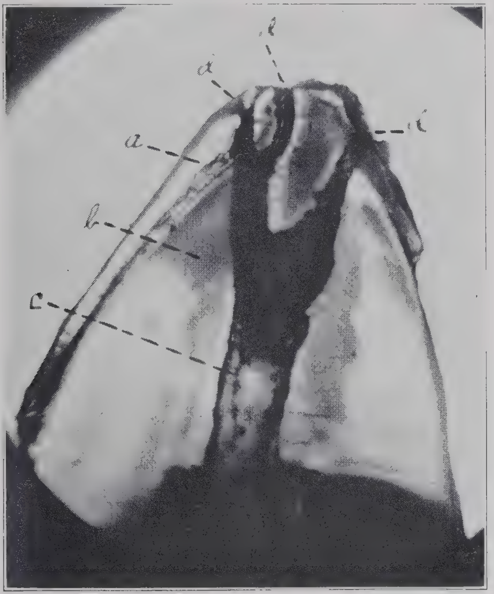


Fig. 175.—Right inferior central. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Foramina (*d d d*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

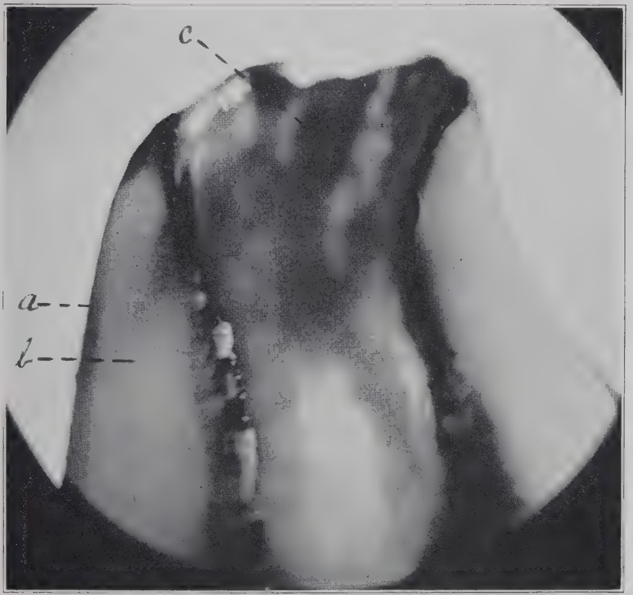


Fig. 176.—Second right inferior molar. Tooth was extracted soon after eruption. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Vacant pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 25.0 X.)

the various teeth in the mouth, by far the largest percentage of multiple canals is found with the roots of the molar teeth. As to the age of the patient, the greatest number of multiple canals may be found in case the teeth are extracted and sectioned when the patient is between the ages of twenty and forty-five.

Before the roots of a tooth are fully matured, or say at the time of normal eruption and before the tooth comes into full occlusion there is generally but one foramen, as shown in Fig. 176 with the pulp extending flush with the end of the root. However, cases are found where lateral canals have been established before root development has been completed as shown in Fig. 177. As a rule, there are several arteries with the accompanying veins and nerves passing to the pulp by way of this opening. When the tooth comes into occlusion or articulation, the building of cementum and dentine in the apical region is much accelerated. The cementum is built around each group resulting in multiple canals to as many foramina.

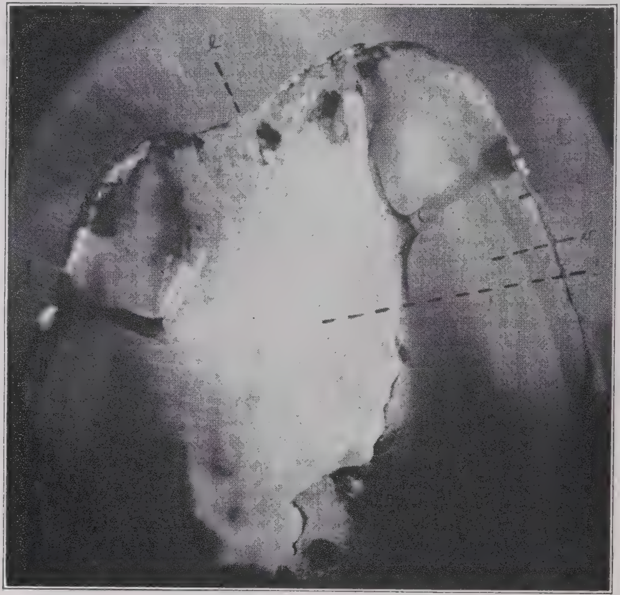


Fig. 177.—Second left superior bicuspid. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Vacant pulp canal (*c*). Foramina of lateral canals (*d d*). Main foramen (*e*). This tooth was extracted soon after it had erupted to make room in orthodontia work. Although the end of the root is far from completely formed, there had already been established two well developed lateral branches to the pulp.

The result of diseased areas is due:

Second, to the practice of pulp devitalization through the use of destructive agents (notably AS_2O_3) thereby leaving in the inaccessible canals dead tissue always adjacent and probably attached to the vital tissue. The result is obvious.

With these fully accepted facts before us, it is rather remarkable that we should see and hear at this time articles and lectures on "How to treat and fill the foramen (singular)." These are no longer interesting or instructive as they do not deal with the question which is really before us. "How to manage the canals and the foramina (plural)" is the mooted question and is far from settled at this time.

The anatomy of the apical third of the roots of teeth is such that pulpectomy is impossible in the majority of cases and has not yet been practiced, to say nothing of filling the multiple canals and foramina if perchance some dentists should accidentally remove an entire pulp to each of its several foramina. A few of the writers in their recent articles have made statements that the "entire pulp tissue must be removed if we are to hope for success," and yet they fail to give us a technic by means of which we may hope to mechanically remove the contents of these canals.

The author has finally been forced to abandon the idea that anyone is able at this time to remove all of the pulp tissue from other than a very small percentage of the roots of teeth. This percentage is so small that it is not worthy of consideration. For that reason all pulp operations must be attempted with the supposition that the case in hand has more than one canal to more than one foramen. If teeth cannot be saved without leaving part of the pulp tissue *in situ,* the extraction of nearly every tooth wherein there is an exposed pulp is the ultimate end.

When the pulp has been devitalized as with arsenic, we at once have before us the problem of one, two, three, four, or more lateral branches, mostly in the apical region filled with dead pulp tissue which is impossible of removal. Some are shutting their eyes to the facts, and are leaving this dead tissue in position. Others are attempting to preserve this tissue *in situ* with some form of preservative, which harks back to Egyptian dentistry. The great number of diseased areas about the apices of the teeth is the answer. However, when a local anesthetic is used and a part of the pulp is removed (which is all that is possible) under aseptic precautions, the lateral branches are left vital and we have a case of partial pulpectomy.

In so far as the lateral branches are concerned, the dentist may do this operation either intentionally or from necessity. The writer prefers to consider the operation as intentional. If we are forced to rely on this disposition of the pulp in the lateral branches, and we are successful, there can be no argument against the addition of the accessible one to the number. The fact that one foramen is in direct line with the main canal does not change the pathology.

Again if the extirpation of the pulp entirely to one foramen results in cutting off several lateral branches we then have as many separate wounds, whereas if the pulp is amputated short of the position where branching generally begins we shall have but one wound thereby lessening the liabilities of failure in the operation. In radiographing many pulpless teeth, it appeared that the majority of those teeth which did not give evidence of diseased areas had canal fillings which had not been placed to the end of a pulp canal and which did not reach any one of the foramina. In fact some of these pulps had been amputated at the floor of the pulp chamber.

Investigation soon disclosed the fact that these cases had a common history; that the pulp had not been devitalized; that the attempted pulpectomy had been done with the use of an anesthetic: nerve block, pressure anesthesia, or a general anesthetic. Those of long standing gave radiographic indications of canal obliteration as well as much restricted periapical spaces. Figs. 178 to 183 inclusive illustrate different classes of cases with conditions noted. A microscopic examination of very thinly ground cross sections of the roots of these teeth disclosed the fact that in the majority (approximately 90 per cent) of such teeth, the unremoved portion of the pulp was still vital, but that the lumen of the canals had been materially lessened by the construction of an osteoid tissue.

The remaining, perhaps 10 per cent, of such teeth showed that all canals had been completely obliterated to where the pulp tissue meets the peridental membrane which dips into and fills the foramina. When several of these complete closures had been noted following partial pulp removal and partial root filling (unintentional), it was decided to bring the matter to the attention of the profession.

The other members of the dental faculty in the University of Nebraska were called to the dark room, and the results of the work thrown on the screen in February, 1920. In May 1920 a series of lantern slides was exhibited to the members of the Nebraska State

Dental Society. Following these public demonstrations a paper as a preliminary report was written exclusively for and published by *The Dental Cosmos*, June 1920, Vol. LXII, No. 6, page 767.

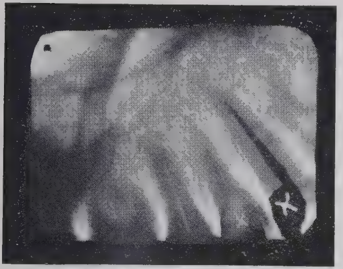


Fig. 178.

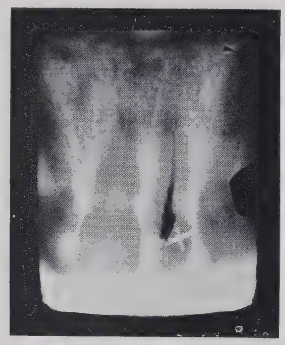


Fig 179

Fig. 178.—Radiograph taken after partial root fillings in teeth marked "X" had been in place eight years in the bicuspid and ten years in the cuspid. The partial filling of the roots was accidental. Pulps were removed with cocain pressure anesthesia.

Fig. 179.—The radiograph of this case was taken some years after an accidental partial root filling. The root filling consisted of Callahan varnish and guttapercha.

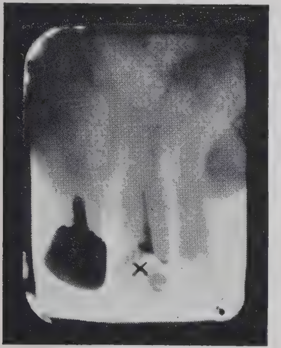


Fig. 180.

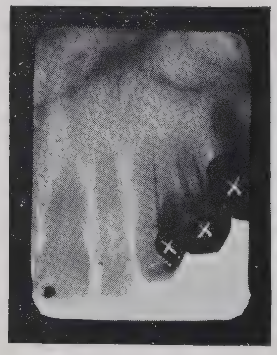


Fig. 181.

Fig. 180.—Patient stated this root filling had been in position many years. The root filling was not removed, but chlora percha with gutta percha point was the popular filling at the time this partial root filling was made.

Fig. 181.—Patient stated these three teeth marked "X" had been filled at different times over a period of about ten years. From her description, the dentist used pressure anesthesia.

Fig. 184 was published at that time, and is from a photomicrograph of a cross section of the root of a second lower bicuspid at the junction of the apical and middle thirds. A search of dental literature revealed the fact that others had noted the obliteration of pulp canals by the formation of an osteoid tissue, but none seem to have associated this tissue metaplasia with partial pulp removal, intentional or unintentional.

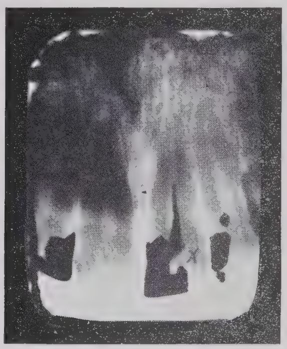


Fig. 182.

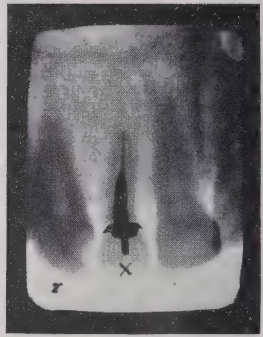


Fig. 183.

Fig. 182.—The root filling in tooth marked "X" had been in position less than two years. It is quite evident that the calcification of the pulp had not taken place, and there is slight indication of a rarified condition about the apex of this tooth.

Fig. 183.—The pulp of this tooth marked "X" was removed with cocain pressure anesthesia ten years previous to making this radiograph. Condition seemed to be perfect. The root canal filling comes just short of the root end. If there are any lateral branches, they are not shown.

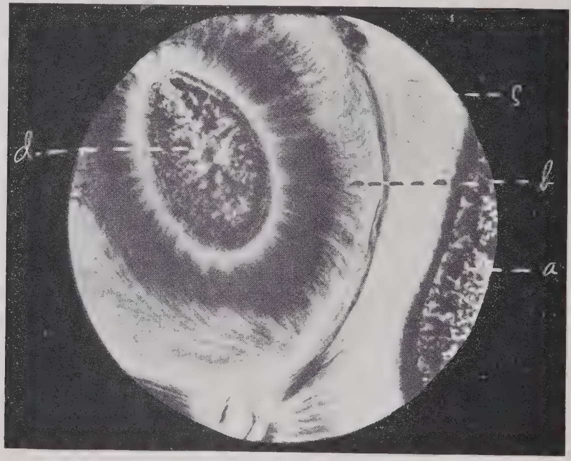


Fig. 184.—Case 107. Section "C." Cross section of lower bicuspid six years after partial pulpectomy. First published by the writer in the *Dental Cosmos* of June 1920, and later in the *Dental Items of Interest,* February 1923. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Adventitious Dentine (*c*). Osteoid tissue (*d*). (Magnification 40.0 X.)

Dr. I. D. Branch in 1851 (*Dental Cosmos,* Vol. IV, page 214), reported the case of a tooth broken off by the kick of a horse, and that the end was closed up with "osseous matter."

Dr. Charles Tomes the same year (A System of Surgery, second edition, page 469), reported a case of pulp canal closure in the remaining portion of root following the breaking off of the root in an attempted extraction.

Dr. Harry S. Chase in 1868 (*Dental Cosmos,* Vol. X, page 17) goes to some extent into the pathology of that which he terms "ossification of the pulp." He states "when a pulp has thus been transformed, it is neither dentine nor cementum, neither is it bone. It is only calcified connective tissue."

Dr. S. J. Salter in 1874 (Dental Pathology and Surgery, page 71) classifies this as an osteoid tissue and says "it may contain true bone lacunae, especially resembling those of the crusta-petrosa." This was his only reference to this being cemental tissue.

Mr. D. E. Caush in 1893 (Report of The World's Columbian Dental Congress, Vol. 1, page 14, published some execellent photomicrographs of this structure, and seems to associate the building of this new tissue only with inflammatory processes of the subdental tissues.

Dr. Arthur Hopewell-Smith in his text book (The Histology and Patho-histology of the Teeth and Associated Parts, first edition, page 474) published in 1893, describes this change in pulp tissue and gives "injuries to the dental pulp" as its cause. While he does not express himself as to the possibility of this particular tissue metaplasia, resulting from partial pulpectomy, intentional or accidental, he does state that "it is due to the traumatization of the dental pulp."

In the study of this pulp repair by means of tissue metaplasia in the pathological laboratory of the University of Nebraska, special consideration was given to the conditions and influences under which this osteoid tissue replaced the pulp tissue. A full report of the investigation has already been published in the *Dental Summary* beginning with the April 1921 issue, and extending through the issues of June, July, August, and September, reporting the work of the two years previous. A more extended treatise on the subject will be found in the author's book titled "Dental Pulps and Pulp Canals," which is appearing serially in the 1923 *Items of Interest.*

In the October 1921 number of the *Dental Cosmos* is an article by Dr. Carl J. Grove, wherein he publishes a photomicrograph showing this same structure completely closing the main canal.

Dr. Grove's text reads "foramen." We think this is in error, as the osteoid tissue is surrounded first by adventitious dentine and just outside of this is normal dentine, showing that this portion of the canal was at one time filled with pulp tissue. It is very probable that additional sections of this same root would have shown a completely closed canal crownwise to the point of pulp excision.

Pathology. Following the operation of partial pulpectomy there takes place within the pulp stump the same series of changes, which occur in other connective tisue in the formation of a connective tissue scar. In addition there frequently follows a tissue metaplasia wherein this scar tissue is changed to an osteoid tissue without going through the granulation tissue stage. When this tissue metaplasia takes place, the pulp canal is obliterated at the seat of the wound much as is the medullary canal closed following amputation of the long bones. This repair tissue is pathological tissue.

All repair tissue in the body is pathological tissue and remains pathological tissue through life, as it is abnormal tissue. No repair tissue in the body is ever completely regenerated. This repair depends upon the activity of vital living cells and certain well known conditions must obtain if we are to expect repair. The pulp must be a vital pulp. This precludes any attempt at pulp "mummification," because the first step in pulp mummification involves the destruction of the vitality of the pulp. The tissue allowed to remain must be such as would permit the healing of any tissue. The circulation must be vigorous as indicated by a good hemorrhage at the time of the operation.

The infection must not be so great as to be beyond the ability of the leukocytes in the blood stream to readily master. The tissue left in the canal must not be lacerated at any great distance from the point of excision. A small blood clot must be allowed to remain on the wound to assist in establishing the collateral circulation at the seat of the wound. The dressing, temporary or permanent, must be placed without pressure on the pulp stump, that it may not interfere with the free circulation of blood. The dressing should not contain fluids which are blood solvents or blood diluents, as these will disturb or destroy the blood clot. If a hemostatic is used, it must be of such nature that it will not destroy the blood clot or the tissue of the wound which would invite sloughing of the pulp tissue.

As a hemostatic we advise Squibb's Thromboplastin (local), as this will in no way interfere with the subsequent reorganization of the blood clot. The above conditions and others we could mention are essential to the healing of any wound in connective tissue, and are not peculiar to the operation of partial pulpectomy.

Histology. The cases which have been examined show two distinct classes: those which have persistent vital pulp stumps, and those wherein the pulp canal has been filled with the new osteoid tissue from near the end of the root canal filling to the foramina. With the first class there is complete closure of the canal at the seat of the wound. This is accompanied many times by a building in of osteoid tissue about the pulp in concentric rings which has gradually lessened the lumen of the canal.

This lessened lumen extends from the end of the root filling, apexwise, to near the largest foramen whereas the lateral canals may be completely closed to near their exits. The complete closure of these lateral canals takes place early in the process.

With the second class of cases there is a complete closure of the pulp canal from the end of the partial canal filling to near the exit of the pulp at each of the foramina. This tissue metaplasia ceases at the point where the pulp tissue meets the peridental membrane, which is a short distance within the mouth of each one of the foramina.

Some writers seem to have gained the idea that we may expect a closure of the foramina. That is, a leveling up of the mouths of the foramina flush with the external surface of the root without the pulp tissue above having first been completely obliterated. They have misunderstood or else we have not made it clear that this would be an impossibility. If the building in of this osteoid tissue was primarily done from near the mouth of the foramina, the pulp tissue crownwise from that portion would die and all efforts at repair would cease at the time the lumen of the canal became so restricted as to cause the death of the pulp. Nature does not build new tissue on dead tissue.

Our study of these cases shows that the primary building of the osteoid tissue is near the seat of the wound, and progresses from that point rootwise. It begins at the position most distant from the blood supply, and ceases altogether when the peridental tissue in the foramina has been reached. This fact should indicate that our wound must be in pulp tissue if we are to expect this transformation, which means that in partial pulpectomy we must excise the pulp crownwise from the dento-cemental junction in the canal.

To illustrate that class of cases (90 per cent) wherein the pulp

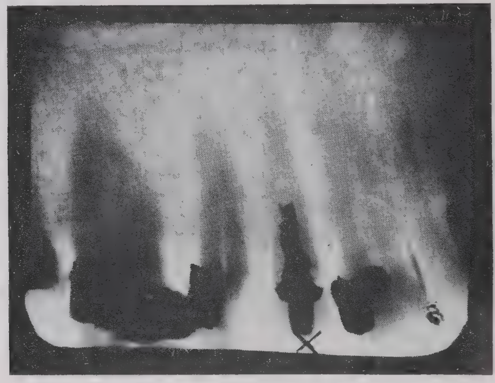


Fig. 185.—Case 141. Radiograph of first superior bicuspid taken before extraction. This tooth proved to have but one root canal which is an exception for the first superior bicuspids. This single canal shows distinctly in the center of the root. Several teeth including this one were extracted on account of Pyorrhea.

However, that which brought the patient to the infirmary was the presence of an exposed pulp in the second bicuspid just posterior to tooth examined. We could get no history of the case from the patient's dentist. The patient described a clear case of pressure anesthesia and immediate crowning about ten years previous to the date of extraction, which was May 10, 1920. Condition of the pulp at the time of crowning the tooth was not entirely clear. However, patient remembered that the tooth pained him when he "got some food in the tooth."

Several sections were made of the root from the apex to the Oxyphosphate of Zinc Cement with which the post of the crown was surrounded. Six sections are shown with section "a" beginning at the apex with each shown in several magnifications. The vital pulp was present in the central portion of the canal which had been largely filled with osteoid tissue, built in concentric rings about the pulp. The pulp was probably active in the deposition of osteoid tissue at the time of extraction.

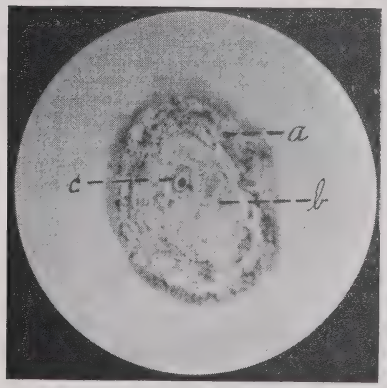


Fig. 186.

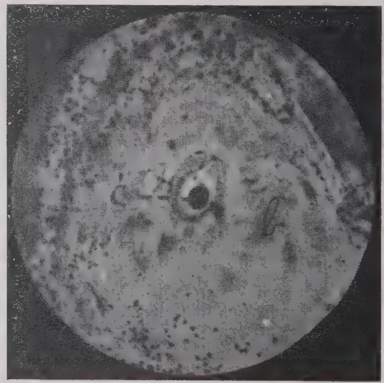


Fig. 187.

Fig. 186.—Case 141. Section A. This section was taken from near the apex of the root. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). (Magnification 20.0 X.)

Fig. 187.—Case 141.—Section A. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). (Magnification 50.0 X.)

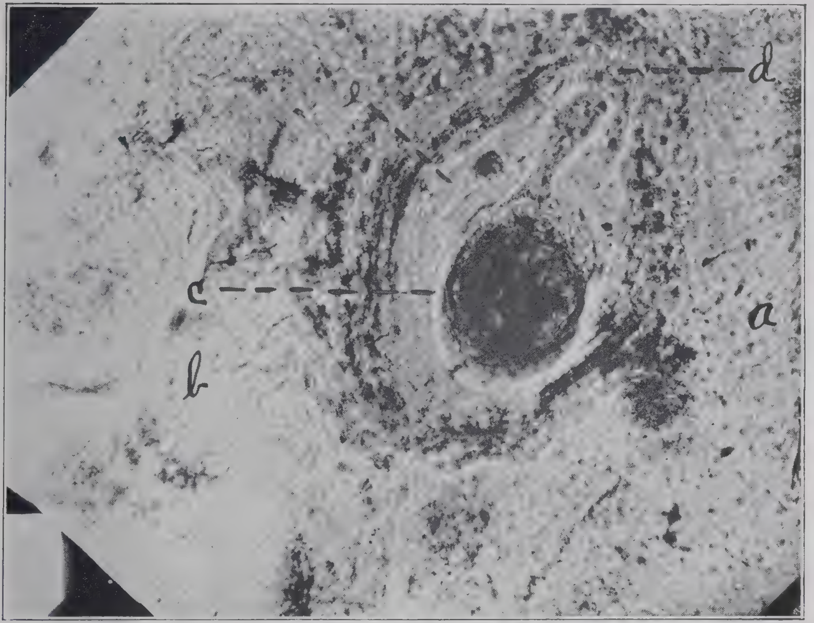


Fig. 188.—Case 141. Section A. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp (*c*). Cementum lining pulp canal (*d*). Osteoid tissue (*e*). (Magnification 320.0 X.)

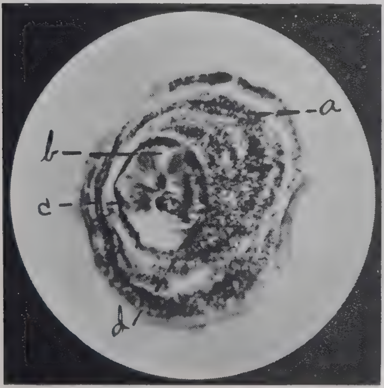


Fig. 189.—Case 141. Section B. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp canal (*c*). Lateral Canal (*d*). (Magnification 50.0 X.)

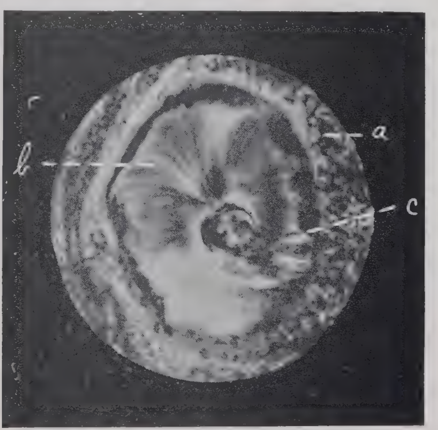


Fig. 190.—Case 141. Section B. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Lateral canal (*c*). (Magnification 50.0 X.)

has remained vital, we show cross sections of a root wherein this osteoid tissue is formed in concentric rings about the pulp. See Figs. 185 to 202. Note the cells (lacunæ and canaliculi), character-

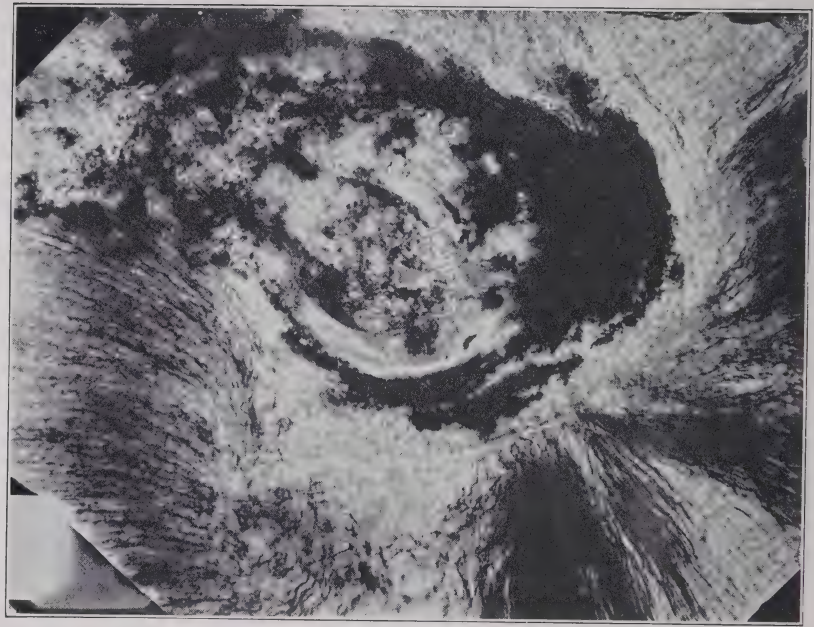


Fig. 191.—Case 141. Section B. (Magnification 320.0 X.)

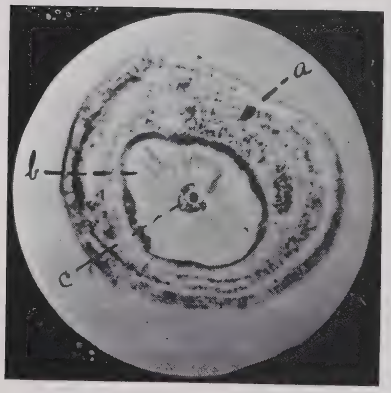


Fig. 192.—Case 141. Section B. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 20.0 X.)

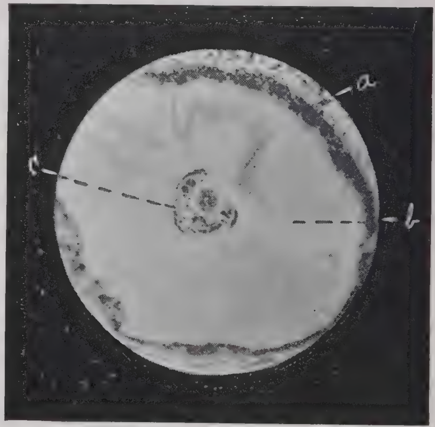


Fig. 193.—Case 141. Section C. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp canal containing osteoid tissue with vital pulp tissue in the center (*c*). (Magnification 50.0 X.)

istic of bone. In other cases (about 10 per cent) there was complete obliteration of the canal. This class of cases is illustrated in Figs. 203 to 213. It is quite possible, where closure was not

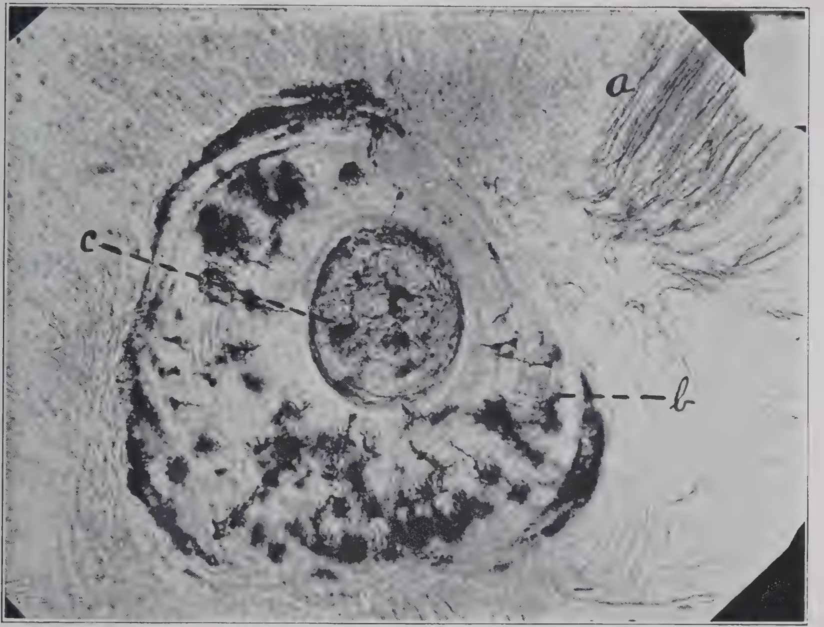


Fig. 194.—Case 141. Section C. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue lining the canal (*b*). Vital pulp tissue (*c*). (Magnification 320.0 X.)

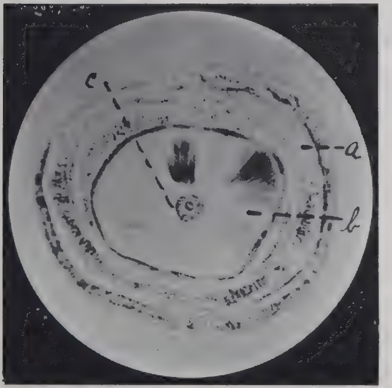


Fig. 195.—Case 141. Section D. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 20.0 X.)

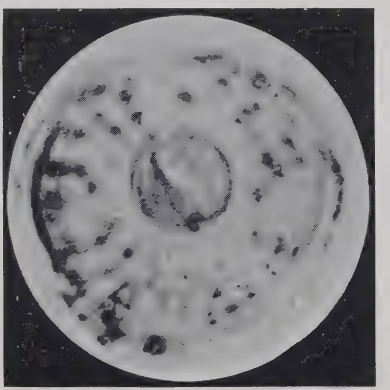


Fig. 196.—Case 141. Section D. (Magnification 50.0 X.)

complete at the time of extraction, that pulp calcification would have gone on to complete canal obliteration had the tooth been allowed to remain longer in the mouth.

Independent Action as to Roots. It would seem that after the

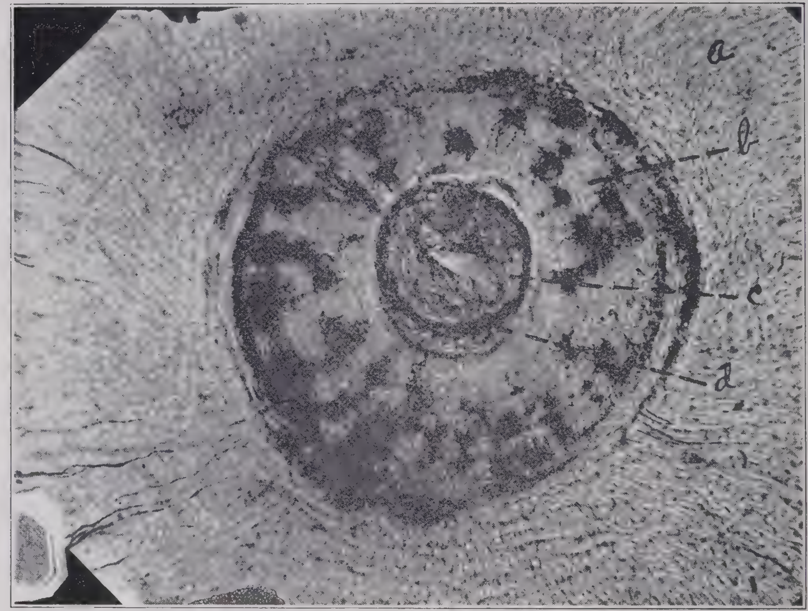


Fig. 197.—Case 141. Section D. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue lining canal (*b*). Pulp tissue (*c*). Note the dark stained ring (*d*) which seems to be the external layer or coating of the pulp. It should be noted that this osteoid tissue (*b*) has been built in concentric rings. In this as well as many of the other sections from this and other teeth, the lacunae and canaliculi are distinctly shown.

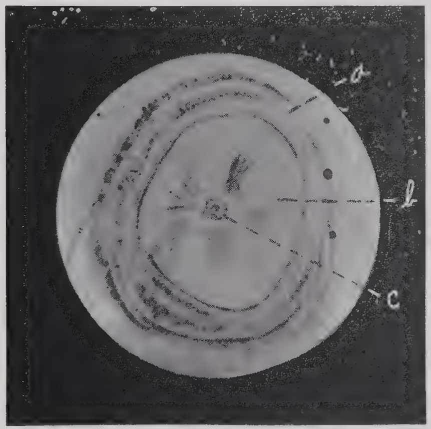


Fig. 198.—Case 141. Section E. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 20.0 X.)

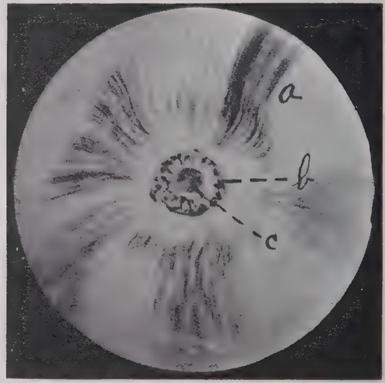


Fig. 199.—Case 141. Section E. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). Pulp tissue (*c*). (Magnification 50.0 X.)

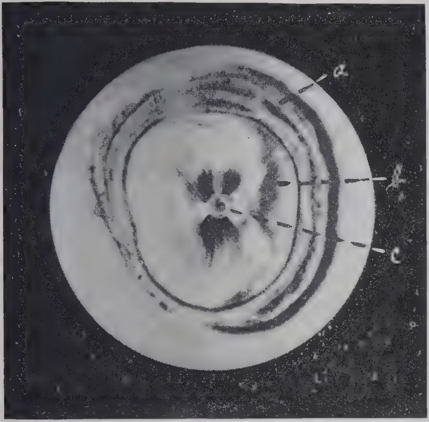


Fig. 200.—Case 141. Section F. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Calcified scar tissue filling pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 20.0 X.)

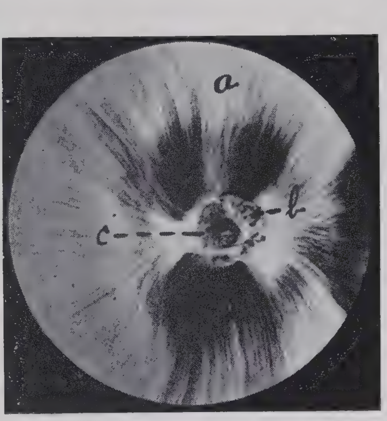


Fig. 201.—Case 141. Section F. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). Calcified scar tissue (*c*). (Magnification 30.0 X.)

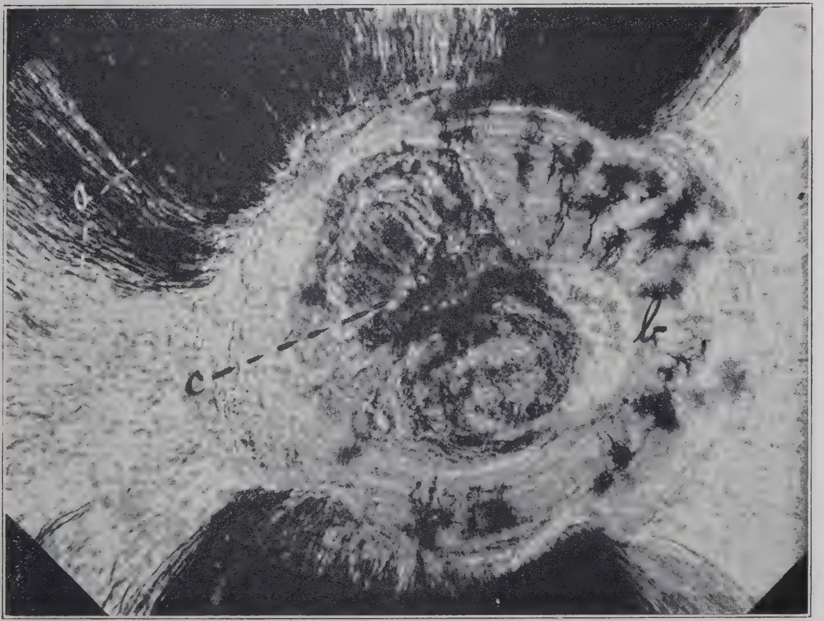


Fig. 202.—Case 141. Section F. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). Calcified scar tissue (*c*). This section was taken from just above the point of the pin which was a part of the crown. It was calcic matter as proven by the hydrochloric acid test. In the previous sections shown the central portion of that which was once the pulp canal was filled with connective tissue, and would not effervesce upon the application of dilute hydrochloric acid. (Magnification 320.0 X.)

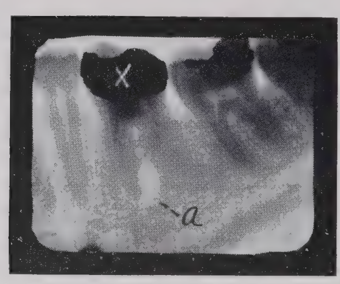


Fig. 203.—Radiograph was taken before extraction. Patient's name was not secured. Tooth furnished by Dr. F., who reported case came to him in December 1904 in a semi-putrescent condition. The mesial canals were fully putrescent. These were treated and filled with a medicated cement. The fluid part of this cement was largely Oil of Cloves. The powder of the cement was composed largely of zinc oxide.

The distal root contained a vital pulp, and this medicated cement had been placed over the stump at the level of the floor of the pulp chamber and the tooth filled on the above date. It will be seen that the mesial canals remain infected. A large granular mass about the mesial root was the cause of the tooth's final extraction in January 1920 or sixteen years after the operation. Note the tissues about the distal root and the seeming absence of any canal.

A portion of the pulp which was allowed to remain in the distal root must have been more or less infected, and the upper portion of it, no doubt, was in some of the stages of inflammation. From this it would seem that slight infection and inflammation is not a barrier to the operation of partial pulpectomy, as recovery, then repair, and finally transformation of the pulp has taken place in this as well as other similar cases previously shown. However, this result should not be taken as an argument for careless operating as to aseptic surgery, but if repair does take place in septic cases, where the excision has been made through inflammed tissue, what may we expect from surgically clean cases with the wound made in comparatively normal tissue?

Closure of this canal is most complete from the floor of the pulp chamber near the mouth of the foramen. However, the mouth of the foramen, and there was only one in this case, was open for a distance about equal to its breadth, which is where the peridental membrane usually joins pulp tissue.

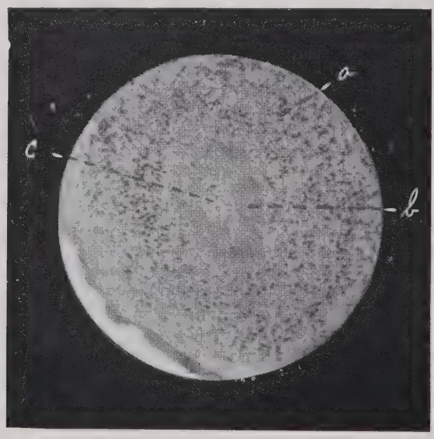


Fig. 204.—Case 157. Section A. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Closed pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 50.0 X.)

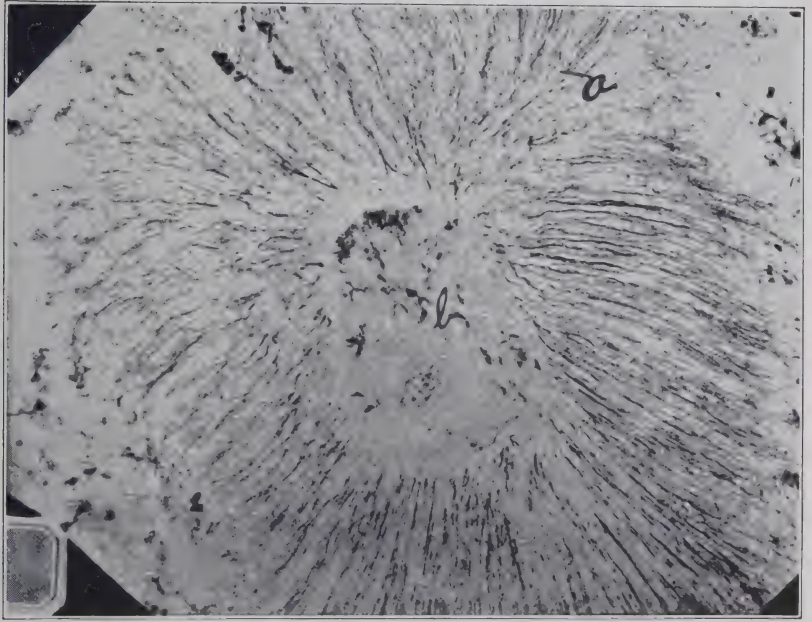


Fig. 205.—Case 157. Section A. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue filling the canal (*b*). (Magnification 320.0 X.)

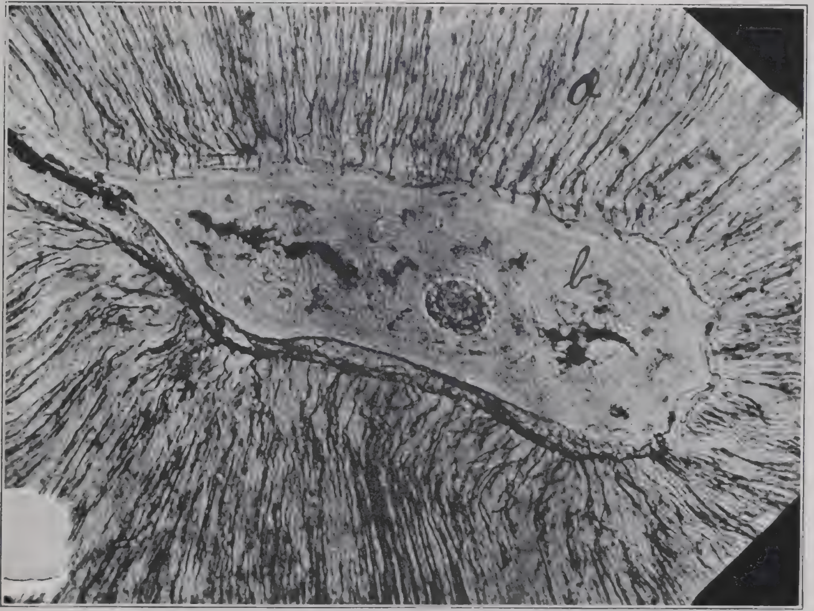


Fig. 206.—Case 157. Section B. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). Remains of calcified artery (*c*). (Magnification 320.0 X.)

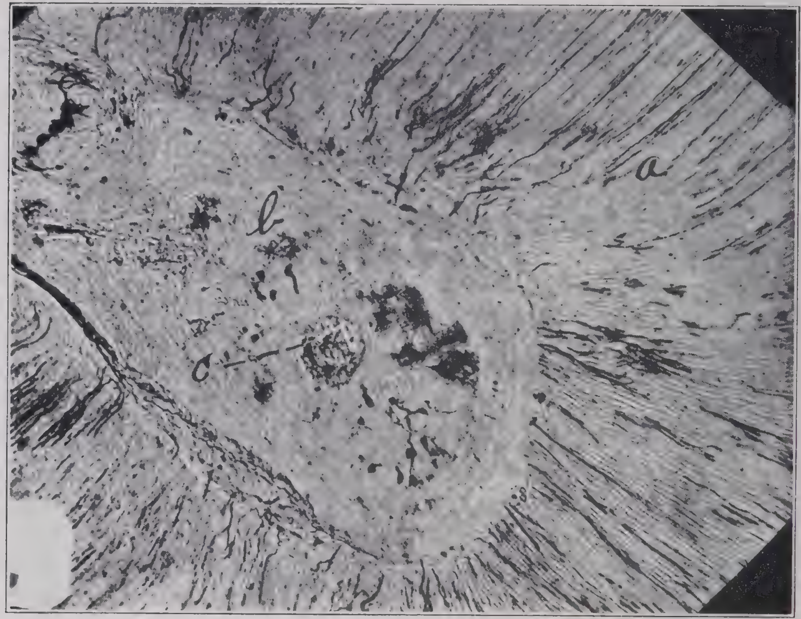


Fig. 207.—Case 157. Section C. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). Remains of calcified artery (*c*). (Magnification 320.0x).

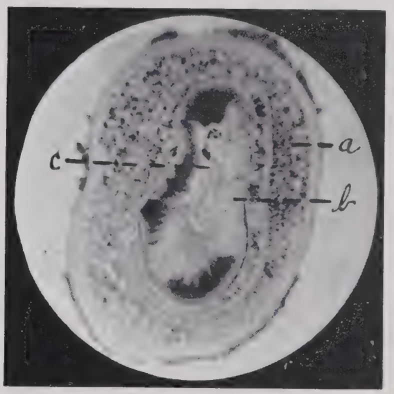


Fig. 208.—Case 157. Section D. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Entirely closed pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 20.0 X.)

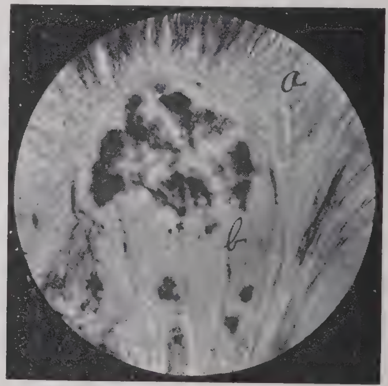


Fig. 209.—Case 157. Section D. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue filling the canal. (Magnification 50.0 X.)

bulbous portion of the pulp of a multiple rooted tooth has been removed that each pulp stump becomes a law unto itself as to vital action or disease, and is governed by the environment as distinctly individual as though the roots were of different teeth.

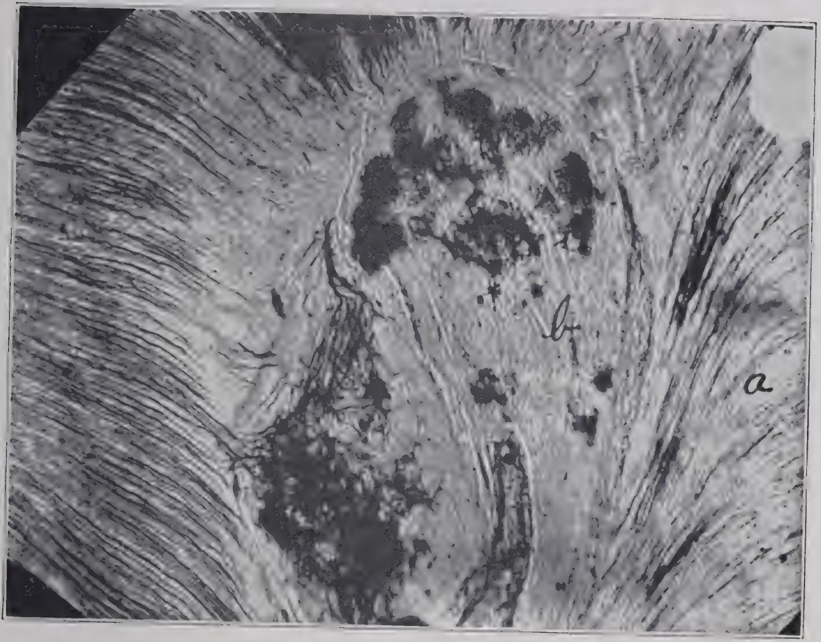


Fig. 210.—Case 157. Section D. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). (Magnification 320.0 X.)

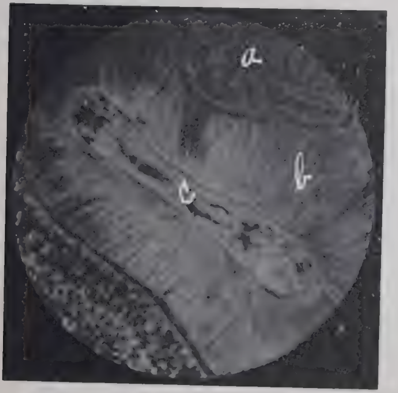


Fig. 211.—Case 157. Section E. Cementum (*a*). Dentine (*b*). Osteoid filling pulp canal (*c*). (Magnification 20.0 X).

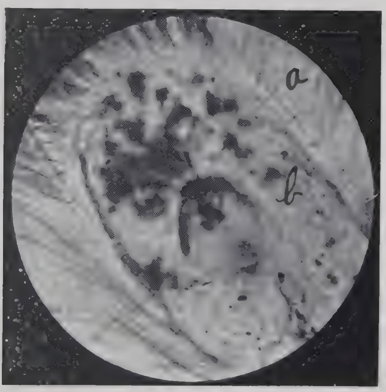


Fig. 212.—Case 157. Section E. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). (Magnification 50.0 X.)

Diagnosis. The selection of our cases for partial pulpectomy and partial root filling should be made only after a very careful diagnosis of each case, that we may determine the condition of the tissue in the canals from the crown to the root end. With symp-

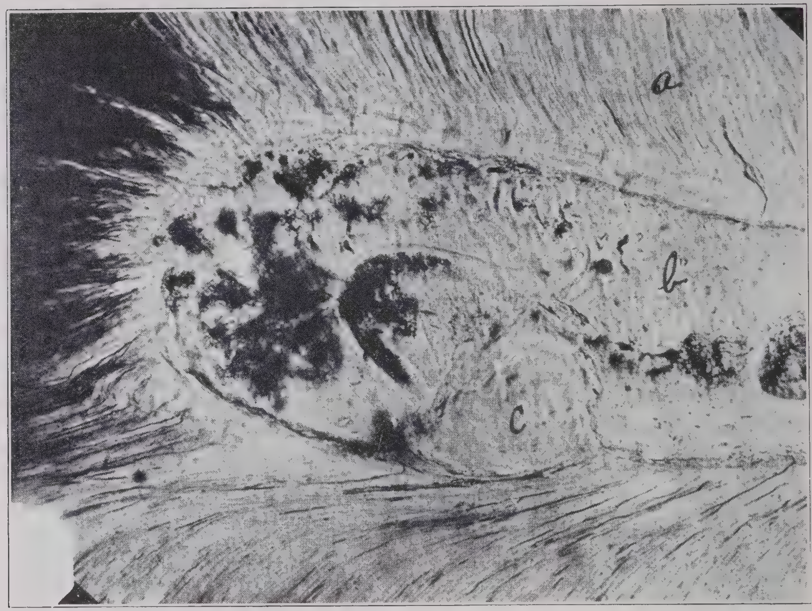


Fig. 213.—Case 157. Section E. Dentine (*a*). Osteoid tissue (*b*). Pulp nodule (*c*). It is very probable that this pulp nodule was in position at the time of the beginning of the calcification of the pulp. (Magnification 320.0 X.)

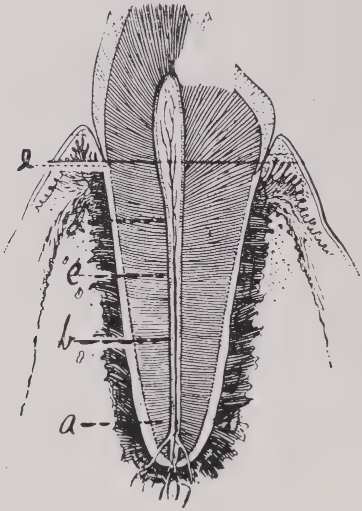


Fig. 214.—Drawing to illustrate suitable places for excision in partial pulpectomy. (Original drawing by Dr. Hovestad.)

toms of active hyperemia only, it may be safe to amputate the bulbous portion of the pulp. With symptoms of passive hyperemia, the point of amputation should be farther rootwise, as the wound should not be laid in a congested area. Fig. 214 is a drawing to indicate suitable places for the excision in partial pulpectomy, as indicated by *a, b, c,* or *d,* with preference in the order given. In cases of passive hyperemia, we could not expect success at (*e*). Excision at (*a*) or (*b*) would be much preferable. Pulp congestion is indicated by a throbbing pain when the pulp is exposed to the air. However, an operation below (*a*) would cause more than one wound which increases liability of failure.

Again when we have indications of neuro-paralysis, the operation should invariably be high in the apical third. Neuro-paralyis is indicated by the increase of pain upon the patient assuming the recumbent position, but which is relieved upon again assuming the erect posture. When the tooth is sore to percussion in addition to the symptoms of passive hyperemia, the case goes over into the putrescent or semi-putrescent class, which is given consideration in Chapter XXXVI.

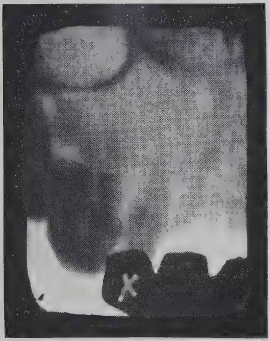


Fig. 215.

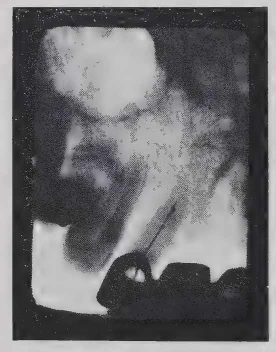


Fig. 216.

Fig. 215.—Case of Mrs. Riesch. Radiograph taken before operation. Bridge had been attached to this tooth for some years. Patient came to the office complaining that cold water caused great pain, which would pass off as soon as the tooth regained the body temperature. This would indicate an active hyperemic pulp.

Fig. 216.—Case of Mrs. Riesch. This radiograph shows diagnostic wire in position following operation of partial pulpectomy, in accordance with the technic given.

Radiographic Series. A radiograph should be taken before the operation, to determine the gross root anatomy and its relation to the surrounding parts. A second radiograph should be taken some time after the operation. We suggest twenty-four to forty-eight hours. At that time sensation will have returned to the pulp stump. By placing a diagnostic wire or a small gutta-percha canal point till it comes in contact with the sensitive pulp stump, we are able to locate the point of pulp excision which will be a guide for placing the end of the canal filling. The third radiograph should be taken, as soon as the root filling or permanent dressing has been made to check up on its position.

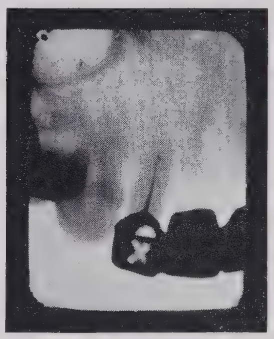


Fig. 217.

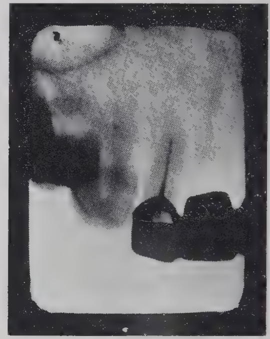


Fig. 218.

Fig. 217.—Case of Mrs. Riesch. Radiograph showing root filling in position two days after the operation.

Fig. 218.—Case of Mrs. Riesch. Radiograph of case three months after the operation of partial pulpectomy.

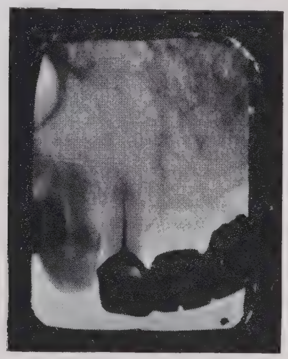


Fig. 219.

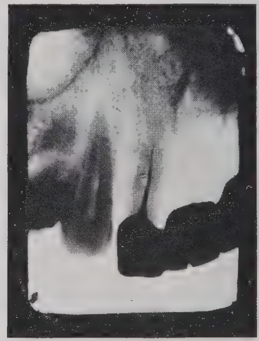


Fig. 220.

Fig. 219.—Case of Mrs. Riesch. One year and one month after the operation of partial pulpectomy.

Fig. 220.—Case of Mrs. Riesch. One year and seven months after the operation of partial pulpectomy.

Additional radiographs should be made at fixed intervals every two or three months extending into years, which will help to determine results. Figs. 215 to 220 inclusive constitute such a series. The University of Nebraska Dental Clinic has at this time over four hundred such series.

Fig. 221 (Mr. Hatfield). This case has been previously shown in the dental journals and has been published from time to time, that those who care to do so may keep watch of the results. This is our oldest intentional case of partial pulpectomy and partial root filling. The operation was done in October, 1918. This case has been checked up every two or three months since. This radiograph was taken in April, 1923, four years and six months after the operation. The patient broke this right superior central off by a fall. He was eleven years old at the time.

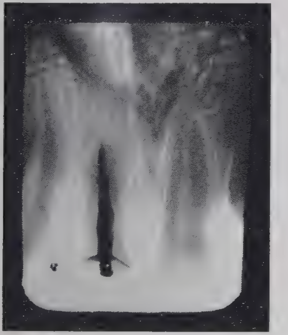


Fig. 221.

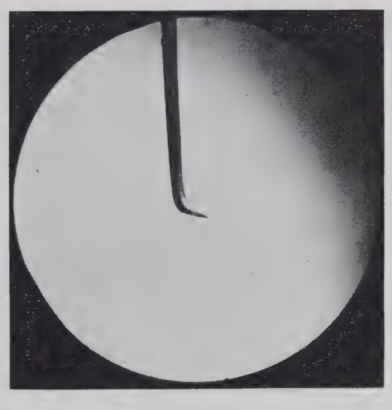


Fig. 222.

Fig. 221.—Case of Master Hatfield. Four years and six months after the operation of partial pulpectomy.

Fig. 222.—Pulp knife. (Magnification 20.0 X.)

The writer performed the operation of partial pulpectomy with the patient anesthetized with somnoform. The hemorrhage was profuse. A paper point saturated with eugenol was placed in the canal, and the end sealed with temporary stopping. The patient returned by appointment twenty-four hours later. The rubber dam was adjusted, the paper point removed, and the canal was bathed with water which had been previously boiled. The pulp at the point of excision was so large that a large sized gutta-percha canal point, large end first, caused pain when pressed on the stump of the pulp. After the canal had been dried, it was flooded with a varnish dressing, the formula of which is given in Chapter XXXVII, and a gutta-percha point, large end first, was placed to within 1 mm.

of the pulp stump. Canal was closed and the cavity filled with Synthetic Porcelain, and the patient dismissed.

Eighteen months after this the case was re-opened and the canal point withdrawn. The radiograph indicated complete obliteration of that part of the pulp which had been left in position. A solution of Di-thymol Di-iodide was placed in the canal, and a rubber plunger used to force the fluid into the canal under pressure. This was done to detect if possible the presence of any opening through the apex of the root. We failed to find any remaining canals.

The canal was again filled with the varnish and a gutta-percha point. A restoration was made using a porcelain crown. Fig. 221 as previously stated, shows the condition after four and one-half years.

Antiseptic Precautions. The antiseptic precautions for the operation of partial pulpectomy are no less or no more than those necessary in the practice of general surgery. However, the precautions are a great deal more than those which have been taken by dentists generally in the past, and are such as are being published by some of our earnest dental men in recent literature. We can do no better than refer you to the many articles by Dr. Elmer S. Best of Minneapolis, beginning in the journals in 1914. The same antiseptic precautions outlined in many of his fine papers, relative to infected canals, will apply to the operation of partial pulpectomy.

Technic for Partial Pulpectomy. The following is the technic which has been used by the author, but no doubt will be very materially improved upon by those who take up the operation of partial pulpectomy.

1. Have at hand a radiograph of the tooth to be operated on. Employ all possible means of avoiding infection. Think of hands, instruments, mouth contamination, infected cavity, etc. This means the sterilization of the hands, the instruments, and the field of operation, which should be done with as much care as though the dentist intended to do a laparotomy.

2. Avoid all drugs and chemicals which could injure the most delicate of tissues, or impair the circulation of the stump of the pulp to be left in the root.

3. Place the rubber dam, and mechanically and chemically remove all decay and infected matter from the tooth cavity.

4. Anesthetize the pulp (nerve block, pressure anesthesia, or general anesthetic).

5. Have at hand previously boiled all instruments needed. (These are few.) The instruments should be placed in a 65 per cent to 70 per cent aqueous solution of alcohol.

6. Having decided the point of excision, a pulp knife is selected (see Figs. 222 and 223), the right angle blade of which is as long as the diameter of the canal where the pulp is to be excised. In very small canals as in the mesial canals in lower molars and the buccal canals in upper molars, it will be necessary to tear off the pulp using a barbed broach, that is, if the pulp is to be excised deeper than the floor of the pulp chamber.

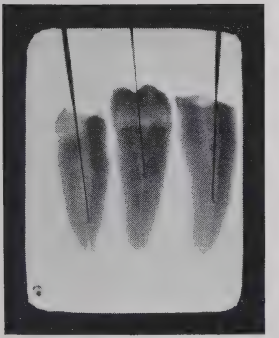


Fig. 223.

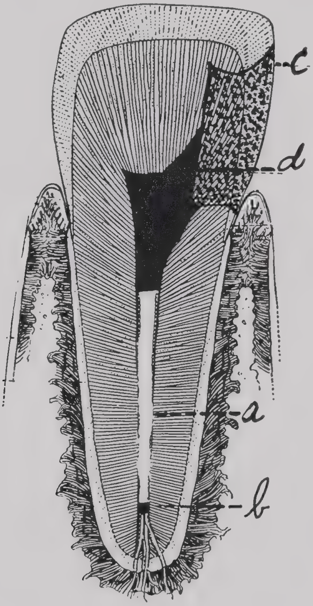


Fig. 224.

Fig. 223.—Pulp knives. Small, medium, and large in different positions preparatory to excising the pulp. (Not magnified.)

Fig. 224.—Drawing to illustrate the completed operation when the amputation has been near the end of the root. Gutta percha point (*a*). Varnish (Pulp Canal Seal) (*b*). Filling restoring contour of the tooth (*c*). Antiseptic cement (*d*). (Modification of a drawing by Dr. Hovestad.)

When the pulp knife is used, it should be passed to position and given three or four complete turns in one direction. Then withdraw the instrument. In some cases the amputated portion of the pulp will come away with the knife. In case the amputated portion of the pulp is not thus extracted, pass a new barbed broach to within one or two mm. of the cut. Give the broach one complete turn when the broach may be withdrawn, bringing the excised portion of the pulp with it.

7. A good hemorrhage is of advantage. It shows the active vitality of the pulp, and also assists in cleansing the tissue of any infection which may be harbored in the pulp tissue. In most instances the hemorrhage may be checked by a stream of very warm water. If this is not successful, hemorrhage may be checked by the local application of Squibb's Thromboplastin, which should be stoppered in the canal for a few minutes. Do not wash too freely, as there should be a small blood clot or film of blood left on the wound.

8. Dress the canal or canals with phenolized eugenol for twenty-four to forty-eight hours. The formula for this is: eugenol—1 dram, pure phenol—1 drop.

9. Second sitting. Apply the rubber dam. Sterilize the exposed field. Remove the dressing. Bathe the canal with 70 per cent alcohol. Wash the canal with water, which has been previously boiled.

10. Place fine diagnostic wire, the point of which has been blunted in the canal till it comes in contact with the remaining vital portion of the pulp, being careful not to wound the pulp anew. This wire should be passed through the flame before placing it in the canal. Where the root canal is large, a fine gutta-percha canal point may be used in place of the diagnostic wire. The gutta-percha canal point should be used only after taking it from a dish containing 65 per cent to 70 per cent alcohol to insure sterility.

11. Partial root filling or permanent dressing. When the amputation of the pulp has been well up the canal, the canal should be flooded with the varnish and followed with a gutta-percha point which has been measured, and cut so that it will not reach within a fraction of a mm. of the stump of the pulp. When amputation has been made at the floor of the pulp chamber or no great distance from that point, the stump of the pulp should be covered with a dressing which is antiseptic, yet not sufficiently strong with drugs to act as an irritant to the pulp. This dressing should also be of such material that it will not contaminate the blood clot, neither should it absorb the liquid portion of the blood.

No doubt, there may be many suitable dressings which the future will develop. However, at present there are but two with which the author has experimented sufficiently to justify recommendation. The first is as follows: liquid eugenol—one dram, phenol—one drop.

Make into a paste with a powder composed of Plaster of Paris ninety-six parts and zinc sulphate four parts. The other is Thymol and pure zinc oxide. Either of these preparations should be applied without any pressure to the stump of the pulp.

We cannot answer the question as to the best point for excision in partial pulpectomy. However, after more than four years in clinical trial of the operation, we must advise that the amputation be made sufficiently deep to remove all congested portions of the pulp. In no instance should it be less than the removal of the entire bulbous portion. However, we should not approach too near the place where most pulps begin to branch to their several endings. This will cause us to amputate the major portion of pulps well within the apical third of the root.

Temporary Dressing. It is necessary to make a temporary dressing at the first sitting in order that the anesthetized pulp may regain sensation to guide us in placing the permanent dressing, and to allow the hemorrhage to cease, yet permit of the coagulation of a small blood clot on the pulp stump. This dressing should be nonirritating, sterile, and of an oily nature, that it may not combine with the blood clot. The author has used eugenol with satisfactory results.

Dressing should be left in about twenty-four hours, and not to exceed forty-eight hours, as the organization of the blood clot will have taken place sufficiently by that time to seal the pulp vessels, making a new hemorrhage not so liable at the second sitting. If left longer, healing may be interfered with, as we are liable to disturb the healing process which is by this time well under way.

The author suggests that each reader review the repair of medullary tissue which follows bone fractures, paying particular attention to that which takes place in the replacement of the medullary tissue in the closing of the medullary canal.

Figs. 225 and 226 are from the Whistler series. Fig. 225 shows the case just before excising the pulp within about three mm. of the apex of the root. Fig. 226 shows the case one year and nine months after the operation.

Figs. 227 and 228 are from the Fostler series. Fig. 227 shows the case just before excising the pulps of the First Left Inferior Bicuspid and the Left Inferior Cuspid. Patient complained of a throbbing pain while the picture was being taken. This would show that at least one of the pulps was in the condition of passive hyperemia. Fig. 228 shows the case two years and six months after

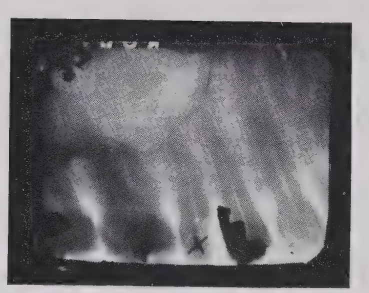


Fig. 225.

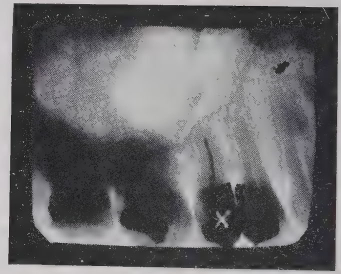


Fig. 226.

Fig. 225.—Case of Mrs. Whistler. Radiograph taken before the operation of partial pulpectomy on March 26, 1921.

Fig. 226.—Case of Mrs. Whistler. Radiograph taken on January 22, 1923, or one year and nine months after the operation of partial pulpectomy.

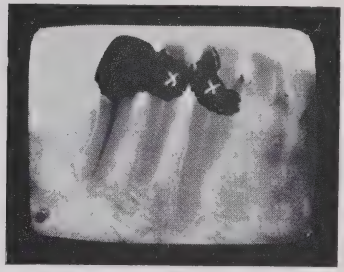


Fig. 227.

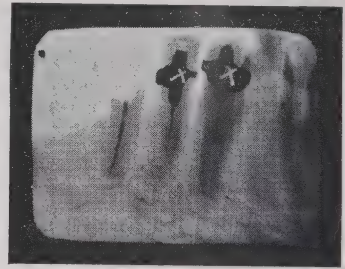


Fig. 228.

Fig. 227.—Case of Mrs. Fossler. Radiograph taken before the operation of partial pulpectomy on left lower cuspid and first left lower bicuspid. Operation was done November 29, 1920.

Fig. 228.—Case of Mrs. Fossler. Radiograph taken May 1, 1923 or two years and six months after the operation of partial pulpectomy performed on both teeth x, x.

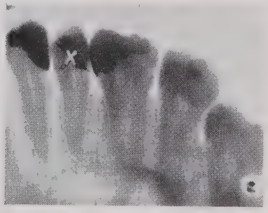


Fig. 229.

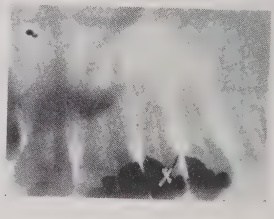


Fig. 230.

Fig. 229.—Case of Mrs. Behunds. Radiograph taken October 1920 before the operation of partial pulpectomy at the floor of the pulp chamber.

Fig. 230.—Case of Mrs. Behunds. Radiograph taken October 1922, or two years after the operation of partial pulpectomy at the floor of the pulp chamber.

the operation of partial pulpectomy at the places as indicated by the ends of the root filling.

Figs. 229 and 230 are from the Behunds series. Fig. 229 was taken before the operation, and Fig. 230 two years and one month after the operation of partial pulpectomy.

These cases are taken at random from the now more than four hundred cases of partial pulpectomy, which we have had under observation for various periods up to more than four and one-half years. The operations were painless, as they were all done under some form of anesthesia, and the cases have remained entirely comfortable with no radiographic or clinical manifestations of other than normal conditions in all but four cases. The trouble in each one of these four cases was traceable to infection caused by careless operation.

As the anatomical conditions in the root ends of teeth force us to the operation of partial pulpectomy in a very large percentage of our cases, it is better that we do the operation intentionally in order that we may take advantage of every method and care which will assist in preventing dead pulp tissue in the apices of teeth. We heartily recommend this operation in the management of vital pulp cases.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

MANAGEMENT OF PUTRESCENT PULP CANALS.

At the time of writing this chapter for the fourth edition of this book, the problem of the ‘‘Management of Putrescent Root Canals’’ is far from settled. Those in the profession who have done the most research work relative to the subject differ widely as to their conclusions. Some have already abandoned the subject, and are advising the extraction of every tooth about which there are indications of infection. Others accept and treat a small percentage of such teeth, while there are some who still have hopes of saving the major portion by the therapeutic means.

The author therefore approaches the subject with great caution, as he feels sure that new and improved methods will be developed within the near future which will materially change any conclusions which might be written at this time. Each teacher will do well to continue his personal investigations, and regard that which is given in this chapter as only suggestive.

By **Putrescent Pulp Canals** is meant that condition in these spaces resulting from putrefaction. **Putrefaction** is a fetid decomposition of dead nitrogenous substances: a breaking up of the proteins, induced by the growth of certain bacteria.

A distinguishing feature of the process is the evolution of malodorous gases such as NH_3, H_2S, and such typical decomposition products as Skatol (C_9H_9N) and Indol (C_8H_7N).

There are three conditions necessary to bring about putrefaction:

1. The presence of bacteria.
2. Moisture.
3. The temperature not above 90° C. (194° F.) or below 5° C. (41° F.).

The relation between defective teeth and ill health has been established. That many of the diseased conditions about the teeth are the sources of trouble rather than the sequelae, has long been known and is fully appreciated by the author at this time. Our sense of well being, our health, and our lives depend on keeping infection within our bodies below the balance of bodily resistance. It follows that happiness, health, and long life are fostered by bringing the resistance to the maximum and by lowering infection to the minimum.

It is very probable that no fixed rule can with safety be applied to every case, as there are many factors which must be taken into consideration, and which are more or less remote from the individual tooth under consideration. Much depends on the physical condition of the patient. In this connection Dr. Hartzell in the *Dental Summary,* Vol. 39, page 708, says: "Therefore the first broad view that should come into the mind of an individual as to the conservation or destruction of infected teeth should rest on the wealth or poverty of the blood stream.

"To illustrate, an individual with a full complement of red cells, five million to the cubic centimeter of blood, with a hemoglobin of not less than eighty-five, and a leukocyte count of seven to eight thousand to the cubic centimeter together with a normal digestion, a normal urine, and a reasonable amount of energy, is safe in conserving any of his dental organs which might present for treatment.

"Now as to the other side of this question. As to when we are justified in breaking down the dental mechanism by extraction. This must rest again upon an examination of the patient's vital resistance expressed by the blood stream, together with any evidence which tends to prove that the individual has been oversensitized, or brought into a condition of anaphylaxis to streptococcal infection by a long exposure to such infection.

"A clinical picture which would demand extraction might be as follows. Early history of tooth or tonsil infection, swollen glands draining the mouth or throat area, poverty in red cells, reduced hemoglobin, and a markedly increased or decreased leukocyte count. It is a well recognized fact that a leukocyte count above eight thousand is strongly indicative of deep seated infection, while a low leukocyte count, say five thousand or less, points to the fact that leukocytes are waging a losing battle, particularly if such reduction in number is accompanied by reduced hemoglobin.

"If a clinical picture presents, with the evidence of secondary infection, myocarditis, endocarditis, or nephritis accompanied by joint or kidney diseases (evidenced by casts, albumin or sugar) extraction is justifiable. Any of the pictures above recited accompanied by the poverty of red cells or poverty of hemoglobin, even if the leukocyte count be normal, fully justify the extraction of diseased teeth.

"One might go on and enumerate combinations of clinical pictures which would bring in many other physical conditions dependent upon streptococcus. For instance in marked streptococcal infection, one infrequently finds cholecystitis, and on palpation an enlarged spleen. While the dentist who has not had the advantage of a medical training may not be capable of gathering all the evidence tending to establish a condition demanding the positive reduction of all primary sources of infection which can be reached, he may always or almost always, bring into his counsel an internist or the family physician to aid him in gathering the necessary data on which to base a sane conclusion. The time is fast approaching, if not already here, when the men in the practice of medicine and dentistry are willing to listen to the arguments pro and con which should determine a wise course of treatment.''

The helpful attitude of all physicians, dentists, and people sick or well should be to eliminate infection wherever or whenever possible to do so, and not inflict a greater injury in the process. The pathological and biological problems involved are no more difficult as regards these tissues than with similar structures in the body with which the physician deals daily. They are connective tissue and bone.

At the same time the individual tooth under consideration may be only a very small part of the problem in that individual case. For that reason in the clinics of our large universities with the sick wherein the breaking point has been passed, the nature of the lesions are serious and time is an element of success, surgery without delay is routine practice. The teeth are removed and the adjacent tissues are curetted at one or more sittings properly spaced. However, in the surgical management of these cases, the operator should be mindful of the effects of the reaction following the opening of the blood stream to increase doses of infection to which the patient may have been sensitized.

When the systemic manifestations are mild, or in cases where there are no general symptoms or lesions, the canals of these teeth are re-opened and sterilized as is also the surrounding dentine and periapical tissue following which a partial root filling is placed.

All of these cases must be approached with these facts in mind, and antiseptic measures and precautions are paramount from the beginning of the case to its termination, that the pericementum may not become involved, if it has not already taken on the destructive process. The presence of the above mentioned foul smelling gases in putrefaction assist, clinically, in diagnosing a case of putrescence, and in determining the extent to which the condition has been overcome in the course of treatment.

It is the pulp tissue within the canals which may become putrescent. Putrefaction of the albumin in the dental tubuli also takes place, and may extend to the dento-enamel and the dento-cemental junctions.

The pulp tissue must be dead before putrefaction begins. The entire pulp may die and the pulp canals rendered putrescent to their several endings. The pulp may undergo a slow death from surface ulceration, followed by molecular decomposition so that only a part of the pulp canal may be found putrescent with the remaining portion of the canal occupied by vital pulp tissue.

Putrescent pulp canals may be considered clinically under two general heads. Simple and complicated.

Simple putrescence is where the decomposition and destruction of tissue is confined to the pulp canals.

Complicated putrescence is where the infection within the canals has been communicated to the subdental tissues through the foramina.

Simple putrescence may be divided clinically into two divisions. Open and closed.

Simple open putrescence is diagnosed:

1. By the fact that there exists an opening from the cavity to the pulp canal or chamber.
2. By the presence of malodorous decomposition products.
3. The absence of vital pulp tissue.

Simple closed putrescence is diagnosed:

1. By the absence of sensation in cutting the dentine.
2. By the fact that warm fluids or air cause increased pain, which is relieved temporarily by the application of cold air or fluids.
3. By opening into the pulp chamber temporary relief is generally immediate.

The opening into the pulp canals may involve the removal of tooth substance, or a filling, or even a partial pulp canal filling, previously placed.

Simple open putrescence may become complicated putrescence at any time, or may exist for years without involving the subdental tissues and without causing the patient any inconvenience, or attracting attention of his dentist.

Simple closed putrescence as a rule soon becomes a case of complicated putrescence because of the transmission of infection to the periapical tissues.

Complicated Putrescence is by far the most important in this connection, since with this condition we get our dental focal infections, with all of the attending systemic diseases, which result from the absorption of infection into the blood stream. Complicated putrescence is considered in two divisions. Acute and chronic.

The acute is generally of easy diagnosis, because the tooth or teeth affected are very painful to percussion. In some cases where the inflammation is very limited and the apical space large, pain may not be induced by percussion. In these cases there is the very delicate test known as the "percussion note." By alternately tapping a neighboring tooth with normal peridental membrane it will be noticed that the tooth with inflamed peridental membrane will give off a note much lower in the scale. There will sometimes be the difference of a full octave in the sound. This is spoken of as the "dull percussion note."

The percussion test is best applied by tapping on the occlusal surface, or incisal edge, of suspected teeth with the blunt end of a steel instrument. However, these tests are not necessary in many acute cases, since there will have developed sufficient soreness to have been noticed by the patient in closing the teeth in occlusion. There may be pain and swelling of the parts.

Diagnosis of chronic complicated putrescence is an entirely different matter. This condition is found in every degree of severity from the slightest affection and infection on through the various degrees of tissue destruction, to include the loss of large areas of bone and soft tissues.

As a sequela of these conditions there may be found systemic involvements more varied than the local indications and not always in the same ratio as to the degree of severity. Even the slightest degree of apical infection may be accompanied by the most pronounced expression of absorption. This feature of adverse ratio sometimes observed is best understood by a study of body resistance, one of the very important factors to be considered in the management of apical infections.

The steps in diagnosing chronic infections about the apices of teeth are:

1. Note the objective conditions of the tooth, pulp canals, and surrounding parts.

2. Secure as complete a history as possible of the case and the dentistry done on that individual tooth.

3. Have made defining radiograph of the tooth and surrounding parts.

4. A blood examination should be made to detect the absorption of infection; shown by a leukocytosis, a leukemia, or even a leukocyptopenia. A differential count should be made to determine the polymorphonuclear leukocyte, and eosinophile percentages.

The examination of the blood stream will not answer the question whether or no the individual tooth being considered is responsible for the apparent absorption of infection, but will assist in checking up existing general conditions, the relative resistance of the patient and the final results of the treatment.

The radiograph is valuable only as a link in the chain of evidence. Small pulp canals in the roots of teeth filled or unfilled do not show in the radiograph. Large canals may show as having been filled to their several foramina, and yet each and every canal may be but partially filled. There may be existing spaces about the canal filling.

Destruction of large areas of bone about the apices of a tooth are generally shadowed on the radiograph. But there may exist an extensive rarefying osteitis where bone destruction is only partial, and with no evidence recorded in the radiograph. The presence or absence of the lamina dura about the apex of a tooth, relied upon by some, is entirely misleading. When shown in the radiograph it is that much more evidence that the structures at least approximate health, but it may be present in its most perfect form and yet, to shadow the condition on the radiograph be an impossibility.

The fine dark line with the defined white line about the root of a tooth, shown in the negative, is possible of depiction only when the travel of the rays parallel for some considerable distance the surface of a root which is flat and of some width.

This portrayal is not possible when radiographing a small root end, or a very pointed root, or a root end or surface that describes the arc of a small circle.

These last conditions result in a blended gray which makes the case appear as though there had been an entire obliteration of the apical space, and that the trabeculae extend to the cementum of the tooth.

The radiograph will show only the gross anatomy and the general relations and conditions of the structures, and will to that extent assist in the preliminary steps in the diagnosis. It will also assist in checking up the gross changes resulting from subsequent treatment, or surgery. The radiograph will not show the internal anatomy of the root ends of teeth. This is a study which must be left to the microscope in the laboratory.

In the treatment of infected root canals there are a few fundamental facts which should be observed. The sterilizing agents should be in aqueous solution that they may readily combine with the contents of the canals and penetrate to the adjacent structures. Oils, solids, and gases have no place in this work. Sterilizing agents should be of a specific gravity greater than the blood, that is hypertonic, as well as being of a greater specific gravity than the fluids of decomposition, that the osmotic current established may be in the direction of, rather than from, the canal.

This results in the primary current carrying the infection to the disinfecting agents till an isotonic condition is established, after which an interchange, or diffusion, of fluids will take place. Sterilizing agents if destructive to tissue should be very limited in their action, and should be kept entirely away from the foramina. As it is impossible to fill the major portion of the canals to their several foramina, it is well if the final root filling continues to exert a mild sterilizing influence on and about the apical tissues.

Treatment

Treatment in General. If the pericementum has been denuded of vital tissues or bathed in pus, there is little chance for success by therapeutic means alone. The treatment of such cases should be followed by apicoectomy, and success may be looked for in a large percentage of the cases provided the dentine is, or has been made, sterile before or at the time of the surgical operation. If the pericementum is yet vital all or most putrescent cases will answer to treatment, and all should be carried through, on what is known as, a series, that is, a radiograph taken before attempting treatment; then another with diagnostic wire in position to see if one of the foramina has been reached; a third when the pulp canal has been filled to determine the extent of the root filling; then a fourth radiograph should be made some days, weeks, or months thereafter to note the tissue change in the apical space. Methods of filling pulp canals are given in the following chapter.

Treatment of Open Putrescence. Excavate the cavity to complete exposure of the pulp chamber. Flood with a stream of warm water from the syringe. Apply the rubber dam and sterilize all teeth and surfaces exposed. For this purpose use a 10 per cent solution of formaldehyde, to which has been added a small amount of borax. Another efficient sterilizing agent is Bichloride of Mercury in the proportion of one part to five hundred of cinnamon water. Mechanically remove the contents of the pulp chamber and flood the open cavity with Hydrogen Dioxide, repeating the Dioxygen two or three times or until active effervescence ceases.

Apply denatured grain alcohol, and evaporate to complete dryness. With an extra fine round and barbed broach, mechanically clean each root canal to near the apex with the canal flooded with Hydrogen Dioxide. Care should be taken not to force any of the putrescent matter through any of the foramina. Remove the contents of the canal portion by portion. Canals should then be dried with alcohol evaporation. Follow this with a 50 per cent solution of Sulphuric Acid, which is allowed to remain three or four minutes when it should be thoroughly diluted with water and the canals dried.

Care should be taken that this solution of Sulphuric Acid does not reach the foramina. Apply camphophenique and desiccate to dryness. Much of the preliminary soreness may be avoided in the treatment of putrescent root canals if each case be given a preliminary treatment of a paste made from pure phenol and iodoform powder. This is applied by flooding the canal with phenol, and pumping same to near the apex of the root with a smooth broach. The paste may be added sufficiently stiff to be handled to the cavity on a large spoon excavator.

If crystallization takes place in the container, add a drop of water. Avoid glycerine or alcohol. By a pumping motion of the broach the paste will be thinned and will follow the phenol readily in the canal to the apex. By alternately adding the paste and absorbing the excess phenol, canal may be filled with a comparatively thick paste.

Fill the pulp chamber with a pellet of cotton which is slightly moistened with the phenol. Seal the cavity with temporary stopping for two or three days, possibly one week. When the case returns it will probably tolerate a much stronger antiseptic.

The Chief Objection to This Form of Treatment is the obnoxious odor of the iodoform. The deodorized preparations, however, will not accomplish the desired results. Care should be taken that the iodoform is kept moist at all times, and finally deposited in the fountain spittoon.

Each teacher has a different treatment for putrescence, and the student is advised to familiarize himself with all. However, the above is a success as a first treatment, as cases seldom give any trouble and they are rendered in much better condition for more vigorous treatment at a second sitting.

At the second sitting, place the rubber dam, sterilize the field, remove the temporary filling, the saturated cotton, and canal points. Wash out the iodoform from the canals with water. Use J&J absorbent points to scrub the canals until all appearance of iodoform disappears.

As a final treatment for sterilization of the canal, the dentin, and the surrounding tissues, the author has had the best result to this date in the use of an aqueous solution of Magnesium Chloride and Potassium Iodohydrargyrate in water. The same fluid is mixed with a finely divided and modified magnesium oxide, so as to form Magnesium Oxide Cement in which the solubility after setting is limited to content of soluble alkaline germicide.

Dry the canals with a blast of hot air. Take two or three drops of the above fluid and completely fill the canal. Allow this to remain two or three minutes and dry the canal.

Repeat the application of the fluid. Then cut a J&J absorbent point one-half the length of the canal. Dip it into the fluid and in this wet condition, place it in the canal. Moisten a small pellet of cotton with the fluid and place this on the floor of the pulp chamber. Seal the cavity with temporary stopping or cement.

Dismiss the patient for one or two days, according to the severity of the case. However, satisfactory results have been obtained in mild cases by treating with the fluid for only five or ten minutes. On the other hand, because of the patient's inability to keep appointments, treatments have been left in from one week to ten days. Upon the return of the patient the roots have been filled and the cases have progressed to a satisfactory termination, even though the length of time in treating has been far from ideal.

Third sitting. Place the rubber dam, remove the temporary stopping or cement, the cotton, and the absorbent points. By instrumentation approach as near as possible the main accessible foramen. Place a new absorbent point down to the end of the canal. Then withdraw it and test for odor of putrescence. If putrescent odor can be detected, repeat the sterilizing treatment as described in the foregoing section and dismiss for one or two days more.

If there is no odor and the tooth is comfortable, and the dentist wishes to be certain that all bacteria have been destroyed, he may if he so desires culture J&J absorbent points after they have been introduced and withdrawn from the canals in question. These should be cultured from two to eight days. However, if it is not intended to go into a study of the individual case to that extent, the root canals should be filled. (See Chapter XXXVII.)

The author does not wish to be so empirical as to teach his findings only in a subject which must be regarded as up for discussion at this time and far from settled. Students are advised to go to the library and in the *Dental Index* look up the writings of Dr. M. L. Rhein of New York, Dr. C. J. Grieves of Baltimore, Maryland, Dr. R. Ottolengui of New York, Dr. Arthur B. Crane of Washington, D. C., Dr. Elmer S. Best of Minneapolis, Minn., Dr. Harry B. Johnston of Atlanta, Ga., Dr. Carl J. Grove of St. Paul, Minn., and others who are at this time devoting a great amount of work to the root canal problem.

Each has some very valuable points which should be observed. Students will do well if they read every article that has been published by these men on the subject of root canal work during the past seven or eight years. After a study of the writings of these men one is thoroughly impressed with the sameness of the objective and the wide differences in methods of procedure.

In Cases of Long Standing Putrescence, which are generally open cases, the dentine is thoroughly saturated with poisonous ptomaines, amido acids and end products. These must be gotten rid of and the most expedient method is to chemically change these irritating gases and poisonous liquids into non-irritating and non-poisoning liquids and solids.

Animal Fats, which consist of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, are liable to be present in abundance in recent cases of putrescence and should be removed from the dentinal walls as they readily undergo fermentative decomposition.

Their Removal Is Best Accomplished by saponification through the action of sodium dioxide. This should be applied at the time of broaching the canals, using a platinum broach. Following its use the canals should receive a water bath.

Symptoms of Closed Putrescence (Class Two). Closed putrescence without complications is usually of short duration and when they are presented for treatment before complication there generally remains a portion of the pulp in the apical region yet vital.

The chief pathognomonic symptom is that heat produces paroxysms of pain while cold applications bring relief.

The Treatment for Closed Putrescence is to apply the rubber dam and with a small drill open directly to the pulp chamber when temporary relief will be immediate. The opening should then be enlarged and the necrotic pulp tissue removed. If no vital pulp tissue is found the case should be proceeded with as before outlined for cases of open putrescence. When a vital portion of the pulp remains nothing will be more palliative than the phenol and iodoform paste treatment already outlined. This paste will also devitalize the remaining portion of the pulp. Pressure anesthesia is certainly not indicated in such cases from the liability of infecting the pericementum. Neither is an arsenical application permissible within a pulp canal, hence the phenol treatment is the best practice.

The Treatment in Complicated Putrescence is as varied as the symptoms presented and the conditions found. The first order of procedure is the removal of the cause which includes the elimination of the putrescent conditions within the pulp canal under aseptic precautions. If the pericementum is only inflamed and the presence of pus is not probable, the treatment is the same as that outlined for simple putrescence, adding external applications to the gum over the affected tooth to stimulate resolution. Painting with aconite and iodine is suggested.

In Acute Complication where pus has formed and upon broaching is freely evacuated down the pulp canal, it is the best of surgery to allow free drainage by this route for twenty-four or forty-eight hours before attempting further treatment. At the end of this time the most active symptoms will have generally subsided and the case can be proceeded with. However, we will encounter some cases so deeply affected beyond the apex of the tooth that external pointing on the alveolar wall is probable and only avoided by immediate extraction of the tooth. In such cases the salvage of the tooth depends upon the ability of the patient to withstand the pain to the termination. They may be assisted in this through the general administration of sedatives. Locally the application of revulsives to the gum will hasten the external pointing. Evacuation ushers in the stage of convalescence and the treatment of the pulp canals may be proceeded with.

Chronic Complicated Putrescence. This class of putrescent root canals as a rule gives the least local symptoms. However, this condition is responsible for the most damage to the general health. Many forms of general disease have been attributed to root infection, the evidence being quite conclusive. At this time it would seem as though cases wherein a granuloma had formed, treatment for the removal of the infected condition should be advised. However, if the cementum has been denuded and bathed in pus, that part of the tooth becomes a sequestrum and must be removed, either by extracting the tooth or root resection. The latter operation seems to be at least temporarily successful in a large percentage of cases. All cases should be carried through on a radiographic series.

The advice as to attempting any individual case depends upon the health of the patient, symptoms presented, indications in the radiograph, and the ability of the individual dentist. The root canals and dentine must be rendered sterile and a root filling so placed as to maintain that condition. If this result cannot be obtained the tooth should be extracted.

Chronic Alveolar Abscess With Sinus, generally with the opening on the external alveolar wall, is a complication resulting from a closed case of putrescence of long standing and when not associated with necrosis or denuded root is not, as a rule, hard to manage.

The Treatment of Chronic Alveolar Abscess is to thoroughly sterilize the pulp canal, then the fistulous tract. The tract should be established by forcing hamamelis or cassia water through the pulp canal and out through the sinus. Follow this with phenol or aconite and iodine only sufficient to cauterize the entire surface of the tract thus destroying the fibrous lining, improperly called the "*pyogenic membrane.*" Then proceed as with any other case of putrescence, filling the pulp canal before closure of the sinus has been effected.

Case Histories

Case No. 82 (Mr. H.). We regard this case after this length of time and with the conditions as shown at the time of going to press, as a completed case. The history is given in detail from the first visit to the present, which is a period of over four years.

The author would regard it as ideal if each case could be carried through on as complete an investigation as was this one. This case has been selected on account of the severity of the general systemic manifestations of the absorption of infection before treatment, and also because of the fact that surgery played a part in this case.

Mr. H. came to the infirmary assisted by two trained nurses. He was suffering from acute myositis particularly manifested in the muscles of the arms, shoulders and back.

A full mouth radiographic series was taken. The condition about the root of the right superior lateral was noted (Fig. 231). Tests proved the pulp in this tooth to be dead. It was determined to treat and fill the pulp canal.

A blood examination was made at this time (December 4, 1918), the result of which was as follows:

Erythrocytes, about	4,500,000
Leukocytes	15,000
Polymorphonuclear neutrophil percentage:	82

The tooth was opened and treated as previously outlined in this chapter, excepting that the root filling, as advocated by some, was made to protrude beyond the accessible foramen. The operation was completed on December 10, 1918.

Fig. 232 is from a radiograph taken the day the root filling was completed. All symptoms of myositis left the patient within a few days. One month after the filling of the pulp canal (January 10, 1919), a second blood examination was made with the following result:

Erythrocytes, about	4,500,000
Leukocytes	8,000
Polymorphonuclear percentage:	64

There were no outward manifestations of trouble till ten months later (November 20, 1919) when patient returned complaining of pains in the arms and shoulders. Radiographs of the case during these ten months showed only partial recovery.

On the same day, that is November 20, 1919, a third blood examination was made with the following result:

Erythrocytes, about	4,500,000
Leukocytes	12,000
Polymorphonuclear percentage:	76

The operation of apicoectomy was performed two weeks later on the date of December 5, 1919. The end of the root amputated was found to be denuded and coated with a thin scale of salivary calculus. Within two or three days the returning myostitis had disappeared.

A few weeks later (January 28, 1920) a fourth blood examination was made, which gave the following result:

Erythrocytes, about	4,500,000
Leukocytes	8,000
Polymorphonuclear percentage:	64

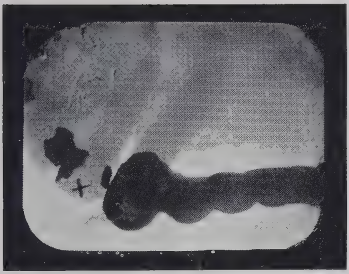


Fig. 231.

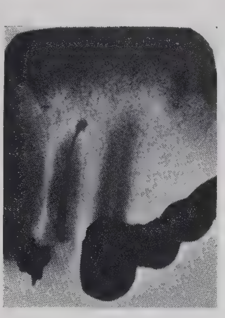


Fig. 232.

Fig. 231.—Case of Mr. H. before treatment.

Fig. 232.—Case of Mr. H. after treating and filling pulp canal to excess, as advocated by some but not generally practiced by the author.

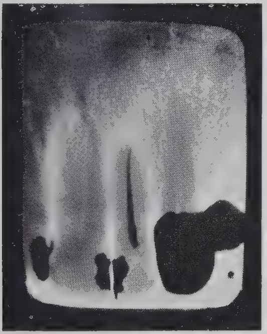


Fig. 233.

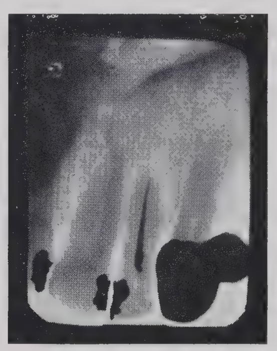


Fig. 234.

Fig. 233.—Case of Mr. H., two years after filling the root canals and one year after the operation of apicoectomy.

Fig. 234.—Case of Mr. H., one year and eleven months after the operation of apicoectomy.

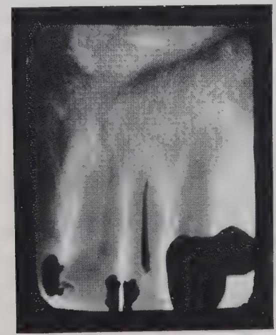


Fig. 235.—Case of Mr. H., two years and three months after the operation of apicoectomy.

Fig. 233 is from a radiograph taken December 10, 1920, or one year after the amputation of the root end. Fig. 234 shows the condition of the apical region on November 4, 1922, and Fig. 235 the condition as this copy is being finished March 5, 1923.

The patient was then and is at this time in the best of health. As the case appeared with the putrescent root canal, it stands to reason that the dentine was saturated with bacteria and their products. The fact that the bone has reformed close to the exposed dentine on the root end is good evidence that this dentine was rendered sterile at the time of treating pulp canal for putrescence.

Case Showing Satisfactory Progress

Case No. 175 (Miss S.). While this case is not of sufficiently long standing to show complete recovery, it is given step by step that we may note the progress being made. This case illustrates the method advised in checking up all such cases.

Another interesting feature is the fact that the first left inferior molar just posterior was extracted two days before treatment of the bicuspid was undertaken. In this case we are able to compare bone repair following surgery, with the bone repair following therapeutics, under exactly the same conditions and influences as the cases proximate.

Our only criticism of the case would be the fact that the filling material should have been made to extend to and fill the mouth of the accessible foramen. It is our judgment that the repair would have been more rapid.

Figs. 236 to 240 inclusive give a complete radiographic series of the case at the time of the operation which was April 20, 1922, to May 25, 1923, showing the progress this case has made over a period of thirteen months.

Radiograph No. 1 taken April 20, 1922, shows the case just after an opening had been bored through the silver filling in the occlusal surface of the tooth. Patient's face was badly swollen. Tooth was very loose and painful. Upon opening through the occlusal surface, pus flowed freely.

Radiograph No. 2 shows diagnostic wire in position to test the depth of access. The pulp canal was given the first treatment as previously outlined in this chapter, and patient dismissed for twenty-four hours.

The next day, April 21, 1922, the patient returned. The soreness in the tooth was not so bad, and the swelling in the face had been materially reduced. Pulp canal was opened and given a second treatment, and patient dismissed for another twenty-four hours.

The next day (April 22), the patient returned with the tooth

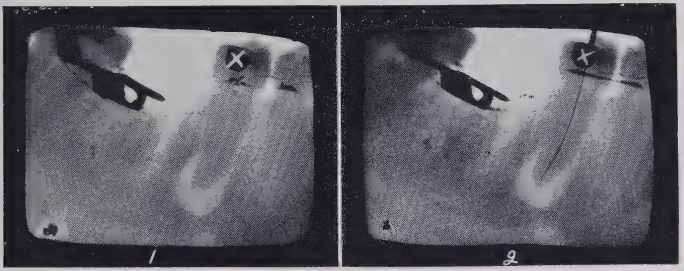


Fig. 236.—Case of Miss S., showing some of the technic in the process of treatment.

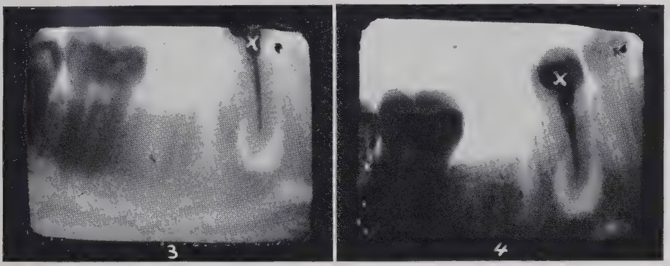


Fig. 237.—Case of Miss S. No. 3 shows completed root filling. No. 4, one month after filling the root canal.

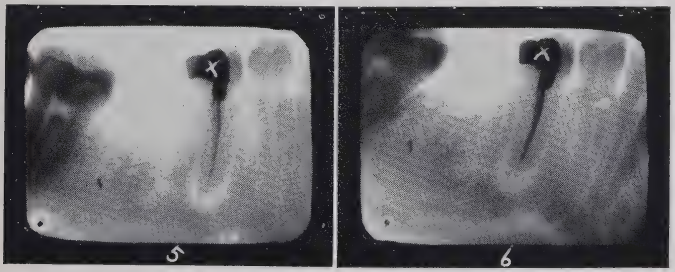


Fig. 238.—Case of Miss S. Radiograph No. 5, three months after filling the root canal. Radiograph No. 6, six months after filling the root canal.

comfortable. The canal was opened and there was no odor of putrescence. The not altogether perfect root filling was made, and radiograph taken as shown in 3, Fig. 237.

About one month later radiograph No. 4 was taken. It will be

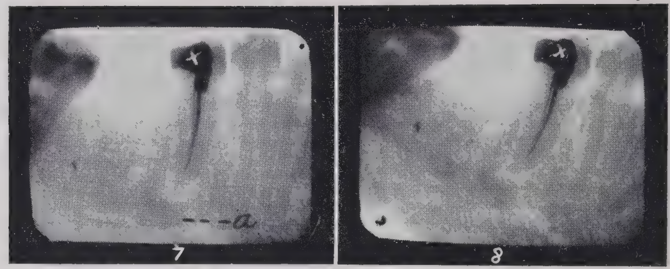


Fig. 239.—Case of Miss S. Radiograph No. 7, eight months after filling the root canal. Radiograph No. 8, nine months after filling the root canal.

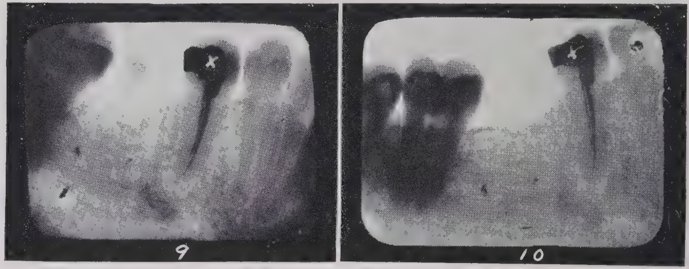


Fig. 240.—Case of Miss S. Radiograph No. 9 shows the condition eleven months after filling the pulp canal. Radiograph No. 10 shows condition nearly one year and one month after filling root canals.

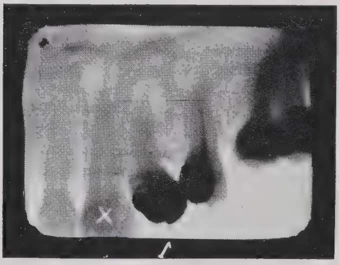


Fig. 241.

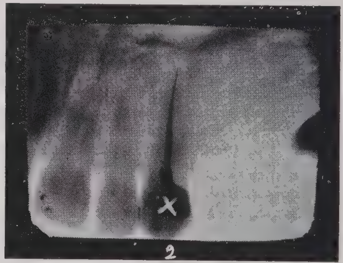


Fig. 242.

Fig. 241.—Case of Miss E. D. Radiograph No. 1. Tooth marked "x" shows condition before treatment.

Fig. 242.—Case of Miss E. D., shows the condition six months after the treatment and filling of the pulp canal in the right superior cuspid, and the extraction of both bicuspids.

noted that there had been bone regeneration about the apex of this tooth as well as in the alveolus from which the molar had been removed.

Radiograph No. 5, Fig. 238, was taken July 25, 1922; radiograph

No. 6, Fig. 238, September 9, 1922; radiograph No. 7, Fig. 239, November 2, 1922.

Please note the appearance of scar bone at (a). Attention is also called to the fact that the density of this scar bone has continued to increase as shown by the subsequent radiographs. It will also be seen that this scar bone is continually drawing nearer and nearer the apex of the tooth.

Radiograph No. 8, Fig. 239, was taken January 15, 1923; radiograph No. 9, Fig. 240, March 15, 1923; radiograph No. 10, Fig. 240, May 25, 1923. Radiograph No. 10 should be compared with radiograph No. 3 to note the gross changes which have taken place in thirteen months following filling of the pulp canal.

This patient has been advised that the root filling should be removed and another one made, which will more nearly reach the apex of the tooth. However, she refuses to have this done, as she states she ''cannot tell the tooth from any other tooth in her mouth as to comfort.'' Patient seems to be in perfect health.

Figs. 241 and 242 is another case wherein surgery has been used side by side with therapeutics for the removal of granular areas about teeth. This is case No. 935 (Miss E. D.), treated by Dr. C. C. Kolander, Kingsburg, Cal.

In radiograph No. 1, Fig. 241, tooth which was treated therapeutically is marked ''x'' which is a right superior cuspid. It will be noted that both bicuspids have granular areas about the apices practically of the same size as that about the apex of the cuspid. However, these areas are of longer standing as shown by the condensed bone about the granular areas.

Miss D. was suffering from ill health at the time, and Dr. Kolander decided to extract both bicuspids, but treated the cuspid according to the methods previously outlined in this chapter. This operation was completed November 25, 1922.

The last radiograph which has been taken at this time is shown in Fig 242. This radiograph was taken May 20, 1923. The results obtained are clearly shown in the radiograph.

Dr. Kolander states that ''Miss D. has regained her health.'' The root canal filling in this case we would regard as quite ideal. Close examination of the root end in this radiograph will disclose the fact that there are two lateral canals to two foramina, one on the mesial and the other on the distal of this root within about two mm. of the end. Of course these canals, if they exist, have not been filled.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

THE FILLING OF THE PULP CANALS.

It is necessary to fill pulp canals following the partial or complete removal of the pulp, that the vacated space may be occupied. If left unfilled bacteria or their products are liable to be communicated to the remaining pulp tissue or to the tissues beyond the foramina. A pulp canal is ready and should receive the canal filling when the canal or that portion to be filled is void of all else than air, and it is not desired to again reach the pericemental tissues for treatment in pulpless cases.

To render a canal or a portion of it void of all else than air, is by no means uniformly easy, yet it is the object sought and the conditions are not ideal until this result is obtained. This involves the removal of pulp tissue, moisture, bacteria and their products as well as all medicines and chemicals used in the process of treatment.

A perfect pulp canal filling is one which permanently occupies the entire space which has been previously empty. If the operation has been one for the removal of vital pulp tissue, the pulp canal filling or partial canal filling should contain materials which are inert. If the canal has previously been putrescent and particularly if it has been a case of complicated putrescence, the pulp canal filling should contain ingredients which will continue to exert a sterilizing influence on the adjacent dentine, cementum, and periapical tissues.

The further requirements of a material for filling pulp canals are: that it be non-soluble in the fluid of the body, that it be non-irritating to soft tissues, permanent as to bulk and consistency, not subject to decomposition or chemical changes, capable of easy introduction, and it is an additional virtue if it can be again removed from the canal after months or even years of occupancy.

The objective point in pulp canal filling is: first, with pulp amputations it should be the place of amputating the pulp. With putrescent cases it is the region of the foramina, and if possible should be made to reach the mouth of at least one of the foramina. This point should be reached, made surgically and therapeutically clean, completely vacated and then permanently sealed with a suitable material.

Small putrescent pulp canals, particularly if they are tortuous, are a hindrance to always attaining ideal results and even, in rare cases, thwart effort to save teeth thus afflicted. The means of cleansing small and tortuous canals are both mechanical and chemical. It is best accomplished mechanically by the use of small flexible blunt-pointed twisted reamers, which enlarge the canal to the extent of entrance by cutting away the sides to increase their caliber until broaches of other forms will be admitted.

This process is assisted chemically by flooding the canal with a 50 per cent solution of sulphuric acid as this will dissolve and soften the dentinal walls, thus facilitating the enlargement of the canals. In cases where the root is bent on its long axis, it is essential that the broach should be rounded and blunt of point that it may follow the canal and not cut into its side wall in the bend of the canal, thereby producing a shoulder to hinder further progress.

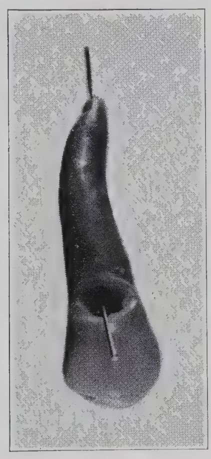


Fig. 243.

Fig. 243 shows a round-pointed broach which readily passed out through one of the foramina to the end of the root. Ordinary stock sharp-pointed broaches failed to pass through any one of the foramina. After one of these had been made to progress as far as possible, this tooth was sectioned and a photomicrograph taken which shows very clearly in Fig. 244 how these sharp-pointed broaches become engaged in the side walls of the pulp canal. The round-pointed explorer had previously passed out through the end of the root through the canal marked "X."

Figs. 245 and 246 illustrate a very simple test to determine whether or no that individual instrument is fitted to do pulp canal work. Broaches usually come from the factory with a sharp point. This may be ascertained by placing the broach on the thumb nail as shown in Fig. 245, and pushing the instrument toward the hand. If the point is sharp it will catch on the smooth surface of the nail and bend as shown in Fig. 245. If the point has been rounded,

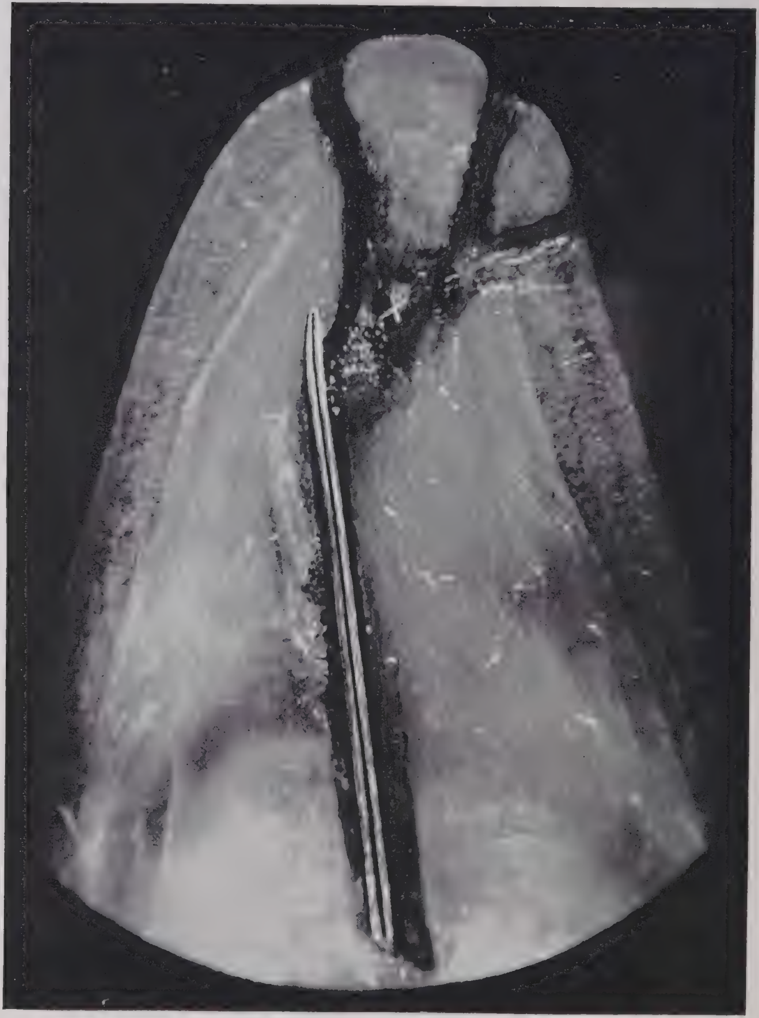


Fig. 244.

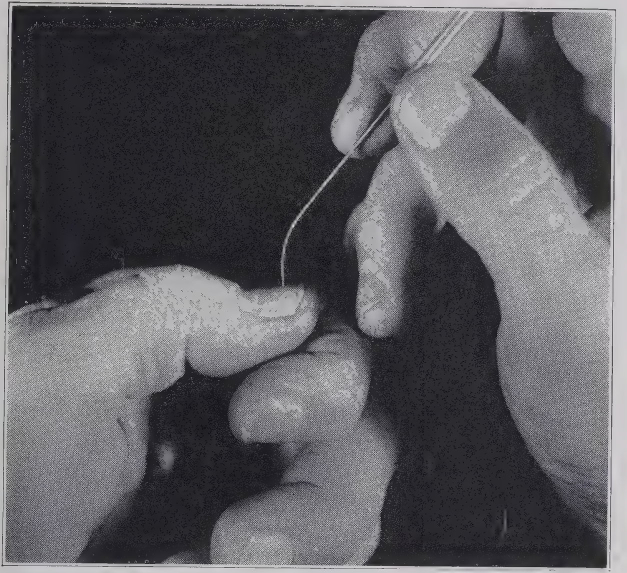


Fig. 245

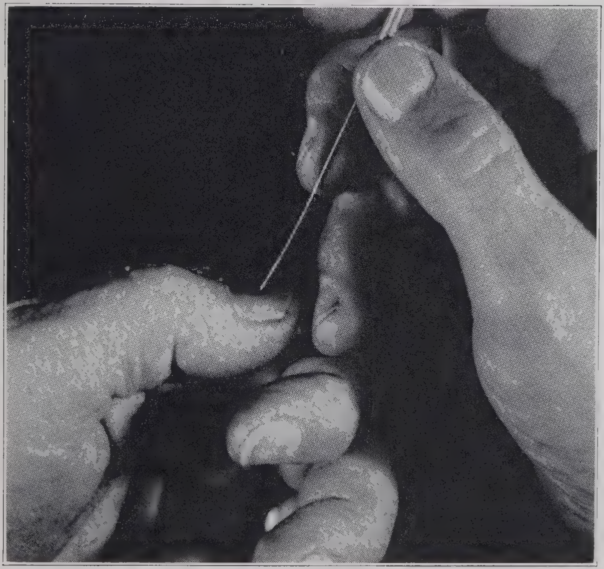


Fig. 246.

it will readily glide over the finger nail, as shown in Fig. 246 even though quite a little pressure is put upon the point.

Such broaches freely pass around the curves in pulp canals. Such specially prepared broaches may now be had on the market. This is particularly essential with the finest of broaches, and requires preparation on the part of the dentist of every broach used in this class of work which has not been previously prepared in this special manner.

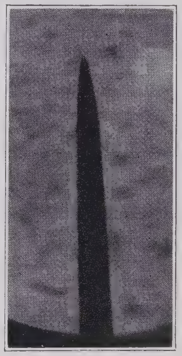


Fig. 247.

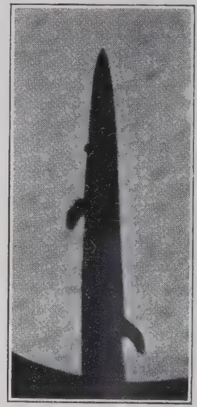


Fig. 248.

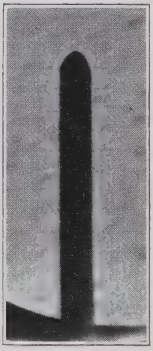


Fig. 249.

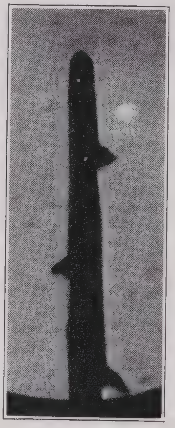


Fig. 250.

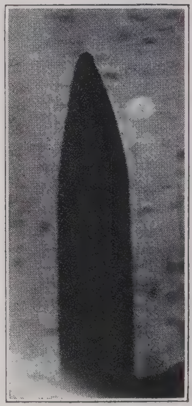


Fig. 251.

If the blunting process is to be done by the dentist, it is best accomplished by holding the end of the broach against the face of an Arkansas stone while revolving in a dental engine, at the same time twisting the broach from right to left.

Figs. 247 and 248 are photomicrographs of ordinary stock broaches as they are usually found on the market. Figs. 249 and 250 are photomicrographs, which show these instruments after they had been treated with the blunting process as previously outlined. This change in the end of the broach is much more accurately done by the manufacturer, and the purchase of such broaches is advised when they are available.

Another very serviceable instrument is made by taking a smooth broach and grinding a bibeveled edge on the end of the broach, so as to make it the shape of a cold chisel. This is shown in Fig. 251. This is used with a chopping motion. Because of the flexible shank the instrument will follow the line of least resistance, and may be made to open up very crooked pulp canals.

Care of Instruments. Rubber dam clamps should be sterilized following each case and placed in a small petri dish containing equal parts of alcohol and glycerine. Engine burrs should be brushed with a metal brush, sterilized, and placed in a petri dish also containing equal parts of alcohol and glycerine. Absorbent points (J&J) should be wrapped in gauze, sterilized and kept ready for use in small glass covered jars.

Blunt-pointed diagnostic wires should be passed through the open flame just before using. All barbed broaches, Kerr files, and twist broaches should be wrapped in gauze, sterilized and kept in a glass jar ready for use. There should be a separate package of these for each individual case. Gutta-percha points should be wrapped in gauze, sterilized with moist heat, and not unwrapped until just before using. Package should be again put through the sterilizer after each time it has been opened.

Materials for Pulp Canal Fillings. At this time there are several separate materials advocated. However, they are all based on the use of the gutta-percha point. These gutta-percha points are used in connection with the varnish, particularly in cases following partial pulpectomy. Gutta-percha points are also used in connection with a sterilizing cement when the pulp canal filling is made following the treatment of putrescent cases.

We will give two formulæ for canal varnishes:

Chloroform and Rosin Solution (The Callahan Varnish).

White rosin	4 grains
Aristol	2 grains
Chloroform	1 dram

Rubber Rosin Solution.

The author recommends the following modification of the Callahan varnish as it is possible to make this solution with about twenty times more solid matter than there is in the Callahan varnish, and yet the material will not be stringy. Also the pure gum renders the material very adhesive and is not acted upon so as to loose the fluid portion. A bottle of this varnish may be left unstoppered for weeks and lose no appreciable amount as to bulk. The author has designated this material as *Pulp Canal Seal,* the formula of which is as follows:

Chloroform	1½ drams
Rubber containing sulphur (tire gum)	4 grains
Eucalyptol	½ dram
White rosin	16 grains
Di-thymol Di-iodide	4 grains

Proper consistency should be maintained by subsequent additions of chloroform. As a medicated root filling following the treatment of putrescence the author has been using for the past year, and with the most satisfactory results, magnesium oxide cement, the water of which has been impregnated with magnesium chloride and potassium iodohydrargyrate. The cementitious base of this set cement is insoluble. The solubility is limited to the content of soluble alkaline germicide.

Alkalization of infected areas about the apices of teeth is produced by diffusion of $Mg(OH)_2$ from both the plastic and set cement. This neutralizes the acids produced by bacteria, thereby stimulating bone formation. Laboratory tests prove that the dentine surrounding a pulp canal filled with this cement will be completely sterilized to the dento-cemental and the dento-enamel junctions.

In that portion of the root which is entirely made up of cementum, the germicides will readily pass out through the cementum. The inaccessible multiple canals are very quickly rendered sterile.

Technic of Filling Pulp Canals. Technic of filling pulp canals following operations on the vital pulp or the more or less complete removal of the vital pulp has already been given in Chapter XXXV.

Filling Canals with Gutta-Percha. It should be borne in mind that the completed root filling should contain as much gutta-percha as possible and only a sufficient amount of the fluid portion or varnish to seal the gutta-percha to the walls of the pulp canal. In the best of varnishes the fluid content is not entirely permanent. Canal must be entirely vacant except the air which it contains for its entire length, not forgetting that this includes the removal of all moisture possible.

The first step is to moisten the canal with ecucalyptol, taking out excess with absorbent points (J&J). Next replace the air in the canal with a semi-fluid solvent of the gutta-percha point. This may be either one of the two varnishes, the formulæ of which have been previously given. The introduction of the fluid part is accomplished by dipping a small broach into the container and carrying the broach thus loaded to each canal, carrying the same to the accessible foramen by a pumping motion.

The varnish is made to replace all air and moisture so that these may be imprisoned within the canal. The introduction of the gutta-percha canal point is here accomplished by grasping the large end which may have been previously flattened with the cotton pliers or same may be attached to the warm end of a canal plugger. Withdraw the smooth broach which has been allowed to remain partly within the canal, and immediately enter the small end of the gutta-percha point shoving it entirely to place by a steady gentle pressure.

The canal point should then be moved back and forth several times with a slight pumping motion for a distance of only one or two mm. This will assist to better close the mouth of the accessible foramen, and will cause the solution to travel laterally into the lateral canals in so far as they have been vacated. This method has been designated by Dr. Rhein as ''mortarization.'' Student is advised before using this root filling to familiarize himself with Dr. Rhein's technic, as well as a modification of this technic given by Dr. Johnston of Atlanta, Georgia.

The canal point should be large enough to entirely fill the canal. It should be about one mm. longer than the canal to permit of slight tamping at the mouth in the floor of the pulp chamber. The size must have been previously ascertained by measurements with a root canal gauge.

Technic of Filling Root Canals Following Treatment for Putrescence. In this case the author advocates the use of a medicated cement, such as previously described.

1. Place about 0.2 c.c. of fluid in any suitable small glass receptacle and protect this also by covering it.

2. The canal now has been properly enlarged, thoroughly cleansed, sterilized, and dehydrated with alcohol.

3. Take two or three drops of the fluid in the pipette and fill the canal.

4. Leave this fluid five minutes in the canal.

5. Then absorb excess fluid with absorbent point and immediately proceed to fill the canal with the mixed cement.

(*Important:* For filling the canal you will need a smooth "broach" made of clasp-gold wire or platinum-iridium wire. You can make this for yourself in a few minutes. Positively do not use any steel or nickel plated instruments; these will cause discoloration of the material and tooth. If gold or platinum wire is not available, a steel broach may be *gold plated* and used as a carrier. In some cases, an ordinary gutta-percha canal point, held in the pliers, will serve as a carrier.)

6. When the pulp canal is completely filled without any entrapped air, then merely place a cork or plug of gutta-percha into the entrance of canal just at the floor of pulp chamber. This is entirely sufficient to close the entrance.

If soreness develops in any case it is due to infection of the pericemental tissues. Perhaps steriliation is not complete and further drainage is needed. The soreness may be due to careless broaching which has resulted in crowding some of the yet unsterilized debris through some one or more of the foramina.

The author does not advocate any extensive encapsulation of the apex. However, if that method is to be practiced, it would seem that it should be done with a cement the fluid part of which is water, as such a cement will readily combine with the moist conditions on the external surface of a denuded root which will result in the cement adhering to the exposed end. It is believed that those roots the ends of which have been denuded of their normal attachments should have the denuded portion surgically removed, following pulp canal treatment and filling.

After the pulp canals have been filled with the proper material, the pulp chamber should be filled with a cement which will set sufficiently hard to withstand the load. The practice of filling pulp chambers with gutta-percha in any form is condemned, as it is in no way suitable for the seat of a filling. Cement, amalgam, or tin is preferable.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

MANAGEMENT OF CHILDREN'S TEETH.

The management of children's teeth presents two difficulties additional to the management of the teeth of adults.

The First Difficulty and many times the most important is the management of the child. Children are very susceptible to external influence and even when quite young believe all they hear. The conversation of the older ones about the home pertaining to the "horrors" of the dental office, has many times so poisoned the mind of the child that it prejudges the dentist and his efforts to the extent of preferring any other punishment rather than meet the dentist, even for an examination.

The First Visit of a Child should be made one, wherein there is an entire absence of pain, or even inconvenience on the part of the child.

Such visits should be repeated till absolute confidence has been secured. After this has been thoroughly established, the children of a clientele will prove as easily managed as the adults, and in after years are the most tenacious patrons, seldom changing their dentist through life.

The Second Difficulty with the management of deciduous teeth is the comparatively short life of the most careful operations. The teeth are themselves but temporary. All about them is a panorama of change and we can hope at best for only temporary results. Parents should be given to understand this feature of the services and not be led to misjudge the skill of an operator by the results of operations on the teeth of children.

Early Attention is imperative and the keynote to success. All small enamel defects should be sought out and fillings made as soon as such are found to exist. It is hopeless to attempt the salvage of deciduous teeth after the pulps have become involved and subdental disorders have been established.

Oral Hygiene With Children should be established early. The parents should receive thorough instructions as to the use of the toothbrush, with or without a dentifrice, as the child prefers, and a daily attention established by the time the full temporary denture is erupted.

Frequent Visits to the Dentist are essential; even more than with adults, as the destructive process runs a rapid course when once established, a few weeks' neglect often resulting in irreparable injury. These visits should be established at regular and frequent intervals, as the most unhealthy conditions may result from only a few days' neglect and upon early detection and eradication depends the success of interference.

Length of Time at Each Sitting should not exceed thirty minutes for a child under twelve years of age and should not exceed one hour until after eighteen years of age. Great care should be exercised in causing the child any considerable amount of pain. Better that the filling consist of temporary stopping to last but a few days than to cause lasting memories of dental pains inflicted by the dentist.

The Filling Materials to Be Used are limited to those of speedy manipulation, and those requiring a minimum of convenience form. This will place in the list, amalgam, tin, gutta-percha and cements.

Cavity Preparation should be limited to the removal of the major portion of decay, sterilization and securing the cleavage of the enamel in cavity outline by the use of the chisel. All else should be avoided.

Extension for Prevention, Extension for Resistance, Flat Seats for Fillings, Line Angles and Point Angles and all else in cavity preparation so carefully applied to filling the teeth of adults should be ignored when dealing with deciduous teeth. If decay has not left the cavity naturally retentive, cement should be resorted to instead of cutting.

Cavities of Class One. Pit and fissure should be filled with amalgam or tin under as dry conditions as can be secured without the rubber dam. The use of the rubber dam should be restricted to the six anterior superior teeth and when used should be very loosely ligatured.

Cavities of Class Two. Proximal cavities in molars should be filled with amalgam. When the retentive form is not good in the cavity without much cutting, the amalgam should be laid in soft cement.

When Two Cavities Exist in molar proximal space which are not retentive it is good practice to fill the two cavities as one, counting on refilling the cavity in the second molar if the first molar is lost early, or perchance when this has failed, which it will sooner or later, the cavities will return with independent retentive form.

Cavities of Class Three should be filled with cement with rubber dam in position. If decay has progressed till angle is lost or partially so, do not build to contour but fill as a Class Three.

Classes Four, Five and Six may be ignored.

Treatment of Exposed Pulps in Deciduous Teeth. Pulp devitalization with deciduous teeth should never be attempted. Pressure anesthesia will not prove successful. Arsenic should never be applied. The risk is too great and is condemned in every case. If the pulp is exposed and aching, clean out the debris, flood with warm water, dry and phenolize. Apply a pledget of cotton saturated with oil of cloves for twenty-four hours. When case returns, dry and again phenolize and apply a paste of phenolized iodoform over which place a filling.

If the pulp has begun to suppurate, the necrosed tissue should be cut away and the space filled with a paste made of oil of cloves and the oxide of zinc powder, over which is placed a filling of temporary stopping. The pulp will usually die under this without further pain.

When the case returns, which should be in about two or three weeks, the canals should be cleansed and filled with a paste made from campho-phenique and iodoform and cavity filled with a plastic filling.

Treatment of Abscessed Deciduous Teeth. Such teeth should be allowed or assisted to point externally, as they will generally have progressed almost to the stage of pointing before the dentist is visited.

As soon as the active stage has subsided, the case should be given the above treatment for putrescence and filled. If abscess persists, as will occasionally be the case in spite of all methods, a small hole should be bored in the buccal surface just sub-gingivally to the pulp chamber, leaving the filling in place.

Inter-Proximal Grinding is of service when filling is out of the question. This is practiced much after the same method it was used in primitive days with the permanent teeth.

The proximal surfaces are cut away so that they are non-retentive to food particles and the sides of the remaining surfaces thoroughly exposed to the excursions of food in mastication. With anterior teeth the contact point is thereby moved to near the gingival line. With posterior teeth the contact point is removed as far to the buccal as possible by widening the lingual embrasure at the expense of both proximating teeth. This method is unsightly in the anterior teeth and not altogether without its objections when used on posterior teeth, but it is nevertheless good practice in many cases as it materially retards the process of decay.

The Management of Permanent Teeth in Childhood constitutes one of the greatest trials of dental practice and is at the same time of the utmost importance. These teeth are erupted at a time of life when the oral conditions are the most favorable to decay. Again these teeth are expected to give their user the longest period of service of any of the entire set of permanent teeth.

It Requires Extra Vigilance on the part of the dentist to prevent irreparable injury to the first permanent molars, as the parents are not usually aware that permanent teeth are present at this age and do not assist the dentist in detecting incipient decays. More is expected and required of the first permanent molar than any other tooth. It must stand the onslaught of the most unhealthy conditions.

It must give its possessor longer years of service and that in a position in the mouth most often subjected to the stress of mastication. Slight faults in enamel should be sought out early and filled with amalgam to be changed for gold in more mature years. When badly broken down they should be restored to full contour with amalgam and crowned only when the second permanent molar is fully in position. If gold is used, it should be in the form of the inlay under about fourteen years of age as the tooth should not receive severe and prolonged condensing force till certain of full development, which is from ten to fourteen years with the first permanent molar.

Arsenic has no place in a dental office, and its use about the teeth should be prohibited by law. Its use leaves death and destruction in its wake, which only complicates the problem with each tooth to which it has been applied.

With our many practically harmless local anesthetics, the author has found no use for arsenic in the University of Nebraska Dental Clinic for many years, particularly since the introduction of procaine and numerous preparations containing that Synthetic agent. All of this is very positively the case when dealing with temporary teeth.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THE USE OF FUSED PORCELAIN IN FILLING TEETH.

Definition. A porcelain inlay is a filling made of dental porcelain and retained in position by cement.

A Dental Porcelain is a solidified mass of silicious substances suspended in a flux of fused silicate.

Composition. Dental porcelain is composed: First, of the basal ingredients which are refractory, as silex, kaolin, and feldspar. Second, fluxes used to increase the fusibility. Those in common use are sodium borate, or borax, ($Na_2B_4O_7$), sodium carbonate (Na_2Co_3), and potassium carbonate (K_2Co_3). Third, metals and oxides used as pigments.

Silex (SiO_2) is the oxide of silicon. It is an infusible substance, insoluble except in hydrofluoric acid and is used to give strength to the porcelain. It gives it more translucent appearance.

Kaolin [$Al_4(SiO_4)_3.4H_2O$] is the silicate of aluminum. It is added to the porcelain to give stability, and permits unfused porcelain to be molded and carved in the shaping of the contour.

Feldspar [$K_2OAl_2O_3(SiO_2)_6$] is the double silicate of aluminum and potassium. It forms over eighty per cent of the basal mass of porcelain and adds translucency.

Pigments. The various shades and colors in porcelain are produced by the addition of precipitated gold, platinum, purple of cassius, oxides of cobalt, titanium, iron, uranium and silver, producing the colors of red, yellow, blue, green, brown and gray.

High-Fusing Porcelain. By high-fusing porcelain is meant a porcelain that requires five minutes or more to fuse at a temperature exceeding the fusing point of pure gold.

Low-Fusing Porcelain. This is a porcelain that requires less than five minutes to fuse at a temperature not exceeding the fusing point of pure gold. This division is one of creation by the manufacturers and commonly accepted by the profession. However the distinction is only relative as porcelain has no definite fusing point, as any enamel or tooth foundation body may be fused on a matrix of pure gold if enough time is given to the fusing process.

Effects of Fusing at Lower Temperatures and a Longer Time.

A more homogeneous mass is produced.

A more characteristic color is maintained.

A less friable filling is produced.

A High-Fusing Porcelain May Be Made Low-Fusing by repeated fusing and grinding.

In Building a Filling by Layers the first layer should be fused to a state of high biscuit otherwise the process of fusing the subsequent layers will over-fuse the first.

High Biscuit Fuse. Heating the porcelain sufficient to obtain shrinkage, but not enough to glaze.

Fine Grinding. The more finely porcelain is ground the lower the fusing point from the same formula and the greater the shrinkage.

Size of Mass. The larger the mass the greater the length of time required to fuse.

Amount of Flux. The more flux a porcelain contains the greater the liability to bubble, which liability increases as the temperature is raised.

Shrinkage in Fusing. High fusing porcelains shrink from fifteen to twenty-five per cent. Low fusing porcelain shrinks from twenty to thirty-five per cent.

Spheroiding. All porcelains have a great tendency to spheroid when over-fused.

A Basal Body is porcelain composed of basal ingredients and the pigments.

A Foundation Body is one composed of basal ingredients to which has been added a flux to increase fusibility, and has been ground less fine than enamel body to raise fusing point and give stability as to form.

An Enamel Body is a basal body which has been more finely ground and to which there has been added more flux to increase fusibility.

The Advantages of the Porcelain Inlay. When skillfully made they more nearly harmonize with tooth structure in appearance. Thermal changes do not readily affect the pulp in vital cases as porcelain is not as good a conductor as metal.

Margins of cavities well filled with porcelain are not readily attacked by caries, as cement dissolves out of the margin to a depth only equal to the breadth of the line exposed. Patients are relieved of sitting with the rubber dam in position for protracted periods.

The Disadvantages of the Porcelain Inlay. The friability of porcelain restricts its use to locations removed from great stress. It is necessary to omit the marginal bevel in all cavities, as the edge strength of porcelain is no greater than full length enamel rods.

The Cavo-surface Angle should be that which the cleavage of the enamel gives, or about a right angle. Its greatest disadvantage is the fact that the inlay must be set upon unclean walls as the whole process must be done under moist conditions; moisture being necessary to maintain the color of the teeth while trying to imitate their shade. This prevents the placing of the filling upon freshly cut surfaces which have not been moistened, the greatest enemy to all inlay fillings.

Another disadvantage is that the retention of the porcelain depends upon the integrity of the cement, which is not wholly protected at the margins. While porcelain inlays fit the cavity from a practical standpoint, the fact exists that they never exactly fill the cavity, the cement taking up the space resulting from the misfit, and is exposed in proportion to the amount of existing space at the margins.

Indication for Porcelain Filling. Porcelain is indicated in the following:

In cavities in the anterior location in the mouths of patients who have an appreciation for esthetic qualities of dental operations.

In cavities of Class One when they occur in defects on labial surfaces.

In cavities of Class Three when much of the labial wall is gone and rather strong lingual wall remains.

In cavities of Class Four, plan three, vital teeth with rather thick incisal edge, not subjected to great stress in articulation.

In cavities of Class Four, plan one, when proximating tooth is not in position as when the missing tooth is worn upon a plate or is to be subsequently replaced with a crown or bridge.

In cavities of Class Four, plan four, in upper teeth when the lingual surface does not articulate.

In gingival third (Class Five) in anterior teeth exposed to view when patient smiles.

In cavities of Class Six on the six anterior teeth, when the porcelain is built to a thickness of at least two millimeters, and in pulpless lower molars, restoring the entire occusal surface.

Contraindications. Porcelain is not indicated in the cavities not above mentioned, and in all locations subject to great stress and where good access form is difficult to obtain.

CHAPTER XL.

PREPARATION OF CAVITIES FOR PORCELAIN INLAYS.

The filling of teeth with porcelain demands some change in the usual and accepted form of cavity preparation for other materials.

Access Form. Access form reaches its maximum in porcelain filling. Even greater access is required than for the gold inlay. Hence preliminary separation should be practiced with all proximal fillings, before forming the matrix, and generally mechanical separation is of advantage when setting the filling.

Outline Form for Porcelain Inlays. Outlines must be extended to regions of sound enamel. The obtaining of full length enamel rods supported by sound dentine is imperative. Extending to self-cleansing margins is of additional advantage, yet not so imperative as with gold filling, as secondary decay is not as liable to take place about a porcelain filling.

The outline should not follow a developmental groove nor cross a ridge at its extreme eminence. Sharp angles in outline should be avoided. Extension for prevention as applied to the embrasures is not as great as with metal fillings.

Extension for Resistance to Stress at margins is more essential than with gold, due to the friability of porcelain margins.

Resistance Form for Porcelain Inlays. The rules for flat seats for all fillings apply equally to porcelain fillings. The use of the step in Class Four is essential to give added resistance to the tipping strain. Margins should be extended to locations less frequented by the crushing strain.

Retention Form for Porcelain Inlays. Maximum retention form is required in all directions except one, until the matrix has been formed and the filling made ready for setting, when retention should be added in the remaining direction.

Acute line and point angles should be avoided; all angles being rounded angles until the matrix is formed.

Convenience Form for Porcelain Inlays. The filling of teeth with porcelain requires more cutting for convenience form than for any other method. This fact makes such fillings contraindicated many times, due to the great loss of tooth substance necessary to properly form the matrix and introduce the filling. Previous separation will overcome this cutting to a large extent with this as well as other fillings.

Finish of Enamel Walls. All finishing of enamel walls must be completed before forming the matrix. The cavo-surface angle should be a right angle as the strength of fused porcelain is about equal to supported enamel margins. If a bevel angle exists it should be deeply buried.

Toilet of the Cavity. This is attended to the same as with other inlay fillings before forming the matrix.

Another Cavity Toilet is necessary just before setting the inlay. This consists in washing the cavity with chloroform to dissolve any oily substances adhering to the cavity walls. This is followed with absolute alcohol and moderately dried. Excessive desiccation is not required and in fact should not be practiced as the integrity of the cemental substance in the enamel is injured and liability to marginal checking increased.

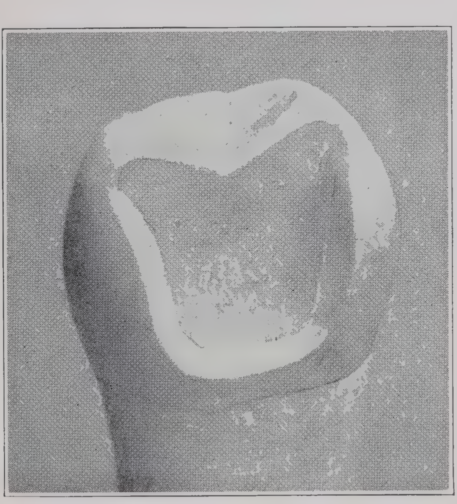


Fig. 252.—Cavity preparation for a Class Two porcelain inlay, non-vital case with the porcelain occupying a portion of the pulp chamber.

Preparation of Cavities of Class One. Defects in enamel. Porcelain is indicated in cavities on the labial surfaces of the six anterior, due to faulty enamel. These are shown as small orifices in the enamel surface, generally rounded in form, and is the result of imperfect development. The cavity should be not less than two millimeters in width at its narrowest point, as a smaller cavity than this hinders proper working.

Avoid the Exact Circle in outline, as this will bewilder the operator as to the position when setting. In case the outline is so near a circle as to make position questionable, the axial wall should have a small rounded pit at one side to guide the operator in setting.

The Axial Wall should, in large cavities, be the miniature of the tooth surface in which it occurs. The axial wall of small cavities should have a rounded groove cut around the entire circumference.

The Surrounding Walls should meet the axial at an obtuse angle to relieve any undercuts before the matrix is formed. When the inlay is ready to set give the cavity retentive form by making the base line angles acute.

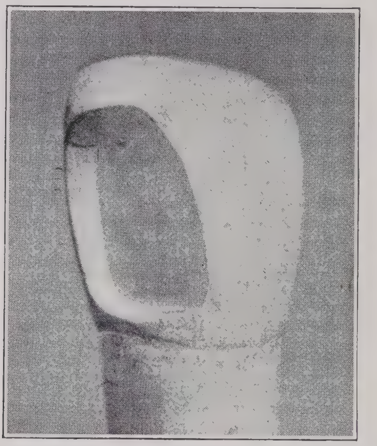


Fig. 253.—A Class Three cavity labial approach for porcelain inlay.

Cavities in Proximal of Bicuspids and Molars. Class Two. Experience has taught us that porcelain is not indicated in this class of cavities. Their location subjects the filling to extreme crushing strain which porcelain will not stand. The occlusal surfaces are of an irregular shape and made up of a great variety of forms with surfaces in any number of planes. This makes the right angle cavo-surface angle demanded in porcelain filling improbable and results in exposing porcelain margins of an acute angle. (Fig. 252 may be used.)

Cavities in Proximal of Incisors and Cuspids Not Involving the Angle. Class Three. This class of cavity is ideal for porcelain inlays and is by far the most sightly filling when properly done.

These Cavities Should be Divided Into Two Classes in accordance with the three different lines of approach.

First division, labial approach; second division, lingual approach.

Labial Approach. This approach should be decided upon when any considerable amount of the labial enamel is to be replaced and a lingual wall is possible. (Fig. 253.)

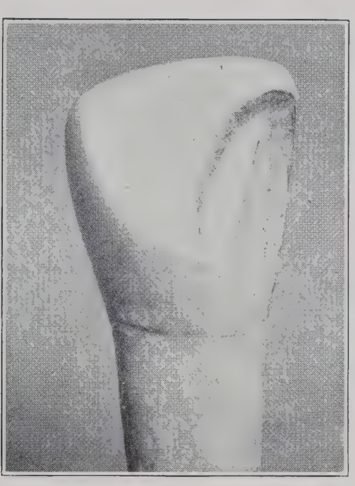


Fig. 254.—A Class Three cavity lingual approach for porcelain inlay.

The Gingival Wall should be extended gingivally to include all affected enamel. It should be flat axio-proximally and meet the axial wall at an angle slightly acute. It should meet the lingual wall at an angle slightly obtuse.

The Axial Wall should be flat labio-lingually and be continuous from the axio-lingual line angle to the labial cavo-surface angle which results in the entire removal of the labial wall. This wall should meet the lingual and incisal walls at an acute angle. The incisal lingual line angle should be slightly obtuse. This results in a cavity retentive in all directions except to the labial which gives it "draw" in this direction.

Lingual Approach. The whole general plan is reversed resulting in the retention of all or a good portion of the labial wall and an entire absence of the lingual wall resulting in the draw being to the lingual.

To Resist the Tipping Strain the lingual step may be added. This is done by cutting away a sufficient amount of the lingual enamel resulting in two axial walls. One will face the proximal and the other the lingual. This creates a line angle where the two walls unite, the axio-axial line angle which should be a rounded angle. Just before setting the inlay the axial wall should be slightly grooved next to the surrounding walls, except in the region of the incisal point angle.

Cavities in Proximal of Incisors and Cuspids Involving the Angle. Class Four, Plan One. This plan of angle restoration may be successfully accomplished with porcelain when the conditions of stress would permit of this plan being used with any other material. The cavity form is the same as that just described for a gold inlay.

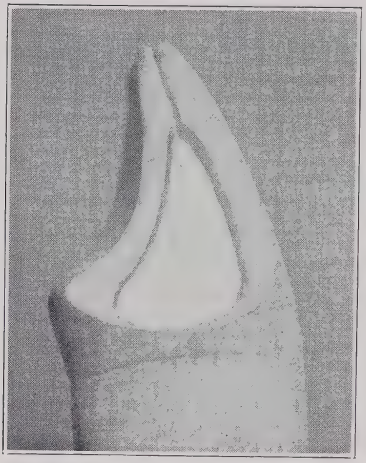


Fig. 255.—A Class Four cavity incisal approach for porcelain inlay.

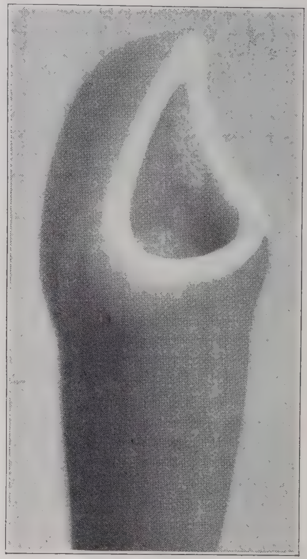


Fig. 256.—A Class Four, plan one, inciso-proximal approach for porcelain inlay.

Proximal Approach May be Used in this instance under some conditions. The incisal approach may be used when excess separation has been produced a little greater than the length of the incisal line angle, as well as more than the thickness of the inlay measuring from contact point to the greatest depth of the axial wall, which permits the filling entrance from the incisal. (Fig. 256.)

To Break the Cement Line on the Incisal Edge a rounded groove should be made from the external end of the incisal line angle to the incisal cavo-surface angle.

Plan Two, Class Four, is suitable for porcelain filling provided the material will stand the strain at union of step and cavity proper.

Plan Three, Class Four. The addition of the lingual step makes many angle restorations with porcelain practical, as the tipping strain can be well provided for by grooving in the lingual axial wall next to the distal or mesial wall according to whether the cavity is distal or mesial. The cavity should be so shaped that the draw is directly to the incisal. The gingival wall should be flat and meet both axial walls at an acute angle. The axio-labial line angle should be acute. The lingual axial wall should be concave. The axio-axial line angle should be a rounded angle and continue out to the incisal cavo-surface angle. (Fig. 257.)

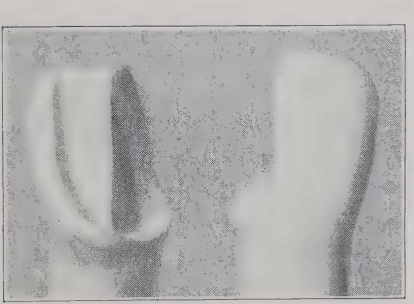


Fig. 257.—A Class Four, plan three, for porcelain inlay.

Plan Four, Class Four. In angle restoration the creation of both incisal and lingual steps is most popular. The incisal step is formed in much the same way as when gold is to be used. However the pulpal wall should be placed farther from the incisal edge and be laid in a plan less acute to the axial wall than for gold.

The angle formed by the junction of these walls, the axio-pulpal angle, should be rounded. In forming the lingual step the enamel may be removed entirely to a level of the gingival wall, or it may be only as much of the incisal portion as may seem necessary to strengthen the body of porcelain in the incisal region and resist the tipping strain. (Fig. 258.)

The Double Step is of service in cases where there has been extensive loss of tooth structure, particularly in non-vital cases. This plan results in a gingival wall and two pulpal walls; also in two short axial walls placed on an equal number of levels. The gingival and pulpal walls should be made to meet the axial walls at acute angles. Each of the two pulpal walls should be grooved from the connecting axial walls, and each axial wall in the central portion resulting in a continuous groove from the gingivo-axial line angle to the incisal edge. This cavity has draw directly to the incisal.

Cavities Occurring in the Gingival Third of Class Five. Labial cavities in the gingival third are favorite places for porcelain and should to a large measure displace gold. If the cavity extends beneath the gum line, the gum should be forced from position by previous packing of gutta-percha or cotton saturated with chlora-percha.

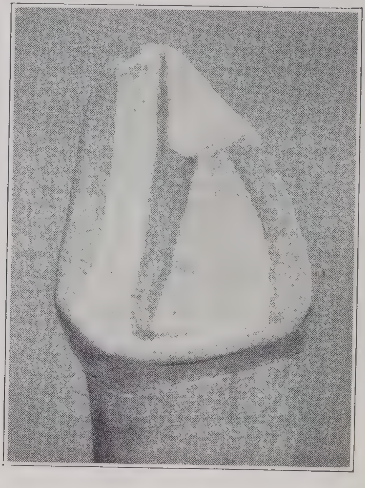


Fig. 258.—A Class Four, plan four, for porcelain inlay.

Outline Form should be the same as for other filling. The axial wall should be the miniature of the tooth surface wherein the cavity occurs. The gingival wall should be flat and meet the axial at an acute angle. All other surrounding walls should meet the axial at slightly obtuse angles. This gives a cavity with draw to the labial allowing the incisal portion to swing out in advance, the inlay going to place gingival first.

This hinge movement is slight but constitutes a valuable point in subsequent retention. Just before setting the inlay the axio-incisal line angle should be sharpened to add retention form. In cases where the decay resulting in a cavity is materially *horseshoe* in form the cavity may be filled by two distinct operations.

This is accomplished by filling the cavity with cement and cutting out one-half and filling with porcelain. This completed, the other half is cut out and the operator then proceeds to fill that portion. This results in two porcelain fillings with cement between.

One Point Must Be Observed. The first portion of porcelain will necessarily slightly overlap a cement wall. Before setting, this portion of the inlay must be ground at the expense of the external surface of the filling to reverse the draw, or this portion of the remaining cavity will be found with an objectionable undercut hard to manage.

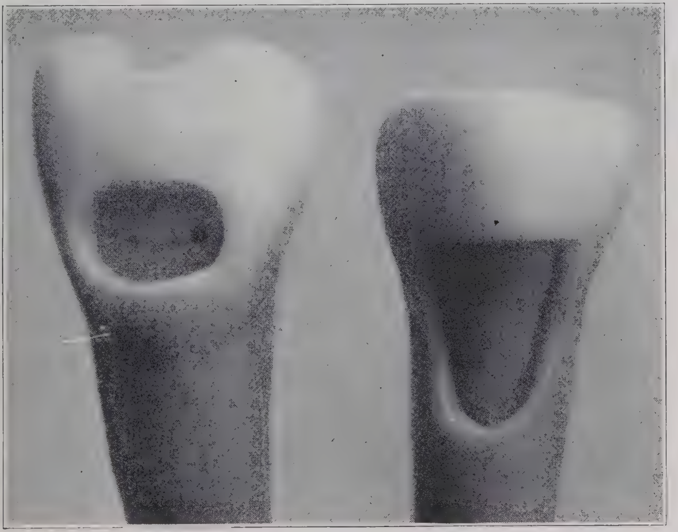


Fig. 259.—Class Five cavities for porcelain inlay.

Restoration of a Portion of the Incisal Edge. The general outline in this class of cavities when they are simply a notch in the body of the tooth, is that of the half moon when viewed either from the labial or the lingual. However the lingual enamel should be removed for a greater distance root-wise resulting in a lingual step to provide against the tipping strain. The pulpal wall should have a groove mesio-distally in its central portion and extend well up along both mesial and distal walls, and with the larger cavities coming out to the cavo-surface angle. (Fig. 260.)

Restoration of the Entire Incisal Edge—*Outline Form.* The enamel is chiseled root-wise till it is firm and will result in a thickness of porcelain at all points equal to at least two millimeters.

Retention is accomplished by the addition of pins, or a generous lingual step, or both. (Fig. 261.)

In vital cases where pin retention is to be used there should be cut a V-shaped groove mesio-distally, the spreading angles of which should come just short of the dento-enamel junction labially and lingually. Mesially and distally it should continue to the cavo-surface angle. A pin hole should then be bored in the extreme ends of this groove not a great distance from the dento-enamel junction in the dentine to receive the pins. When the lingual step is to be added the enamel on the lingual is removed additionally to a distance root-wise at least equal to the labial exposure; also an amount of dentine sufficient to make the newly created axial wall meet the two pulpal walls at right angles. If pins are to be added the holes should be bored in the floor of the pulpal wall nearer the labial surface.

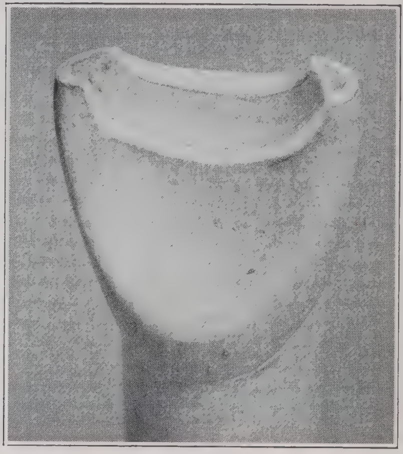


Fig. 260.—Incisal cavity for porcelain inlay.

In Pulpless Six Anterior Teeth the pulp chamber may be rounded out and porcelain so baked as to form a post of porcelain for retention.

Pulpless Molars are treated in the same way.

Treatment of Teeth With Malformed Enamel. The major portion or all of the enamel can be successfully replaced with porcelain.

The enamel is removed to the desired point resulting in a gingival wall entirely encircling the tooth. Sufficient dentine is removed in the incisal region to render the largest girth at the gingivo-axial line angle which is continuous around the tooth. This leaves a peg-shaped body of dentine over which the porcelain is telescoped. The method is termed the jacket crown and the method of construction and setting is fully described in the writings of others on crown work.

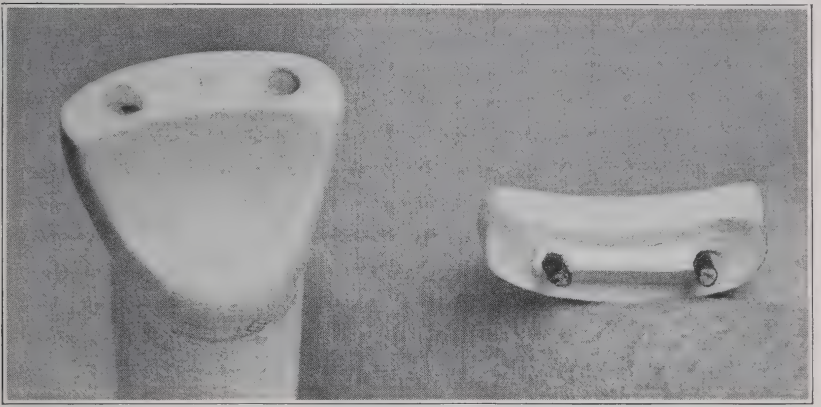


Fig. 261.—A Class Six cavity using pin anchorage for porcelain inlay. This plan is also used with the gold inlay.

CHAPTER XLI.

THE CONSTRUCTION AND PLACING OF A PORCELAIN INLAY.

Following the completion of cavity preparation the next step in porcelain inlay filling is the formation of a matrix.

A Matrix is a thin piece of metal shaped to the cavity form in which the porcelain is fused.

Matrix Material. The matrix materials in common use are pure gold, pure platinum and platinized gold. Pure gold and platinized gold can be used only with what is termed low fusing bodies, while pure platinum can be used with either high or low fusing bodies. Gold is more easily shaped to cavity form, but tears more easily and does not hold its shape as well after burnishing.

Thickness of Foil. The most popular thickness of platinum foil to be used in the construction of a matrix is 1-1,000 of an inch. Thicker than this is difficult to manipulate, while the thinner foils tear too easily, and are more liable to distortion during the processes of building and fusing.

Annealing of Matrix Material. This is best accomplished by placing the entire sheet of material as it comes from the supply house in the electric oven and bringing it to the desired temperature before cutting off the piece desired for the case in hand. Pure gold and platinized gold should be brought to the full red heat or about 1,200° or 1,300° F. Platinum should be carried up as high as it is expected to carry the temperature during the process of fusing and held there for two or three minutes. It is not necessary to anneal several times during the process of shaping the matrix.

Methods of Forming the Matrix. There are three general methods in use for the construction of a matrix. First, burnishing directly into the cavity. Second, swaging over an impression of the cavity. Third, swaging into a model of the cavity.

Each has its advantage in different cases and are recommended by all porcelain workers. However, the combination of the first and second methods will bring good results and is the method requiring the least time.

Technic of the Combination Method. First take an impression of the cavity. If the cavity is large it is best to use modeling compound, trimming off that part which flares out over the external surface of the tooth. The matrix is then shaped over this impression with the fingers, using the soft part of the ball of the thumb as a counter die.

The most prominent parts of the impression will represent the deepest portion of the cavity and will assist in causing the matrix to reach this without tearing which is accomplished by using the impression to crowd the matrix to position. The impression should be removed leaving the matrix, which has been by this means partially swaged, in the cavity.

The Removal of the Impression Without Carrying Away the Matrix is accomplished by bending the portions of matrix exposed above the cavo-surface angle away from the impression. The matrix should not be burnished down onto the external surface of the tooth until the other portion has been made to thoroughly conform to the cavity walls.

When the impression has been removed the matrix should be thoroughly burnished to all cavity walls beginning at the seat of the cavity first. This burnishing is done with suitable smooth-faced instruments, keeping moistened chamois skin discs between the instrument and the matrix.

The cavity should now be packed with *damp cotton balls* crowding the matrix ahead of them to every part of the cavity. While this cotton is in position, the matrix should receive thorough burnishing at the cavity margins and finally be turned out on to the external surface of the tooth a distance of one-fourth of a millimeter to one full millimeter in all locations except one, which may be two or three millimeters.

This one place will *facilitate handling* during the process of filling in the porcelain. The cotton may now be removed and gum camphor or gold inlay casting wax crowded into the cavity over the matrix, filling the cavity nearly full with one piece of material packed to place with a flat-faced amalgam burnisher as large as the cavity will admit.

Removal of Matrix. The matrix is then removed from the cavity by sticking the tine of an explorer into the body of the *camphor or wax* near its central portion. The matrix and wax or camphor still on the tine of the explorer should be immersed in alcohol if camphor has been used or chloroform if wax has been used, which will immediately loosen the tine and dissolve the material from the matrix, after which the matrix should be picked up in the lock tweezers at that portion where the metal has been left to extend the farthest from the cavo-surface angle.

The matrix should now be passed through the alcohol flame when the camphor or wax remaining will be burned off leaving no ash.

Wood as an Impression. In simple small cavities it is well to shape a piece of soft pine (as cork pine) to proximately fit the cavity. This should be then introduced against the deepest portion of the cavity and given a few blows from the mallet which will cause the wood to conform to the floor of the cavity. This should then be used as an impression and the matrix forming proceeded with, as described when modeling compound has been used. The use of the stick with modeling compound on the end is of advantage in large deep cavities where the pulp chamber is to be filled with porcelain in place of metal pin. By this means it is possible to place a matrix well to the bottom of any cavity without tearing, provided the walls are regular and have the proper draw devoid of under cuts.

Taking the Spring Out of a Matrix. If a matrix seems to retain "spring" and does not seem to lay well on all surfaces, as frequently met with in complex cavity outlines, this may be removed by the following method: When cavity is thoroughly packed with wet cotton, stretch a piece of rubber dam over the matrix, cotton and all, and thoroughly burnish the entire outline. If "spring" still persists, remove the matrix and anneal, and then repeat the method when it will be found that the fault has been removed.

Selection of Porcelain. The selection of that portion of the inlay which replaces dentine and that which replaces enamel should be attended to before the process of building begins. The part replacing dentine should be of foundation body coarsely ground and of a yellow color in all vital cases. In devital cases this shade may be darkened by the addition of the brown shade, and in vital teeth for young patients, particularly if the cavity is shallow, or on a distal surface, the addition of white powder is of advantage to lighten the shade of yellow.

The enamel shades may be decided upon after a careful study of the shades and hues found in each case. Delicate shading is secured by building one layer upon another, thus getting the benefits of reflected light. The deep and pronounced shades and colors are best obtained by building in sections. Teeth that are much of one color and not pronounced in lines of shades will be best represented by the layer method, while teeth that are decidedly yellow at the cervix and pronouncedly blue at the incisal edge are best represented by building in sections provided; the cavity involves both regions spoken of as in Class Four (proximo-incisal).

After the different sections have been applied and brought to a hard biscuit fuse, a uniform layer of neutral color is applied over the whole and all fully fused.

Applying the Porcelain to the Matrix. The foundation body is put upon the porcelain or glass slab and sufficient distilled water, or alcohol or a mixture of both, added to make a stiff paste, stiff enough to retain its shape when taken up on the point of a spatula.

A small quantity of this is laid in the bottom of the matrix and by a little jolting made to flow over the surface. This jolting is best produced by drawing the edge of a fine gold file over the tweezers holding the matrix. The additions should be continued until sufficient body has been added. Excess moisture is removed by repeated jolting and absorbing with blotting paper. Dark colored blotting paper is used so as to detect any paper fibers which by accident adhere, which should be removed. The addition of dry porcelain of the same color will take up the excess moisture, the surplus adhering powder being brushed off with a small brush.

In Case the Matrix is Torn, the opening has to be comparatively large to cause the porcelain to run through, unless the matrix is damp on the cavity side or too moist a mix is being applied. Should any of the porcelain flow through, it can be removed with a dry brush provided the porcelain has been rendered quite dry.

Do not apply a wet brush to the cavity side of the matrix. The inlay should now be placed in the oven and fused sufficiently to produce the greater part of the shrinkage, but not to a full gloss. When removed from the oven if more foundation is needed it should be added and fired to a high biscuit.

The Enamel in Proper Shades is now added, either in layers or sections, and again fired to a high biscuit. The inlay should then be tried into the cavity for bulk and contour. If not correct more enamel is added. When the contour suits, the inlay is replaced in the oven and fired to a full glaze. The skill necessary to reproduce the colors of the teeth comes with practice and the longer one engages in this work the more often will the results please the operator.

Technic of Fusing Porcelain. The furnace should be first heated up to a bright red and held there for a minute or two, to thoroughly warm the fire clay entirely through, and then the lever returned to the first button to maintain a warm oven.

When ready to fuse, the furnace is completely shut off provided the oven shows any redness. Never put an inlay mix into a hot oven, as it causes too rapid evaporation of the moisture, producing checks and an extremely friable porcelain.

When the inlay is in position in the oven the lever is put on the second or third button and advanced only when the needle of the milliamperemeter ceases to advance. The heat should be increased gradually and when it has reached the desired degree immediately shut off. Each furnace has a way peculiar to itself and each operator should learn the time for perfect results.

Grinding to Contour. After the final fusing the inlay should be tried in and ground to contour and articulation on the incisal or occlusal surface before removing the matrix.

To Remove the Matrix. Drop the inlay and the matrix in alcohol or water, then remove and peel the matrix from the inlay, drawing from the margins all around first, then from the body of the filling. This procedure prevents chipping at the margins.

Etching the Cavity Side of Inlay. When the matrix has been removed the inlay should be embedded, contour surface down, into a sheet of pink base plate wax. With a warm spatula it is sealed entirely around, being sure to cover the edges of the inlay on the cavity side for a short distance, say one-half millimeter. This leaves the cavity side exposed, upon which is applied hydrofluoric acid. This is applied by dipping a stick in the wax bottle in which the acid is delivered, and painting the inlay with a small quantity of the acid. Two minutes will generally be sufficient to thoroughly etch the surface.

Toilet of Inlay. The inlay should be flooded with water, removed from the wax and placed in boiling water for a few minutes and then given a chloroform bath, and dried with warm air while laying on spunk or blotting paper, and should not be again contacted with the hands on the cavity side.

Toilet of Cavity. The cavity should be rendered dry. All inlays, and particularly the large ones, are best set with white cement with the faintest tinge of cream. The attempt to match the color of tooth substance with the cement is an error as the pigment in the cement increases the shadow line which is objectionable. Use a white cement mixed to the consistency of greatest adhesiveness yet thin enough to flow from between inlay and cavity walls with light pressure. This will be about the consistency of thin cream. The cement should be thoroughly and rapidly spatulated and when the ''stick'' is felt under the spatula it should be applied to the cavity and the surface of the inlay which is immediately placed. Use a non-corrosive spatula, preferably bone or agate. Apply to the cavity with a flattened orangewood stick. Press inlay to position with a stick of orangewood using gentle pressure, gently tapping the end of stick with the knuckle of the forefinger, or blows of equally cushioned nature.

In labial and buccal fillings (Class Five) the inlay should receive gentle pressure for five or ten minutes. In proximal (Classes Three and Four) the filling should be gently wedged against the proximating tooth or tightly ligatured to position and so left for some hours.

The Finishing should be left till another sitting. If the building has been well done there will be little to do. All overhanging margins should be dressed down with fine stones and disks and the surface polished with small Arkansas stones, using a light hand and keeping the stones well watered.

APPENDIX

REVIEW OF DENTAL HISTOLOGY*

Dental Histology is a study of the minute structures of the teeth and adjacent tissues.

The Teeth Belong to the Dermal Skeleton and not to the osseous framework, as they were formerly classified. This is made conclusive from the fact that the first evidence of tooth formation is seen in the oral epithelium. However, not all of the tissues of a tooth are epithelial in origin.

The Tissues of which a tooth is made up are enamel, dentine, cementum and pulp.

The Enamel Only is Derived from the epithelium, while dentine, cementum and pulp are formed from the mesioblastic layer of tissue.

The Dental Papilla is that portion of follicle which is enclosed in the epithelial cup. This cup later becomes the enamel organ.

The Pulp is what remains of the papilla after the tooth is fully formed.

The Cuticula Dentis (or Nasmyth's membrane) is a thin covering found on recently erupted teeth, soon worn away on exposed portions, yet persistent for months and even years on protected portions. It is probably derived from the outer tunic of the enamel organ.

The Enamel is composed of from three and one-half to six per cent water and from ninety-four to ninety-six and one-half per cent inorganic matter. It is probable that the ''organic matter'' thought to be obtained analytically by ignition is simply water in combination with lime salts.

The Chief Constituents of enamel are phosphate and carbonate of calcium, being from ninety to ninety-four per cent.

The Structure of Enamel is a collection of five and six-sided rods connected by means of a cementing substance.

The Enamel Rods are generally found so arranged that their long axis is at right angles to the surface of the dentine from which they arise, particularly so in the middle third of axial surfaces. In the gingival third of these surfaces there is an increasing inclination of the external ends of the enamel rods towards the gingival. The same is true of the incisal or occlusal thirds where the inclination increases as the cutting edge is approached.

---

*In this chapter are given some of the most important points pertaining to the formation of the teeth and their minute structure as these affect operative procedures. It is not intended that this will answer for a course in dental histology.

The Rods are Made Up of a series of globules placed end to end. Under a powerful microscope they resemble a string of beads. These seem to be joined without the cemental media.

The Rods Differ in length. While most of the rods extend from the dentine to the surface, being then termed full length rods, there are many which originate in the body of the enamel between the full length rods and continue their course to the surface. As the rods are of approximately the same size the additional rods would seem necessary to compensate for the difference in the surface area of the dentine and enamel.

In some there will occasionally be seen a rod which begins in the surface of the dentine and falls short of coming to the external surface, this condition being most frequently met with on occlusal surfaces of molars.

The Rods Vary as to degree of curvature, some are nearly straight, some describe the segment of a circle, while others show a compound curve even to being much contorted. Such enamel is termed ''gnarled'' and is the more resistant to stress in mastication as well as the force of instruments in operative procedures. The enamel made up of straight or nearly parallel rods is the more friable and the easier of fracture either from use or under stress of instrumentation.

The Diameter of a Rod varies through its length, resulting in enlarged sections called varicosities. These enlarged portions of one rod are opposite the enlargements of the rods paralleling it, which condition results in spaces between the constricted portions of the rods. This space is filled with a highly calcified cement substance.

The Interprismatic cement is largely composed of calcic material, proved by the fact that it is very susceptible to the action of acids, being more readily dissolved than the rods, as in the process of decay it disappears first to allow the rods to fall apart.

The Cleavage of Enamel is along the line of the long axis of the enamel rods accomplished by a dissolution of the cemental substance. A few of the rods may be broken crosswise, especially near the point of impact from a blow, but the fracture is never to any great extent at an angle to the direction of the long axis of the rods. When the enamel rods rest upon sound dentine and each is supported laterally by its neighbors it is capable of resisting a great amount of force, but when either of the above conditions are wanting they become easily dislodged, a fact of great moment relative to the making of fillings.

The Dentine histologically is a highly developed connective tissue, which is non-vascular. It forms the greater bulk of the tooth which it materially resembles in shape. That is to say if the enamel which covers the coronal portion and the cementum which covers the root portion were removed there would still remain the general characteristics and form shown in the entire tooth.

The Physical Structure of dentine is that of a partly calcified organic matrix traversed by a system of tubules, known as the dentinal tubuli.

The Matrix is seemingly structureless, and composed largely of inorganic matter. As it is physically impossible to remove the contents of the tubules, no exact chemical analysis has as yet been made of the matrix proper.

The Chemical Composition of Dentine as a whole, is given as approximately one-fourth organic and three-fourths inorganic, with a varying amount of water up to twelve or fourteen per cent.

The Principal Inorganic substances are phosphate and fluoride of calcium.

The Tubules are minute canals, rounded in form, which traverse the dentine for its entire thickness. They leave the walls of the pulp chamber at right angles to its surface. In their course to the surface of the dentine they give off numerous branches many of which unite with the neighboring tubules. As they approach the surface of the dentine this branching increases and their course becomes more irregular. As the number increases they become more closely packed at the expense of the matrix for the size of the tubules show slight variation.

The Tubules contain a substance resembling protoplasm which is connected with the odontoblasts. These protoplasmic processes are known as dentinal fibrils.

The Dentinal Fibrils are the media through which sensation is conveyed to the pulp, yet it has not been demonstrated that they contain nerve filaments.

The Dentinal Tubules are Lined with a particularly indestructible sheath resisting the action of acids; caustic soda and even caries of the teeth does not destroy them.

The Odontoblasts are the cells which perform the function of forming the dentine and make up the most external layer of the pulp.

The Primary Dentine is that which normally exists in a fully formed tooth. When the tooth is fully formed the odontoblasts nearly or quite cease to functionate and again begin their function of dentine building only when sufficiently irritated to result in a stimulus.

Secondary Dentine is the term applied to the result of this renewed functionating of the odontoblasts.

Cementum is the external portion of the root of a tooth and acts as a medium of attaching the pericementum and dentine. It resembles bone both anatomically and histologically in many respects. Its greatest point of difference is the absence of the Haversian system. However, there are present lacunæ and canaliculi.

The Formation of Cementum. Cementum is the last of the dental tissues to form, covering the roots of young teeth but thinly. Its growth persists through life, so that the teeth in mature life show a considerable body of cementum, particularly in the apical region.

When this growth is abnormal, due to a stimulating irritant, it is termed hypercementosis.

The Cells which build cementum are called cementoblasts.

The Tooth Pulp is the soft tissue occupying the central portion of a tooth known as the pulp chamber. It is the formative organ of the dentine during the process of development and is the source of nutrition to the dentine during life.

Anatomically it is Composed of a very delicate connective tissue, richly supplied with blood vessels and thickly threaded with nerve fibers.

The blood vessels and nerve enter the pulp through the apical foramina each giving off many branches in their course to the periphery.

The Most External Cells of the pulp are the odontoblasts and normally have no sense of touch.

The Shape of the Pulp as a whole resembles that of the external surface of the tooth and at one stage of development was nearly as large. But during the formation of dentine it really incases itself.

The Process of Retraction on the part of the pulp seems to take place more slowly from near the seat of primary calcification, resulting in horn-like processes projecting into the dentine in the direction of the cusp with which each has been associated in developing. As these horns slowly retract they leave what is termed the "line of retraction of the pulp" not always vacated, a fact which has to be borne in mind when operating in these localities.

The Pericementum (or peridental membrane) is a fibrous connective tissue investing the root of the tooth. It is a single membrane common to the cementum and alveolar wall thickest in the apical region resulting in what is termed the apical space.

The Functions of the Pericementum Are:

First. It is the formative organ of the cementum.

Second. It plays a large part in the retention of the tooth in its socket, aiding it to resist the forces of traction, tortion and percussion.

The particular **Arrangement of the Bundles of Fibers** found in the pericementum should be noted as they materially differ in their direction.

Arising in the alveolus some of the fibers pass towards the apex and others towards the gingival margin some distance before being attached to the cementum, while others pass to the right and left at right angles to the long axis of the tooth before being also attached to the cementum.

The former are called longitudinal fibers and are most abundant near the apex of the tooth, while the latter are called the circular fibers and increase in number as the gingival margin is approached. At the gingival some of the fibers are attached to the gingivus to cause the gum to hug the neck of the tooth.

It will be seen that this arrangement admirably assists the tooth to withstand the strains of stress to which it must frequently be subjected.

At the same time, it permits of a certain amount of movement, thereby protecting it from the effects of coming in contact with unyielding substances.

Third. It furnishes the tooth with its tactile sense, or the sense of feeling, that its possessor may, through education, detect the substances with which the teeth are brought in contact. This function is very acute at all times, but when the pericementum becomes inflamed this property becomes abnormally developed.

Fourth. The pericementum provides nutrition for the cementum through its abundant vascular supply.

The Cellular Elements of the Pericementum Are:

Cementoblasts, persistent in the formation of cementum.

Fibroblasts, for the repair of the fibrous tissues. **Osteoblasts** situated on the side next to osseous tissues, whose function is to build bone around the fibers of the pericementum, to thus more strongly attach them to the bony wall. **Osteoclasts,** multinucleated giant cells, not always present, but capable of acting upon bone, cementum or dentine, and are to be found in great numbers when the dissolution of these tissues is in progress. Epithelial cellular bodies are not infrequently observed in the inner portion of the peridental membrane. Their function is not known. It is believed by some that they are the remains of the enamel organ.

INDEX

A

Abrasion:
  causes not clear, 96
  incisal, 97
  mechanical, 231
Abscess:
  alveolar, acute, 215
  alveolar, chronic, 309
Absorbents, 223, 230
Absorbent cotton, use of, 211
Access form, defined, 31
  importance of, 31
  surgical for, 31
Access form for:
  class two,
    first method, 58
    second method, 59
    third method, 59
  class three, 72
  inlays, 99
    class two, 102
    class three, 105
  silicate, 186
Affected dentine, 29
Aging of a comminuted silver-tin alloy, 153
Alloy:
  aging of, 153
  annealing of, 153
Alveolar abscess with sinus, 309
Amalgam:
  artificial aging, 153
  cavity preparation for, 139
  cement and, 206
  contraction of, 144
  contact point passing, 141
  cutting from the margins for, 141
  defined, 139
  dimensional changes, factors that influence, 148
  expansion of, 144
  flat seats for, 140
  making the filling, 140
  matrix, removal of, 141
  matrix, use of, 140
  measuring, precautions necessary in, 180
  hypothesis, 142
  metallographic hypothesis, 142
  metallography of dental, 143
Amalgam—Cont'd.
  objections to, 139
  packing pressure, effects of, 166
  particle size, effect of, 166
  polishing of, 142
  properties of, 139
  reaction expansion, 145
      of tin, 155
  reception of, 129
  rubber dam essential, 140
  temperature during hardening, 179
  tin in alloy facilitates contraction, 152
  trimming the filling of, 141
Amalgamation, contractions and expansions following, 144
  variables, effect of changing, 158
Anesthesia:
  intra-alveolar, 237
  pressure, for pulp, 213, 214
  pulp, 212
  sensitive dentine, 238
  sensitive dentine, general for, 238
Angles, avoided in outline, 34
  avoided in outline, class two, 61
  line, class two, 62
Angle restoration:
  conditions demanding, class four, 78
  plans of, class four, 78
  plan one, class four, 85
  plan two, class four, 87
    indications for, 88
  plan three, class four, 90
    indications for, 88
  plan four, class four, 90
Anodynes, 237
Antiseptic precautions in pulpectomy, 292
Appendix, 348

B

Bacteria, pulps infected with, 242
Bevel angle, base of, 28
  defined, 27
Broaches, 317
Burnishing cohesive gold, 137

C

Calculus:
  salivary:
    composition of, 217

Calculus, salivary—Cont'd.
    removal of, 219
  serumal:
    appearance of, 219
    deposited, 218
    distinguished from, 220
    removal of, 220
Canal, filling, pulp:
  general, 316, 324
  gutta-percha as, 322
  instruments for, 321
  material for, 316, 321
  necessity of, 316
  objective point in, 316
  perfect, 316
  ready for, 316
Caries, rapid, indications of, 203, 231
Carious dentine:
  in large decays, 44
  in large proximal cavities, 44
  predisposing causes, class one, 48
    class two, 58
  removal of remaining, defined, 44
Cavities:
  axial surface, 21
  base of, 24
  buccal and lingual surfaces, 55
  cavo-surface angle, defined, 27
    for fused porcelain, 331
  class one, defined, 22
  class two, defined, 22
    early detection essential, 58
  non-vital, 67
  class three, defined, 22
    form of, 72
    management of, 72
  class four, 78-92
    defined, 22
    inlay, 63
  class five, 93-95
    defined, 22
    prevention of, 93
    tendency to spread, 93
  class six, 96, 97
    cause of, 96
    defined, 96
    early restoration in, 97
    line angles in, 25
    occlusal surfaces, 97
  complex, 21
  distal superior cuspids, 92
  divisions as to manipulation, 22
  groups of, 21
  how named, 21
  increased outline in, dangers of, 37
  laying of outline, 37
  mesio-disto-occlusal, non-vital, 68
  mesio-disto-occlusal, vital, 68
Cavities—Cont'd.
  point angles in, 25
  proximal, 21
  simple, 21
  stress from within, 38
  toilet of, 45-47
Cavity nomenclature, 21-28
  necessity of, 21
  names, how derived, 21
Cavity preparation:
  amalgam filling, 139
  completed, defined, 29
  general consideration of, 30
  gold inlay, 98-111
  modification of form, 29
  order of procedure in, 29
  porcelain inlay, 332-342
Cements:
  amalgam, and, 206
  cavity preparation for, 182
  cement, int. v. defined, 184
  cement, n. defined, 184
  cement, t. v. defined, 184
  cementation, n. defined, 184
  gold, and, 205
  porcelain, and, 207
  varieties of, 182
Cementum, exposure of, 232
Children's teeth, management of, 325
  abscessed deciduous teeth, 327
  cavities, class one, in, 326
  cavities, class two, in, 326
  cavities, class three, in, 327
  cavity preparation in, 326
  early attention imperative, 325
  exposed pulp, in, 327
  extension for prevention in, 326
  extension for resistance in, 326
  filling materials in, 326
  first difficulty in, 325
  first visit of child, 325
  inter-proximal grinding in, 327
Chip blower, use of, 212
Chlora-percha, shrinkage of, 201
Chloroform, 238
Clamp:
  cervical, use of, 230
  methods of applying, 227, 230
Combination fillings, 205
  cement and amalgam, 206
  cement and porcelain, 207
  defined, 205
  gold and cement, 205
  gold cohesive and non-cohesive, 206
  gold and platinum, 206
  gold and tin, 205
  object of, 205
  silicate and amalgam, 208

Combination fillings—Cont'd.
  silicate cement and fused porcelain, 207
  silicate and gold, 207
Contact point, proper, 32
  build of, amalgam, 141
  class six, 97
  condensing of, 132
  position of, 132
Contractions and expansions following amalgamations, 144
Convenience form, 42-43
  abuse of, 42
  class one, 50
  class two, 63, 66
  class three, 77
  defined, 42
  distal superior cuspid, 92
  inlays, 99
  maximum required, 42
  minimum required, 42
  porcelain inlays, 332
  previous separation lessening, 42
  silicate, 190
  sparingly used, 42
  suitable instruments for, 42

D

Dental histology, 348
Dental pain, alleviation of, 213
Deposits, 216
  food as related to, 217
  habits as to, 217
  kinds, upon the teeth, 217
  mouths most subject to, 217
  salivary, prevention of, 218
  time of, 217
Dimensional changes of amalgam, factors that influence, 148
Disinfection and pulp protection, 46
Disks and strips, use of, 46
Dressing after pulpectomy, 295
Dryness, 223
  importance of, 223
  neglect of, 223

E

Electric lamps, use of, 212
Enamel:
  arrangement of rods, 86
  defined, 97
  edge, 97
  malformed, 341
  margin, 27
  plane of, 45
Enamel walls, 45
  axial, surface pit, 56
  class one, 50
  class two, 63, 67
  class three, 77
  inlay, class two, 104
  inlay, class four, 109
  inlay, porcelain, 333
  silicate, 184
Examination of mouths:
  care in, 211
  instruments needed in, 211
  light hand in, 210
  when completed, 212
Exclusion of moisture, 223
  as a time saver, 225
  better view of the cavity, 224
  decalcification detected, 225
  for proper canal treatment, 224
  for sterilization, 224
  methods of, 223
  pain decreased by, 225
Expansion, reaction of amalgam, typical curve of, 145
Explorer, use of, 211
External enamel line, defined, 27
Extensions gingivally:
  buccal, class one, 56
  buccal, class two, 60
Extension for prevention:
  approaching the gum, 56
  buccal pits, 56
  defined, 35
  esthetic reasons, 74

F

Feldspar, formula of, 329
Finishing cohesive gold filling, 137
  abrasives in, 138
  burnishing in, 137
  gingival excess in, 137
  knife in, 138
  strips in, 138
Floss silk, waxed, use of, 212, 222
Foramina, development of, 270

G

Gingival angles, class four, 83
Gingival outline,
  class two, 61, 65
  class three, 73
  class five, 94
Gold:
  annealing of, 124
  application of, 127

Gold—Cont'd.
  bridging of, 125
  building of class five, 136
  building of class six, 136
  cement and, 205
  cohesion of, 125
  cohesive physical properties, 123
  condensation, secondary, 137
  condensing of, 127
  covering of pulpal wall with, 131
  hand pressure in use of, 127
  last portions of, class two, 133
  layers of, 135
  objectionable qualities of, 123
  order of stepping, 129
    buccal cavities, 129
    class two, 130
    irregular outline, 129
    occlusal cavities, 129
  platinum and, 206
  preparation of, 126
  silicate and, 207
  specific gravity of, 125
  starting a filling,
    class one, 129
    class two, 129
    class three, 133
    class four, 135
  tin and, 205
  use of, in class five, 95
  welding of, 123
Green stain, 219
Gum massage, 222
Gutta-percha, 200
  base plate, 200
  canal points of, 201
  filling root canals with, 200
  filling with, 200
  preparation of filling, 200
  protecting covering of, 246
  separation with, 201
  temporary stopping of, 201

H

Hand pressure, cohesive gold, 128
Health of patient, 243
Hemorrhage of advantage in partial pulpectomy, 294
Histology, dental, 384
  of pulp stumps, 277
Hydrogen dioxide, 221
Hyperemia:
  active, 213, 242
  passive, 214
  stages of, 242
Hypersensitive dentine, defined, 231
Hypersensitive dentine—Cont'd.
  caustic potassa in, 236
  chloroform in, 238
  cold air in, 235
  desiccation of, 234
  destroying agents in, 235
  electric current in, 235
  formaldehyde in, 236
  moisture, heat and cold in, 235
  nitrous oxide in, 238
  novocain, 237
  oil of cloves in, 237
  phenol in, 237
  potassium bromide in, 238
  rapid breathing in, 239
  sharp instruments in, 239
  silver nitrate in, 236
  somnoforme in, 238
  treatment of, 231-239
  zinc chloride in, 236

I

Incisal abrasion, class six, 97
Incisal angle:
  class three, filling of, 87
  class four, 78
  class four; direction of, 81
  class four, to assist the, 86
Incisal edge, porcelain inlay, 339
Incisal line angle, class three, 75
Incisal outline:
  class three, 74
  class four, plan one, 87
  class five, 94
Infected dentine, 29
Infection following partial pulpectomy, 376
Inlays:
  beveling of cavo-surface angles, 100
  carving the wax, 114
  defined, 98
  finishing the, 122
  gold used, in, 121
  heating the gold for, 120
  history of, 112
  hole leading to model, 121
  indications for, 98
  indirect method, 121
  investing, pattern of, 119
  line of approach, for, 100
  making pattern for, 113, 119
  making the cast of, 120
  materials for, 98
  matrix for, 119
  not indicated, 98
  object of, 112

Inlays—Cont'd.
  occlusal restoration with, 118
  pin for, 116
  placing spruce wire for, 115
  porcelain, construction of, 342
    applying of, 345
    cavity preparation for, 332
    etching of, 346
    finishing of, 347
    grinding of, 347
    matrix for, 342
    selection of, 344
    toilet of, 346
  retention form for, 51
  retention temporarily removed, 51
  retention form of pattern, 115
  saturating the model, 120
  setting, 122
  sponge gold as pattern, 119
  sweating the contour, 118, 119
  temperature of the model, 120
  toilet for, 100
  undercuts, filling of, 113
  wax pattern for, 113
Instruments, 17-20
  angles in, 18
  bin-angles in, 18
  bur, 19
  care of, 20
  chisel,
    defined, 18
    edge, 18
    use of, 18
  class name, 17
  contra angles in, 18
  dental engine, use of, 19
  excavators, 17
  few in sight, 210
  formula names for, 18
  gingival marginal trimmer, 18
  hatchets, defined, 18
  hoes, defined, 18
  how named, 17
  nomenclature for, 17-20
  plugger, point serrated, 19, 125, 126
    amalgam, 143
    rotating the, 126
    size of, 126
  rights and lefts, 17
  sharpening of, 19
  spoon, use of, 18
  sub-class name, 17
  sub-order name, 17
  test for sharpness, 20
  triple-angles in, 18
Instrumentation, lingual pit, 57

K

Kaolin, formula of, 329
Knife, pulp, 293

L

Labial outline:
  class three, 74
  class four, plan one, rule for, 86
  class four, plan three, 90
Length of sitting (children), 326
Ligature, 228
  caution in use of, 228
  cutting ends of, 229
  how made, 228
  knot in, 229
  removal of, 229
  Wedelstaedt tie, 229
Lime salts in solution, precipitation of, 217
Line angles, (*see* Cavity),
  axio-labial, class three, 76
  axio-lingual, class three, 76
  gingivo-axial, 77
Linen, 210
Lingual approach:
  advised, 135
  class three, cohesive gold, 135
  inlay illustrated, 105
Lingual outline:
  class three, 75
  class four, plan one, 87
  lower incisors, 87

M

Mallet force:
  alone, 128
  automatic, 128
  hand, 128
  power, 128
  rule of, 128
Marginal bevel:
  angle of, 45
  defined, 27
  depth of, 45
  necessity of, 27
Material for pulp canals, 321
Matrix:
  annealing of, 342
  applying porcelain to, 345
  material, for, 342
  methods of forming, 342
  porcelain inlay, 342
  removal of amalgam, 141
  removal from porcelain, 346
  taking the spring out of, 344
  thickness of, 342

Matrix—Cont'd.
  torn, 345
  use of, class two, gold, 133
  use of, in silicate filling, 198
  use of, with amalgam, 140
Metallographic hypothesis, 142
Metallography of dental amalgams, 143
Moisture, exclusion of, 223
Mummification, pulp, prevention of, 276
Mummifiers, 245
Mouth mirror, use of, 211

N

Novocain:
  sensitive dentine, 237
Nitrous oxide, 238

O

Objects in filling teeth, 29, 96
Occlusal defects, 48
Occlusal outline:
  class two, 66
  class five, 94
Order of procedure:
  cavity, 29
  for inlays, 99
Outline form:
  buccal pits, 55
  class one, 48
  class two, 59, 65
  class three, 73
  class five, 338
  curving to the axial, class four, 86
  defined, 34
  distal superior cuspids, 92
  for silicate, 187
  inlays,
    class one, 101
    class two, 103
    class three, 105
  large class one, 52
  lingual pits, 55
  porcelain inlays, 338
  rule one of, 34
  rule two of, 34
  rule three of, 34
  rule four of, 34
  rule five of, 34
  rule six of, 34
  rule seven of, 34
  rule eight of, 34
  rule nine of, 35
  rule ten of, 35
  step omitted in class two, 59
Over desiccation, 71
Oxychloride of zinc, 182
Oxyphosphate of copper, 183
Oxyphosphate of zinc, 182
  manipulation of, 183
  spatulation of, 183

P

Pain, dental:
  alleviations of, 213
  cold, causes, 213
  divisions of, 213
  foreign substances, causes, 214
  patients in, 211
  pericemental diseases, causing, 215
  symptoms, aggravated, 213
  treatment for, 213, 214
Partial pulpectomy, 247
  antiseptic precautions, 292
  dressing after, 295
  hemorrhage of advantage in, 294
  pathology of stump following, 276
  selection of cases for, 287
  technic for, 292
Passive hyperemia of pulp, 214
Pathology of pulp stump following partial pulpectomy, 276
Pericemental diseases causing pain, 215
Pins:
  placing for inlay, 116
  soldered to matrix, 116
  Tungsten, 116
Planes of a tooth:
  bucco-lingual, 28
  horizontal, 28
  mesio-distal, 28
Platinum and gold filling, 206
Polishing amalgam filling, 142
Porcelain:
  advantages of, 330
  basal body, 330
  biscuit fuse, 330
  build of layers, 330
  cavity preparation for, 332
  cavo-surface angle for, 331
  cement and, 207
  cement line in, 336
  composition of, 329
  contra-indications for, 331
  construction of inlay, 342
    defined, 184, 329
  dental, fused, 329
  disadvantages of, 330
  double step in, 337
  enamel body, 330
  fine grinding of, 330
  flux, amount of, 330
  foundation body, 330
  high fusing, 329

Porcelain—Cont'd.
  indications for, 331
  lingual approach, class three for, 335
  low fusing, 329
  methods of fusing, 329
  pigments in, 329
  proximal approach for, 336
  shrinkage in, 330
  size of mass, 330
  spheroiding of, 330
Potassium bromide, 238
Pressure, packing, effects of, on amalgam, 168
Preventive dentistry, 216
Primary decay, location of, class three, 72
Prophylactic treatment, oral, 216
  brushing, technic of, 222
  importance of, 216
  instructions to patients in, 222
  oral hygiene, children, 325
Protection of vital pulp, 240
Proximal cavities, 21
Proximal space, restoration of, 31
Pulp:
  anatomy of structures surrounding, 270
  canals,
    filling, 316
    materials for filling, 321
    putrescent, 298
  devitalization, 271
  exposed, class one, 53
  exposure, dangers in, class two, 65
  exposure feared, class one, 52
  infected with bacteria, 206
  involved, class five, 95
  knives, 293
  lesions of, 213
  normal, 240
  preservers, 245
  protection, 240-247
    gutta percha in, 246
    in class two, 66
    in deep seated cavities, 243
    indications for, 241
    materials used in, 243
  putrescence, 298-315
    acute complication, 308
    animal fats in, 307
    chronic complicated, 308
    classes of, 298
    closed, symptoms of, 307
    closed, treatment of, 308
    complicated, 301
    complicated, treatment of, 308
    defined, 298
    open, treatment of, 304
    treatment of, general, 304
Pulp—Cont'd.
  recuperative powers of, 240
  removal of, 247
  repair, requisites for, 247
  sensations are conveyed to, 231
  stumps, histology of, 277
Pulpectomy, 247, 248
  partial (*see* Partial pulpectomy) 287
Pulpotomy, 247
Pus in apical space, 215
Putrefaction defined, 298
Pyorrhea alveolaris, 220

R

Radiographic series of partial pulpectomy cases, 289
Removal of remaining decay:
  class one, 50
  class two, 66
  class three, 77
  for silicate, 190
  inlays, 99
Resistance form:
  applied to filling material, 39
  buccal pits, 55
  class one, 49
  class two, 62, 66
  class three, 75
  extension for, defined, 38
  force to provide for in, 38
  for porcelain inlays, 332
  for silicate inlays, 187
  importance of, 38
  inlays, 99
    class one, 101
    class two, 103
    class four, plan one, 106
  involves a consideration of, 38
Retention angles for inlays, 99
Retention form:
  acute angles required in, 40
  buccal pits, 56
  class one, 49
  class two, 62, 66
  class three, 75
  class four, 78-81
  class five, 94
  flat seats in, 40
    inlays,
    class one, 102
    class two, 103
    class four, plan two, 107
  for porcelain inlays, 332
  for silicate, 189

Retention form—Cont'd.
  little, in enamel, 41
  maximum not required, 40
  maximum required, 40
  step as a portion of, 40
Roots, anatomy of, 271
  independent action as to, 281
Rubber dam:
  before applying, 38
  class one, 52
  essential in filling with amalgam, 140
  for silicate, 190
  gingival side of, 227
  holes, distance between, 226
  holes, location of, 226
  holes, size of, 226
  invented by, 223
  leaks in, 46
  method of applying the, 227
  number of teeth isolated with, 227
  objections to use of, 223
  occlusal side of, 227
  placing of, 227
  prevent leakage in, 228
  removal of, 230
  size and shape of, 226
  thickness of, 226

S

Salivary calculus, 217
Screw post-anchorage, 70
Sectional fillings, 70
Secretions, abnormal, oral, 232
Separation:
  class two cavities, 59
  for amalgam, 140
  gutta-percha for, 201
  immediate, 33
  inlays, class two, 102
  methods of, 32
  preliminary, 33
  soreness resulting from, 33
  mechanical not essential, 212
  use of, class two, gold, 133
Serumal calculus, 218
Silex, formula of, 329
Silicate:
  amalgam and, 208
  applied to prosthetic work, 208
  cavity preparation for, 186
  convenience form, 190
  defined, 184
  facing metal fillings with, 199
  finishing the filling, 198
  gold and, 207
Silicate—Cont'd.
  making the filling, 191
  making the mix, 195
  porcelain and, 207
  preparing the materials, 194
  proper consistency, 195
  resistance form, 187
  retention form, 189
  time in mixing, 196
  use of matrix, 198
Silicatization, defined, 184
Somnoform, 238
Sordes, consistency of, 219
  removal of, 219, 221
Stains on the teeth, 219
  green stains, color due to, 219
    injury to teeth, 219
    removal of, 221
    where found, 219
Step:
  area included, class two, 61
  depth of class four, plan two, 87
  distal superior cuspids, 92
  forming of, 61
  omitted in class two, 51
  technic of cutting, class four, plan two, 89
Sulphate of zinc, 183, 246

T

Temperature of amalgam during hardening, 179
Thromboplastin, use of, after partial pulpectomy, 276
Tin:
  amalgam and, 204
  amalgam, reaction expansion of, 155
  as a filling material, 202
  cavity preparation for, 203
  discoloration, amount of, 202
  discoloration by, 202
  forms of, 203
  gold and, 204, 205
  history of, 202
  in alloy, 152
  in teeth of children, 203
  methods of introduction, 203
  therapeutic action of, 202
  thermal conductivity of, 202
Toilet of cavity:
  best accomplished by, 45
  class one, 51
  class two, 67
  defined, 45
  for porcelain inlays, 332
  for silicate, 190

Tooth:
  brush, use of, 221
  form, restoring of, 32
  picks, 222
  substance, saving of, 32
Trimming amalgam fillings, 141
Tubuli, contents of, 231

W

Wall:
  axial,
    class two, 62
    class three, 77
    defined, 23
    for porcelain, class one, 334
    for porcelain, class three, 334
  buccal, class two, 62
  distal superior cuspid, 92
  freshly cut, 88
  gingival, defined, 23
  gingival, class two, 66
  gingival, class three, 77

Wall—Cont'd.
  gingival, class three, inlay, 105
  inside, defined, 24
  labial, 77
  lingual, 77
  lingual, axial, 62
  lingual, class two, 92
  occlusal, class five, inlay, 110
  outside, defined, 22
  pulpal, class two, 62
  pulpal, defined, 22
  sub-pulpal, defined, 23
  weakened enamel, 38
Waxed floss silk, 212
Wide enamel margin, indicated, 46

Z

Zinc:
  chloride of, 236
  oxychloride of, 182
  oxyphosphate of, 182
  sulphate of, 183

This book must be returned to
the Dental Library by the last
date stamped below. It may
be renewed if there is no
reservation for it.

RK
501
D3
192

HRA:7080

NTISTRY.

ORROWER

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO

Harry R. Abbott
Memorial Library

HRA: 7080

FACULTY OF DENTISTRY
124 EDWARD ST.
TORONTO, ONT.

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW
D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C
39 04 11 23 09 010 1